

FORD **RANGER** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2025

All rights reserved.

Part Number: -202508-20250807212847

Table of Contents

About Us - Raptor

SVT	19
Team RS	19
Ford Performance	19

Contacting Us

Contacting Us	20

Introduction

About This Publication	22
Using This Publication	24

Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster	25

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	29
Service Data	30
Event Data	30
Settings Data	31
Connected Vehicle Data	31
Mobile Device Data	31
Emergency Call System Data	32

Environment

Protecting the Environment	33

Visual Search

Steering Wheel - Excluding: Raptor	34
Steering Wheel - Raptor	35
Instrument Panel - Excluding: Raptor/ Super Duty	36
Instrument Panel - Raptor	37
Instrument Panel - Super Duty	38
Vehicle Interior - Excluding: Raptor	39
Vehicle Interior - Raptor	40
Front Exterior - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty	41
Front Exterior - Raptor	42

Front Exterior - Super Duty	43
Rear Exterior - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty	44
Rear Exterior - Raptor	45
Rear Exterior - Super Duty	46

Unique Features - Raptor

Unique Features	47

Child Safety

Child Restraints	48
Selecting a Child Restraint System	49
Installing Child Restraints	49
Child Restraint Anchorage Locations	50
Protecting Larger Children	53
Checking Seatbelt Fit	53
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks	54

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions	55
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	56
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy	56
Seatbelt Reminder	57
Checking the Seatbelts	57

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work	59
How Do the Side Airbags Work	59
How Do the Knee Airbags Work	60
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work	60
Airbag Precautions	61
Front Passenger Sensing System	62

Emergency Assistance

What Is Emergency Assistance	65

Table of Contents

How Does Emergency Assistance Work	65
Emergency Call Requirements	65
Emergency Call Limitations	66

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations	67
Using the Remote Control	67
Opening and Closing the Flip Key - Vehicles With: Remote Flip Key	67
Removing the Key Blade - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	68
Sounding the Panic Alarm	68
Locating Your Vehicle	68
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	68
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Flip Key	70
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	71
Programming the Remote Control - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	72
Programming the Remote Control - Vehicles With: Flip Key	72
Using the Valet Mode	73
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting	73

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle	74
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle	74
Autounlock	75
Mislock	75
Autorelock	75
Door Lock Indicators	75
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings	75
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting	75

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry	78
Keyless Entry Limitations	78
Keyless Entry Settings	78
Using Keyless Entry	78
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting	79

Easy Entry and Exit

How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work	80
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off	80

Tailgate

Tailgate Precautions	81
Opening the Tailgate	81
Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate	81
Tailgate Work Surface	81

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	83
Anti-Theft Alarm System	83
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings	84
Security – Troubleshooting	85

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	86
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start	86
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	86
Horn	86
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel	87

Wipers and Washers

Wipers	88
Autowipers	88
Checking the Wiper Blades	89
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades	89

Table of Contents

Washers	90	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	110
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting	91	Exterior Mirrors	
Exterior Lighting		Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors	111
Exterior Lighting Control	92	Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Folding Mirrors	111
Headlamps	92	Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors	112
Autolamps	93	Instrument Cluster	
Exterior Lamps	94	Instrument Cluster Overview - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	114
Exterior Zone Lighting	95	Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen	114
Automatic High Beam Control	97	Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen	115
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting	99	Tachometer	116
Glare Free Lighting	99	Speedometer	116
Adaptive Front Lighting	102	Fuel Gauge	117
Exterior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions	103	Vehicle Range Display	117
Interior Lighting		High Voltage Battery Gauge - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	118
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off	105	Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	118
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off	105	Engine Oil Pressure Gauge - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen	118
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off	105	Engine Oil Pressure Gauge - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen	118
Interior Lamp Function	105	Transmission Fluid Temperature Gauge - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen	118
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness	106	Transmission Fluid Temperature Gauge - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen	118
Ambient Lighting - Vehicles With: Ambient Lighting	106	AdBlue® Gauge - Diesel, Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen	119
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting	106	AdBlue® Gauge - Diesel, Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen	119
Windows		Instrument Cluster Display	
Opening and Closing the Windows	107	Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen/12 Inch Screen, Excluding: Raptor	120
Global Opening and Closing	107		
Window Bounce-Back	108		
Locking the Rear Window Controls	109		
Interior Mirror			
Interior Mirror Precautions	110		
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror	110		

Table of Contents

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls - Raptor, Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen	120
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	121
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen, Excluding: Raptor	123
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen, Excluding: Raptor	125
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Raptor, Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen	127
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen	129
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen	129
Fuel Economy Display - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	129
EV Coach - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	129
Electric Economy - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	130
Brake Coach - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	130
Trip Summary - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	131
Vehicle Charging Status - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	131

Trip Computer

Accessing the Trip Computer	132
Resetting the Trip Computer	132

Remote Start

What Is Remote Start	133
Remote Start Precautions	133
Remote Start Limitations	133
Enabling Remote Start	133
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle	133

Remote Start Settings	134

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Identifying the Climate Control Unit	135
Switching Climate Control On and Off	135
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	135
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	135
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	135
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	135
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	136
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	136
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off	136
Setting the Temperature	136
Directing the Flow of Air	136
Auto Mode	137
Climate Control Hints	138
Climate Control - Warning Lamps	139

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

Identifying the Climate Control Unit	140
Switching Climate Control On and Off	140
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	140
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	140
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	140
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	140
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	141

Table of Contents

Setting the Blower Motor Speed	141
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off	141
Setting the Temperature	141
Directing the Flow of Air	141
Climate Control Hints	142

Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter	143
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter	143

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions	144
Sitting in the Correct Position	144
Manual Seats	145
Power Seats	147
Heated Seats	149
Ventilated Seats	150

Rear Seats - Vehicles With: Rear Seats

Rear Seat Precautions	151
Manual Seats	151

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System	155
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work	155
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions	155
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations	155
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings	156
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators	156
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings	157

Memory Function

What Is the Memory Function	158
Memory Function Precautions	158
Locating the Memory Function Buttons	158
Saving a Preset Position	158
Recalling a Preset Position	158

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports	159
Playing Media Using the USB Port	159
Charging a Device	160

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 120V Power Outlet/230V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	161
Power Outlet Precautions	161
Power Outlet Limitations	161
Locating the Power Outlets	161
Power Outlet Indicators	162

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	163
Power Outlet Precautions	163
Locating the Power Outlets	163

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet/220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet

What Is the Onboard Generator	164
Onboard Generator Precautions	164
Locating the Outlets	165
Onboard Generator Indicators	166
Switching the Outlets On and Off	166
What Is Generator Mode	167
Switching Generator Mode On and Off	167

Table of Contents

Resetting Ground Fault Detection	167
Resetting the Circuit Breaker - Vehicles With: 220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet	167
Onboard Generator – Troubleshooting	169

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger	172
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions	172
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger	172
Charging a Wireless Device	172

Storage

Cup Holders	174
Glove Compartment	174
Center Console	175
Under Seat Storage	175
Glasses Holder	175

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions	176
Ignition Switch - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start	176
Push Button Ignition Switch - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	177
Starting the Engine	177
Stopping the Engine	179
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	180
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	181
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting	182

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information	188
Low Engine Use Mode	190

Auto-Start-Stop

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	191
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	191
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	191
Stopping the Engine	191
Restarting the Engine	191
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	191
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	192

Fuel and Refueling

Fuel and Refueling Precautions	194
Fuel Quality	194
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel	196
Running Out of Fuel	196
Refueling	198
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.0L Diesel	205
Fuel Tank Capacity - 3.0L EcoBoost™	206
Fuel Tank Capacity - 3.0L Diesel	207
Fuel Tank Capacity - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	208
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting	208

Diesel Particulate Filter

What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter	209
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work	209
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions	209
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements	210
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual Regeneration - Super Duty	210

Table of Contents

Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting	212

Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Diesel

What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System	214
How Does the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Work	214
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions	214
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements	214
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines	214
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank	215
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status	218
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption	218
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification	218
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting	219

Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter	221
Catalytic Converter Precautions	221
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting	221

Gasoline Particulate Filter

What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter	222
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work	222
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions	222
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements	222
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting	223

High Voltage Battery - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What Is the High Voltage Battery	224
High Voltage Battery Precautions	224
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery	224
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting	224

Charging Your Vehicle

Charging Equipment Precautions	225
Charging Equipment Overview	226
Charging Equipment Indicators	227
Locating the Charge Port	228
Charge Port Indicators	229
AC Charging	230
Charge Coupler Manual Release	233
Charging Settings	234
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging	238
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols	239
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	240

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Positions	242
Manually Shifting Gears - Excluding: Raptor	244
Manually Shifting Gears - Raptor	245
Temporary Neutral Mode	246
Automatic Return to Park (P)	247
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift	247
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) - Vehicles With: Mechanical Shift	248
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift	249

Table of Contents

Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Mechanical Shift	249

Using Progressive Range Selection	249

Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification	250

Four-Wheel Drive

How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode	252

How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - Super Duty, Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode	252

How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement	252

Four-Wheel Drive Limitations - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty	253

Four-Wheel Drive Limitations - Raptor	254

Four-Wheel Drive Limitations - Super Duty, Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode	255

Switching Four-Wheel Drive On and Off	256

Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - Super Duty, Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode	256

Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement	257

Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode	258

Four-Wheel Drive Modes	259

Four-Wheel Drive Indicators	260

Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and Specification	260

Four-Wheel Drive - Troubleshooting	261

Front Axle

Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty	265

Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Raptor	265

Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Super Duty	266

Rear Axle

Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty	267

Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Raptor	267

Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Super Duty	268

Electronic Locking Differential - Vehicles With: Electronic Locking Differential (ELD)

What Is the Electronic Locking Differential - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty	269

What Is the Electronic Locking Differential - Raptor/Super Duty	269

Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty	270

Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off - Raptor/Super Duty	271

Electronic Locking Differential Indicators - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty	272

Electronic Locking Differential Indicators - Raptor/Super Duty	272

Electronic Locking Differential - Troubleshooting	273

Drive Mode Control - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

What Is Drive Mode Control	276

Selecting a Drive Mode	276

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes	277

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes - Troubleshooting	278

Table of Contents

Drive Mode Control - Excluding: Raptor

What Is Drive Mode Control	279
How Does Drive Mode Control Work	279
Selecting a Drive Mode - Vehicles With: Push Button Selectable Drive Modes	279
Selecting a Drive Mode - Vehicles With: Rotary Selectable Drive Modes	280
Drive Modes	280
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting	282

Drive Mode Control - Raptor

What Is Drive Mode Control	284
How Does Drive Mode Control Work	284
Selecting a Drive Mode	284
Drive Modes	286
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting	288

Eco Coach

What Is Eco Coach	291
How Does Eco Coach Work	291
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work	291
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency Level	291
How Does Trip Summary Work	291
Viewing the Trip Summary	291

Brakes

Brake Precautions	292
Anti-Lock Braking System	292
Brake Over Accelerator	292
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir	292
Checking the Brake Fluid	292
Brake Fluid Specification	293
Brakes – Troubleshooting	294

Parking Brake

Applying the Parking Brake	296
Releasing the Parking Brake	296
Parking Brake Audible Warning	296
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	296

Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake	297
Applying the Electric Parking Brake	297
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency	297
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	297
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	298
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning	298
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge	298
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	298

Reverse Brake Assist

How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work	300
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions	300
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off	301
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist	301
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators	301
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting	302

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist	304
How Does Hill Start Assist Work	304
Hill Start Assist Precautions	304
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off	304
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting	304

Table of Contents

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work	305
Switching Auto Hold On and Off	305
Using Auto Hold	305
Auto Hold Indicators	306

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control	307
How Does Traction Control Work	307
Switching Traction Control On and Off	307
Traction Control Indicator	307
Traction Control – Troubleshooting	307

Stability Control

How Does Stability Control Work	309
Switching Stability Control On and Off	310
Stability Control Indicator	311
Stability Control – Troubleshooting	312

Trail Control

What Is Trail Control	313
Trail Control Limitations	313
Switching Trail Control On and Off	313
Setting the Trail Control Speed	313
Canceling the Set Speed	313
Trail Control Indicators	314
Trail Control – Troubleshooting	315

Trail Turn Assist

What Is Trail Turn Assist	316
Trail Turn Assist Precautions	316
Trail Turn Assist Limitations	316
Switching Trail Turn Assist On and Off	316
Trail Turn Assist Indicators	316
Trail Turn Assist – Troubleshooting	317

Hill Descent Control

What Is Hill Descent Control	318
How Does Hill Descent Control Work	318
Hill Descent Control Precautions	318
Switching Hill Descent Control On and Off	318
Setting the Hill Descent Speed	318
Hill Descent Control Indicator	319
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting	319

Steering

Electric Power Steering	320
Steering – Troubleshooting	321

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions	322
Switching Parking Aid On and Off	322
Rear Parking Aid	323
Front Parking Aid	325
Parking Aid Indicators	326
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting	328

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera	330
What Is the Rear View Camera - Vehicles With: Analog Rear View Camera	330
Rear View Camera Precautions - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	330
Rear View Camera Precautions - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	330
Locating the Rear View Camera - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	331
Locating the Rear View Camera - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	331
Rear View Camera Guide Lines - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	332

Table of Contents

Rear View Camera Guide Lines - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	333
Rear View Camera Settings	333
360 Degree Camera	
What Is the 360 Degree Camera	335
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work	335
360 Degree Camera Precautions - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	335
360 Degree Camera Precautions - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	336
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	336
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	337
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	337
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	338
360 Degree Camera Settings	339
Adaptive Cruise Control	
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work	341
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work	341
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions	341
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations	342
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off	344
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation	345
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed	345
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap	346
Canceling the Set Speed	347
Resuming the Set Speed	347
Overriding the Set Speed	348
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators	348
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control	348
Lane Centering	349
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting	352
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control	352
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	354
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	354
Intelligent Speed Limiter	
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter	356
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work	356
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions	356
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off	356
Setting the Speed Limit	356
Changing the Set Speed Limit	356
Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance	357
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	357
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	357
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	357
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators	357
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	357
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter	357
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting	358

Table of Contents

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System	359
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work	359
Lane Keeping System Precautions	359
Lane Keeping System Limitations - Excluding: Super Duty	359
Lane Keeping System Limitations - Super Duty	360
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off	360
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode	361
Lane Keeping System Settings	361
Aid Mode	361
Alert and Aid Mode	361
Lane Keeping System Indicators	362
Blind Spot Assist	362
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	364
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting	367

Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System	370
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work	370
Blind Spot Information System Precautions	370
Blind Spot Information System Limitations	370
Blind Spot Information System Requirements	370
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off	371
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	371

Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	371
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage	372
Blind Spot Information System Indicators	374
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting	374

Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert	376
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work	376
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions	376
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations	376
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off	377
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	377
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar	378
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators	378
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting	378

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist	380
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work	380
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions	380
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations	381
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off	382
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors	383
Distance Indication	383
Distance Alert	384
Automatic Emergency Braking	384
Evasive Steering Assist	385

Table of Contents

Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting	385

Speed Sign Recognition

What Is Speed Sign Recognition	388
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work	388
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions	388
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations	388
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators	389
Speed Sign Recognition Settings	389
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting	389

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert	391
How Does Driver Alert Work	391
Driver Alert Precautions	391
Driver Alert Limitations	391
Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Excluding: Super Duty	392
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting	392

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions	393
Load Retaining Fixtures and Capacities	394
Roof Rack	395

Pickup Bed

Pickup Bed Precautions	402
Pickup Bed Anchor Points	402
Pickup Bed Slots	404
Pickup Bed Access Caps	404
Roller Shutter	404

Connecting a Trailer

Connecting a Trailer Precautions	408
Tow Ball	408

Connecting a Trailer	411
Trailer Lighting Check	411
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting	412

Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions	413
Trailer Brake Precautions	414
Towing a Trailer Limitations	414
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft	414
Towing Weights and Dimensions	415
Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting	418

Integrated Trailer Brake Controller

What Is the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller	419
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Precautions	419
Using the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller	419
Adjusting the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Mode	420
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting	421

Trailer Sway Control

How Does Trailer Sway Control Work	423
Trailer Sway Control Precautions	423
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off	423

Smart Hitch

Smart Hitch	424

Onboard Scales

Onboard Scales	426

Table of Contents

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty

What is Trailer Backup Assistance	428
How Does Trailer Backup Assistance Work	428
Trailer Backup Assistance Precautions	428
Setting Up the Trailer Backup Assistance for a Conventional Trailer	429
Switching Trailer Backup Assistance On and Off	432
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Controller	432
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Views	433
Trailer Backup Assistance – Troubleshooting	435

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

What is Trailer Backup Assistance	439
How Does Trailer Backup Assistance Work	439
Trailer Backup Assistance Precautions	439
Setting Up the Trailer Backup Assistance for a Conventional Trailer	440
Switching Trailer Backup Assistance On and Off	443
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Controller	443
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Views	444
Trailer Backup Assistance – Troubleshooting	446

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Excluding: Super Duty

What Is Trailer Reverse Guidance	451
How Does Trailer Reverse Guidance Work	451
Trailer Reverse Guidance Precautions	451

Setting Up Trailer Reverse Guidance for a Conventional Trailer	451
Switching Trailer Reverse Guidance On and Off	454
Using Trailer Reverse Guidance Views	454
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Troubleshooting	456

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Super Duty

What Is Trailer Reverse Guidance	459
How Does Trailer Reverse Guidance Work	459
Trailer Reverse Guidance Precautions	459
Setting Up Trailer Reverse Guidance for a Conventional Trailer	459
Switching Trailer Reverse Guidance On and Off	462
Using Trailer Reverse Guidance Views	462
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Troubleshooting	464

Off-Road Driving

Basic Off-Road Driving Techniques	468
Driving Your Vehicle at High Speeds – Raptor	469
Off-Road Driving Aids – Raptor	469
After Driving Your Vehicle Off-Road	470
Off-Road Screen	470

Driving Hints

Breaking-In	476
Driving Economically	476
Driving in Cold Weather	476
Driving Through Water	477
Floor Mats	478

Table of Contents

Crash and Breakdown Information

High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	480
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off	481
Jump Starting the Vehicle	481
Post-Crash Alert System	483
Post Impact Braking	484
Automatic Crash Shutoff	484
Recovery Towing	484
Transporting the Vehicle	490
Fail-Safe Cooling	490

Towing Your Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	492
Emergency Towing	492

Fuses

Fuse Precautions	493
Under Hood Fuse Box	493
Battery Fuse Box	503
Body Control Module Fuse Box	504
Identifying Fuse Types	507
Fuses – Troubleshooting	507

Vehicle Inspection Guide

Brake System Inspection	508

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions	509
Opening and Closing the Hood	509
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Diesel	511
Under Hood Overview - 2.3L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)	512
Under Hood Overview - 3.0L EcoBoost™	513
Under Hood Overview - 3.0L Diesel	514
Engine Oil	515

Engine Air Filter	522
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap - Diesel	524
Coolant	525
Changing the Fuel Filter - Diesel	530
Changing the Fuel Filter - Gasoline	530
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.0L Diesel	531
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost™	531
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 3.0L EcoBoost™	532
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 3.0L Diesel	532
12V Battery	532
12V Battery – Troubleshooting	537
Adjusting the Headlamps	538
Exterior Bulbs	539
Interior Bulbs	548

Vehicle Specifications

Engine Specifications - 2.0L Diesel	549
Engine Specifications - 2.3L, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	550
Engine Specifications - 3.0L EcoBoost™	551
Engine Specifications - 3.0L Diesel	552
Vehicle Dimensions - Chassis Cab	553
Vehicle Dimensions - Double Cab	554
Vehicle Dimensions - Single Cab	556
Vehicle Dimensions - SuperCab	557

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior	559
Cleaning the Interior	562
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	564
Waxing Your Vehicle	564

Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage	565

Table of Contents

Removing Your Vehicle From Storage	566

Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label	567
Information on the Tire Sidewall	567
Glossary of Tire Terminology	570
Tire Replacement Requirements	571
Using Snow Chains	572

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures	574
Inflating the Tires	574
Tire Pressure Specifications - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty	574
Tire Pressure Specifications - Raptor	576
Tire Pressure Specifications - Super Duty	577
Inspecting the Tire for Damage	578
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems	579
Tire Rotation	580

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System	581
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions	581
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations	581
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen	581
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen	582
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System	582
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting	582

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire - Excluding: Raptor/ Super Duty	585
Changing a Flat Tire - Super Duty	596
Changing a Flat Tire - Raptor	606
Wheel Nuts - Excluding: Super Duty	616
Wheel Nuts - Super Duty	617

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number	619
Vehicle Identification Plate	622

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle	623
Connected Vehicle Requirements	623
Connected Vehicle Limitations	623
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	623
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	623
Connected Vehicle Settings	624
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting	624

Audio System

Audio System Precautions	626
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off	626
Selecting the Audio Source	626
Media Control Buttons	626
Adjusting the Volume	626
Setting a Memory Preset	627
Adjusting the Sound Settings	627
Setting the Clock and Date	627
AM/FM Radio	627
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	628

Center Display

Center Display Overview	630
Status Bar	630

Table of Contents

Settings	631
Driver Assistance Menu	632
Rebooting the Center Display	632

Voice Interaction

Ford Assistant	633

Phone

Phone Precautions	635
Connecting Your Phone	635
Phone Menu	635
Making and Receiving a Phone Call	636
Sending and Receiving a Text Message	637
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off	638
Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device	638
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off	638
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off	638

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device	639
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®	639

Navigation

Connected Navigation	640
Accessing Navigation	640
Navigation Map Updates	640
Adjusting the Map	640
Live Traffic	640
Setting a Destination	640
Waypoints	641
Route Guidance	641
Trailer Towing Navigation	642

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates	643
Software Update Settings	643

Software Update Indicators	644

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset	645

Auxiliary Switches

What Are the Auxiliary Switches	646
Locating the Auxiliary Switches	646
Locating the Auxiliary Switch Wiring	646
Identifying the Auxiliary Switch Wiring	647

Customer Information

Rollover Warning	649
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment	649
Radio Frequency Certification Labels	649
Replacement Parts Recommendation	649
Mobile Communications Equipment	650
End User License Agreement	651

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	677

About Us - Raptor

SVT

The Ford Special Vehicle Team (SVT) was established in 1991 to polish the Ford Oval by creating low-volume, factory-produced vehicles designed for those select few whose idea of driving is a high-powered, passionate experience – not just a means of getting from point A to point B.

In a move to support this spirited enthusiasm, Ford Motor Company carefully integrated the wide array of talent in the company into a small, cross-functional group of engineers and product planners, housed together under one roof with a common mission: to create vehicles specifically designed to meet the unique needs and desires of the knowledgeable driving enthusiast.

More than 400,000 SVT and Ford Performance vehicles were produced since the 1993 model year. These include the SVT Mustang Cobra and the Cobra R, the SVT F-150 Lightning, the SVT Contour, the SVT Focus, Ford GT, Shelby GT500, GT500KR and the F-150 SVT Raptor.

TEAM RS

Team RS traces its roots back nearly 60 years from the Lotus Ford Cortina and Twin Cam Escorts of the mid 1960's, through the first RS branded Escorts of the 1970's to the founding of Special Vehicle Engineering (SVE) in 1980. Through the 1980s and 90s, SVE delivered a breadth of vehicles from exciting XR and RS branded road going performance cars through homologation specials such as the iconic Sierra Cosworth RS500. The first ST (Sport Technology) vehicle appeared in 1996 as the ST24 Mondeo. The first collaboration between Ford's European and North American performance teams appeared in 2002 as the ST170 in Europe

and SVT Focus in North America. In 2003, Team RS replaced SVE in Europe as performance car and motorsport personnel were brought together as one team. Team RS subsequently created the 2004 Fiesta ST, 2005 Focus ST and 2009 Focus RS.

FORD PERFORMANCE

Welcome to the Ford Performance family!

SVT and Team RS officially began working together as one team in 2009. In 2015, these two teams, along with Ford Racing, were formally combined establishing Ford Performance as a single team responsible for all performance and racing oriented products and activities worldwide at Ford Motor Company. Your Ford Performance vehicle represents the best of what Ford Performance has to offer from around the globe. Your vehicle has been designed and developed with the four hallmarks of Ford Performance in mind: Performance, Substance, Exclusivity and Value. We are proud and passionate about what we do, and we are glad you have made us your choice.

Contacting Us

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer relationship center.

United States

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
PO Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48126
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
TDD for the hearing impaired:
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone service provider)
www.ford.com/help/contact/

Ford Credit - US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For assistance call 1-800-727-7000, or for more information about Ford Credit and access to an account manager, visit www.ford.com/finance.

Canada

Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)
TDD for the hearing impaired:
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone service provider)
www.ford.ca

Australia

Ford Motor Company of Australia Pty Ltd.
Customer Relationship Centre
Private Mail Bag 5
Campbellfield, Victoria, 3061
Telephone: (13 FORD) 13 3673
E-mail: foacust1@ford.com

New Zealand

Ford Motor Company
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre
Private Bag 76912
Manukau City 2241
Telephone: 0800 367 369 (FORDNZ)
E-mail: fnzcust@ford.com

China - Imported Vehicle

Customer Relationship Center
Telephone: 400-690-1886
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

China - Chang'An Ford

Customer Relationship Center
Telephone: 800-810-8168
Mobile: 400-887-7766
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

Asia Pacific Direct Markets (APDM)

E-mail: apemcrc@ford.com

Caribbean, Central America and Israel

Ford Motor Company
Ford Export Operations
Attention: Owner Relations
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, MI 48101
Fax: (313) 390-0804
Telephone: (800) 841-3673
E-mail: atnclien@ford.com

U.S. Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico

Ford Motor Company
Ford Export Operations
Attention: Owner Relations
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, MI 48101
Telephone: (800) 841-3673
E-mail: atnclien@ford.com

Contacting Us

Argentina

Telephone: 0800-888-3673

Brazil

Website: www.ford.com.br
Telephone: 0800-703-3673
E-mail: central@ford.com

North Africa

E-mail: nafcrc@ford.com

South Africa

Telephone: 0860011022
Email: fordcrc2@ford.com

Sub-Saharan Africa

E-mail: ssacrc@ford.com

Puerto Rico

Ford International Business Development,
Inc.
P.O. Box 11957
Caparra Heights Station
San Juan, PR 00922-1957
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
Fax: (313) 390-0804
E-mail: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr

Middle East

Ford Middle East Customer Relationship
Center
P.O. Box 21740
Dubai, United Arab Emirates
Telephone: 80004441066
Toll-free number for the Kingdom of Saudi
Arabia: 8008443673
Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi
Arabia: 800850078
Kuwait: 22280384
Local telephone number for Kuwait: +965
1 898900
Fax: +971 4 3327266
E-mail: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com

South Korea

Customer Relationship Center
Telephone: +82-02-1600-6003
E-mail: infokr1@ford.com
Emergency Dispatch Service call:
080-300-3673

Philippines

Telephone: 02-88669408
Email: emailus@ford.com

Taiwan

Telephone: 0800-032100
705 Zhonghua Rd., Sec. 1
Zhongli District, Taoyuan, Taiwan, 32068

Thailand

Telephone: 1383
E-mail: fordthai@ford.com

Vietnam

Telephone: 1800588888
E-mail: fordvn@ford.com

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle center display screen, print, in Ford mobile app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

Note: *Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.*

Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Your vehicle may contain certain Driver Assistance Technologies (i.e. Pre-Collision Assist, Adaptive Cruise Control, Lane Keeping System, and BlueCruise). Use of these technologies still requires your complete attention while driving. Even if your hands are not on the steering wheel, your eyes need to be on the road, and you must be alert to your surroundings. Your complete attention is required while driving since you may need to take immediate control due to the presence of roadway hazards or a change in road, weather, or lighting conditions. Use of these features does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Always be prepared to manually control the speed and direction of your vehicle. Please refer to this manual for information pertaining to each Driver Assistance feature.

Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com.

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

Illustrations

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Introduction

Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

The online version of the Owner's Manual may contain the very latest information, which may vary slightly from the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual originally provided with your vehicle. We recommend updating the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual when prompted using Over The Air updates.

Vehicles with a Portrait Center Display Screen

The Owner's Manual application is located in the Apps list.

Vehicles with a Landscape Center Display Screen

Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the Ford mobile app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.



Note: We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit <https://www.helminc.com> or see an authorized dealer.



In Europe, visit <https://www.z-order.de> or see an authorized dealer.

Introduction



For all other Countries, see your authorized dealer.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

Symbols Glossary

SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Depending on your vehicle options, market, and instrument cluster type, not all symbols shown are available.

Lighting and Signaling



High beams. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 93).



Auto high beams. See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 98).



Front fog lamps. See **Using the Front Fog Lamps** (page 94).



Turn signal - right. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 94).



Turn signal - left. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 94).



Positioning/side lights. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 93).



Exterior bulb failure. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 539).

Brakes



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 294). See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 298).



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 294). See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 298).



Electric parking brake fault. See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 298).



Anti-lock brake system malfunction. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 294).



Automatic brake hold. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 306).



Automatic brake hold off or unavailable. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 306).

Visibility



Windshield washer fluid level. See **Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps** (page 91).

Engine



Check engine. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 182). See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 221). See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 525).



Engine oil pressure. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 182).



Engine coolant temperature. See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 221). See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 525).



Auto Start/Stop. See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators** (page 191).



Auto Start/Stop off or unavailable. See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators** (page 191).

Symbols Glossary



Diesel pre-heat. See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 177). See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 178).



Diesel exhaust fluid. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps** (page 219).



Engine emission system temperature. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps** (page 219).



Exhaust filter regeneration disabled. See **Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps** (page 212).

Fuel



Fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps** (page 208).



Water/Moisture in fuel system. See **Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap** (page 524).

Transmission



Non-emission powertrain fault. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 182).



Shift up.



Shift down.

Vehicle Handling



Selectable drive mode - normal. See **Normal** (page 280).



Selectable drive mode - Eco. See **Eco** (page 280).



Selectable drive mode - sport. See **Sport** (page 288).



Selectable drive mode - tow/haul. See **Tow/Haul** (page 281).



Selectable drive mode - slippery. See **Slippery** (page 281). See **Slippery** (page 288).



Selectable drive mode - mud/ruts. See **Mud/Ruts** (page 280).



Selectable drive mode - sand. See **Sand** (page 281).



Selectable drive mode - normal. See **Normal** (page 287).



Selectable drive mode - slippery. See **Slippery** (page 288).



Selectable drive mode - rock crawl. See **Rock Crawl** (page 287).



Selectable drive mode - baja. See **Baja** (page 286).



Selectable drive mode - Off-road. See **Mud/Ruts** (page 286).



Steering system fault. See **Steering – Information Messages** (page 321).



Differential lock - rear axle. See **Electronic Locking Differential Indicators** (page 272).

Symbols Glossary



Differential lock - front axle. See **Electronic Locking Differential Indicators** (page 272).



Off road turn assist - right. See **Trail Turn Assist Indicators** (page 316).



Off road turn assist - left. See **Trail Turn Assist Indicators** (page 316).



4X2. See **Four-Wheel Drive Indicators** (page 260).



4X4 auto. See **Four-Wheel Drive Indicators** (page 260).



4X4 high. See **Four-Wheel Drive Indicators** (page 260).



4x4 low. See **Four-Wheel Drive Indicators** (page 260).

Driver Assistance



Cruise control.



Adaptive cruise control. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 348).



Hill descent control. See **Hill Descent Control Indicator** (page 319).



Trail control. See **Trail Control Indicators** (page 314).



Lane centering assist. See **Lane Centering Indicators** (page 351).



Lane keeping assist off - truck. See **Lane Keeping System Indicators** (page 362).



Speed limiter. See **Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators** (page 357).

Safety



Seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Precautions** (page 55). See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 57).



Airbag. See **Seatbelt Precautions** (page 55).



Stability control system active or not available. See **Traction Control Indicator** (page 307). See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 311).



Stability control system off. See **Traction Control Indicator** (page 307). See **Drive Mode Control - Warning Lamps** (page 282).



Tire failure/Low tire pressure. See **What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 581). See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Warning Lamps** (page 582).



Forward collision warning system. See **How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work** (page 380).



Forward collision warning system off or unavailable. See **Pre-Collision Assist - Warning Lamps** (page 385).



Blind spot information system off or unavailable. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 374).



Icy road conditions. See **Climate Control - Warning Lamps** (page 139).

Symbols Glossary



Driver alert system off or unavailable.



Door(s) ajar. See **Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps** (page 75).

Electrical Systems



Battery charge level. See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 221).

See **12V Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 537).



Battery shutoff. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 224).



Propulsion battery temperature. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 224).



Limited performance mode. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 224).



High voltage hazard. See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 224).



Ready to drive. See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 188).



Hybrid/electric system failure. See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 188).



EV mode now. See **EV Now** (page 277).



EV mode later. See **EV Later** (page 277).



EV mode charge. See **EV Charge** (page 277).

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and may send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could

have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit <https://www.fordconnected.com> or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 623).*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit <https://www.fordconnected.com>.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system.

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

Data Privacy

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 645).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit <https://www.fordconnected.com>.

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or

verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Note: *You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.*

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

Visual Search

STEERING WHEEL - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR



- A See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 344).
- B See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 120).
- C See **Making and Receiving a Phone Call** (page 636).
- D See **Using Ford Assistant** (page 633).
- E See **Adjusting the Volume** (page 626).

Visual Search

STEERING WHEEL - RAPTOR



- A See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 344).
- B See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 120).
- C See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 284).
- D See **Using Ford Assistant** (page 633).

Visual Search

INSTRUMENT PANEL - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY



- A See **Center Display Overview** (page 630).
- B See **Identifying the Climate Control Unit** (page 135). See **Identifying the Climate Control Unit** (page 140).
- C See **Charging a Device** (page 160).
- D See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 172).
- E See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 481).
- F See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 174).

Visual Search

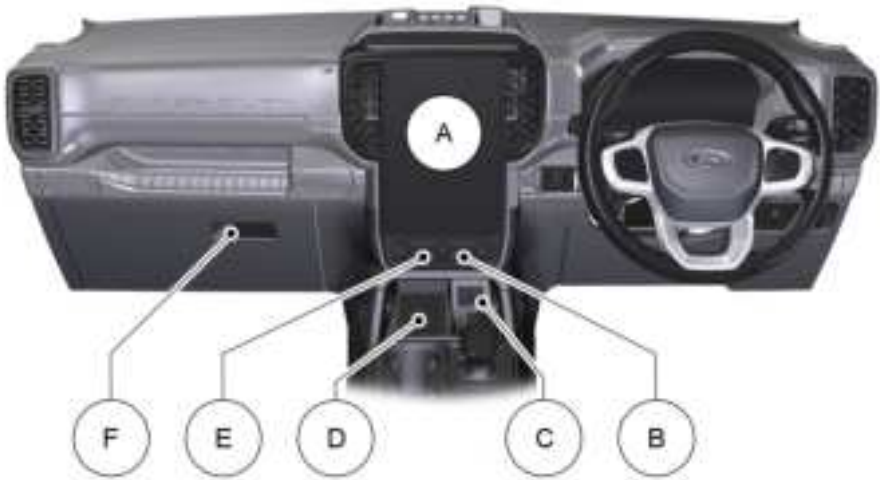
INSTRUMENT PANEL - RAPTOR



- A See **Center Display Overview** (page 630).
- B See **Identifying the Climate Control Unit** (page 135). See **Identifying the Climate Control Unit** (page 140).
- C See **Charging a Device** (page 160).
- D See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 172).
- E See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 481).
- F See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 174).

Visual Search

INSTRUMENT PANEL - SUPER DUTY



- A See **Center Display Overview** (page 630).
- B See **Identifying the Climate Control Unit** (page 135).
- C See **Charging a Device** (page 160).
- D See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 172).
- E See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 481).
- F See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 174).

Visual Search

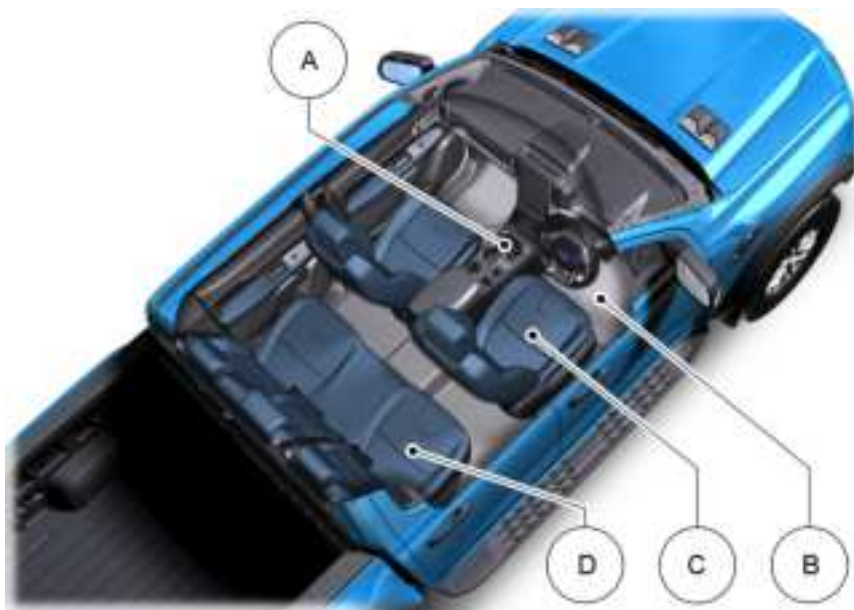
VEHICLE INTERIOR - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR



- A See **Unfolding the Seat Backrest** (page 153).
- B See **Automatic Transmission Position Indicators** (page 244).
- C See **Floor Mats** (page 478).
- D See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 144).

Visual Search

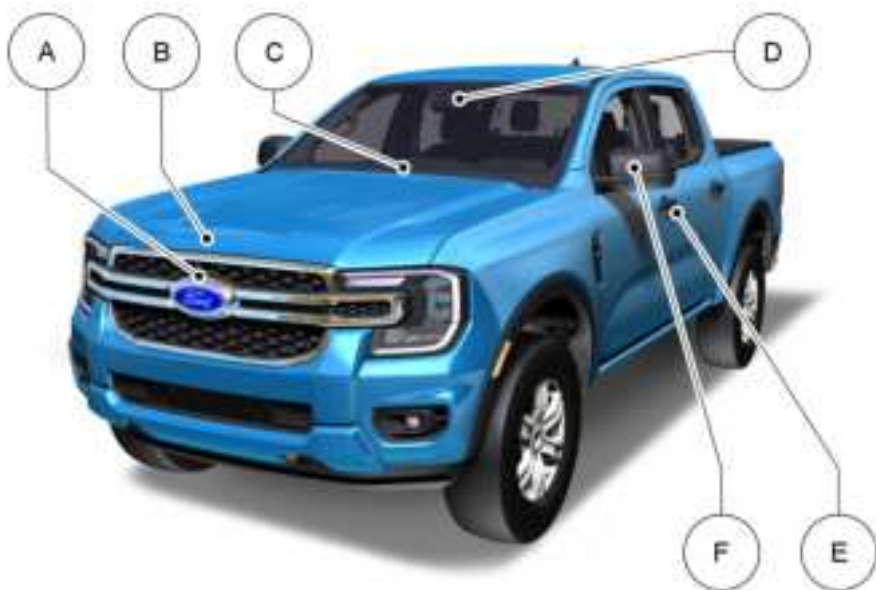
VEHICLE INTERIOR - RAPTOR



- A See **Automatic Transmission Position Indicators** (page 244).
- B See **Floor Mats** (page 478).
- C See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 144).
- D See **Unfolding the Seat Backrest** (page 153).

Visual Search

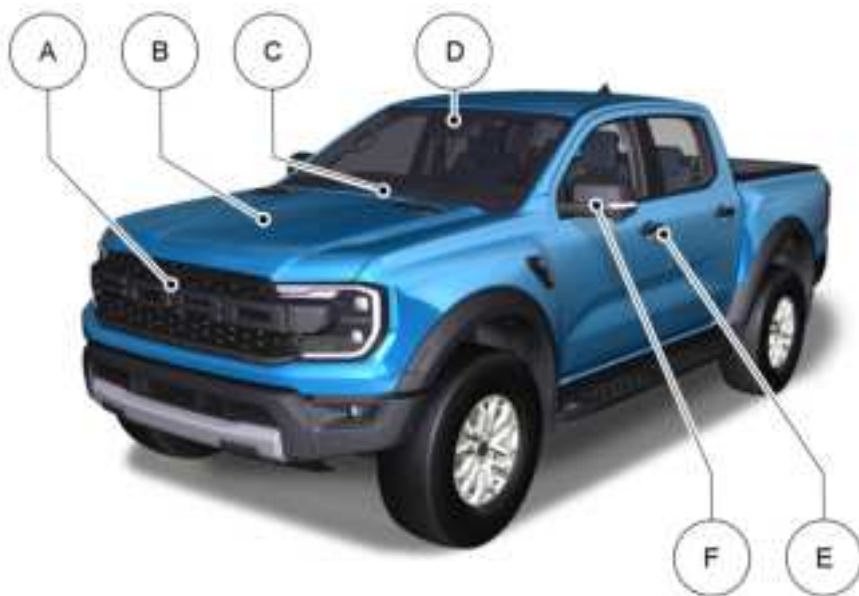
FRONT EXTERIOR - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY



- A See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 336).
- B See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 509).
- C See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 89).
- D See **What Is the Lane Keeping System** (page 359).
- E See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 74). See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 74).
- F See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 111).

Visual Search

FRONT EXTERIOR - RAPTOR



- A See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 336).
- B See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 509).
- C See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 89).
- D See **What Is the Lane Keeping System** (page 359).
- E See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 74). See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 74).
- F See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 111).

Visual Search

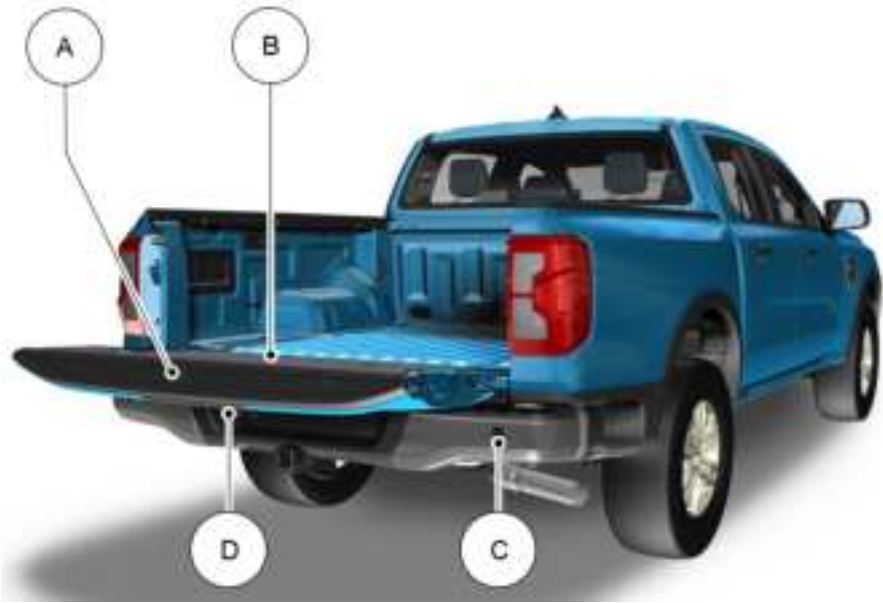
FRONT EXTERIOR - SUPER DUTY



- A See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 337).
- B See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 509).
- C See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 89).
- D See **What Is the Lane Keeping System** (page 359).
- E See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 74). See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 74).
- F See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 111).

Visual Search

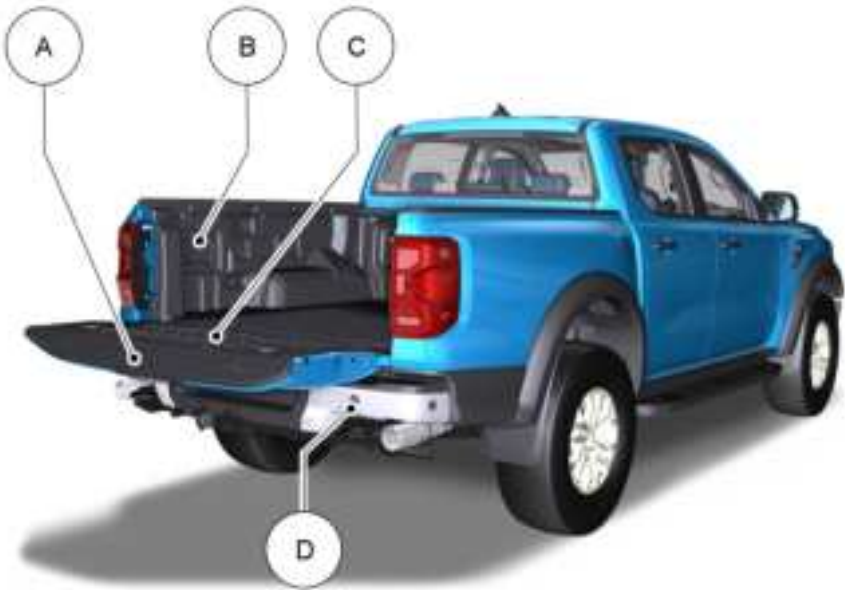
REAR EXTERIOR - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY



- A See **Opening the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 81).
- B See **Tailgate Work Surface** (page 81).
- C See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 324).
- D See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 336).

Visual Search

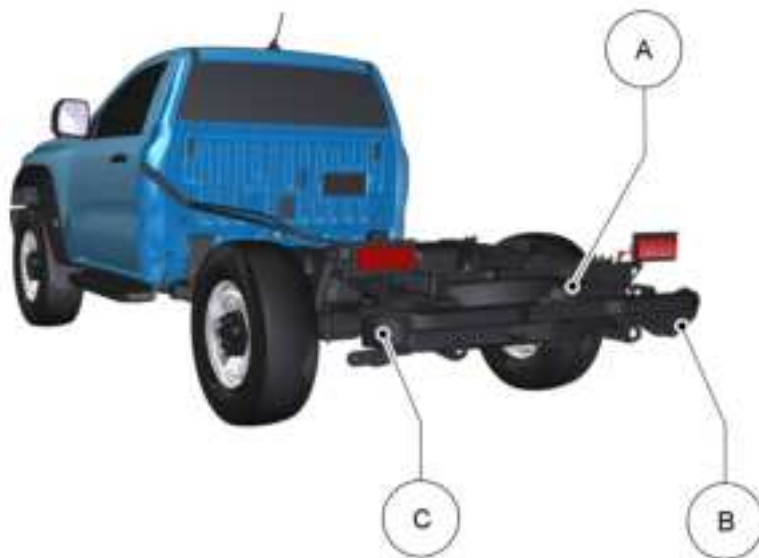
REAR EXTERIOR - RAPTOR



- A See **Opening the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 81).
- B See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 163).
- C See **Tailgate Work Surface** (page 81).
- D See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 324).

Visual Search

REAR EXTERIOR - SUPER DUTY



- A See **360 Degree Camera Guide Lines** (page 338).
- B See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 324).
- C See **Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors** (page 371).

Unique Features - Raptor

UNIQUE FEATURES

Powertrain

- 3.0L Twin Turbo EcoBoost engine.
- 10R60 10-speed automatic transmission with paddle shifters and water to air transmission cooler.
- Electronic Transfer Case with Front Locking Differential.
- Rear differential capable of locking in 4A, 4H and 4L.
- Electronically controlled Twin Pipe Active Exhaust with switchable modes and black 3-inch tips.
- Anti Lag Technology available in Baja Mode.

Chassis

- Cast aluminum lower control arms.
- Steel upper control arms.
- Fox Factory 2.5 Live Valve Internal Bypass front shocks.
- Fox Factory 2.5 Live Valve Internal Bypass Remote Reservoir rear shocks.
- Unique underbody shields.
- Heavy duty reinforced frame.
- Unique Watts Link Rear suspension.
- Ride height sensors at each corner.
- 33 inch All Terrain Tires on 17-inch wheels.

Exterior

- Modified rear bumper with integrated rear tow hooks.
- Underbody shields plus front tow hooks.
- Hood with functional air extractors.
- Front and rear LED marker lamps.

- 17 x 8.5 aluminum wheels.
- Optional 17 x 8.5 bead lock compatible wheels.

Interior

- Unique terrain-mode and trail control functionality plus six auxiliary switches.
- Unique front and rear seats with code orange accents.
- SYNC 4.0 with off-road screen and 360-degree camera.
- Unique steering wheel with switches to control and customize MyMode, exhaust and damping.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Children must always be properly restrained.



WARNING: This section provides useful information on the installation and safe use of child restraints. We strongly recommend that you read and understand this section before carrying children in your vehicle.

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the children are seated in suitable child restraints prescribed by the laws of the State or Territory in which the vehicle is operated.

If you are in any doubt about the laws that apply in your location, please consult your local Authorised Ford Dealer or Local Approved Child Restraint Fitting Station for assistance.



WARNING: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



WARNING: EXTREME HAZARD!
Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!



WARNING: Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.



WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.



WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Child Safety



WARNING: Destroy the child restraint if it has been in a severe crash, even if no damage is visible.

SELECTING A CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

To provide protection, a child restraint system should meet three requirements.

1. **The child restraint system complies with Australian Standard AS1754.** Infants and children must be properly restrained at all times in an approved child restraint which conforms to Australian Standards AS1754 - 2004 or later. Look for the Australian Standard Approval Mark on the child restraint.
2. **The child restraint must be suitable for the size and weight of the child and must be properly fitted and adjusted.** Use the child restraint exactly as shown in the instructions provided with the child restraint. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station.
3. **The child restraint system should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.** Due to variations in the design of child restraint systems, vehicle seats and seatbelts, all child restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child restraint system, it is recommended that the child restraint system is tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child restraint does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will fit.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



WARNING: Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, tip or come away causing death or injury.



WARNING: Do not use a child restraint if the tether strap falls into a split in the vehicle seat back or falls off the edge of the vehicle seat.

Note: Always adjust the front passenger seat to its fully rearward position. If it proves difficult to achieve seatbelt routing according to the child restraint instructions, adjust the seat backrest and move the seat only as far forward as necessary.

After installing a child restraint system, push and pull the system forward and back and from side to side to verify that it is secured.

Be sure to read and follow the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. If you have any doubts, contact the child restraint manufacturer or consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station. Your automobile club or local vehicle registration authority can provide location details of fitting stations.

When installing the child restraint attaching clip to the anchor fitting, if necessary, raise the head restraint and pass the tether strap between the head restraint supports. This will prevent the tether strap from falling off the outermost edge of the seating positions.

Child Safety



Note: Side curtain air bags will not interfere with a properly installed child restraint system or booster seat, because they are designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.

When a child restraint system is not being used, either remove it and store it in a safe place, or make sure it is properly secured. An unsecured child restraint system can be thrown around the vehicle in a crash or sudden stop and injure someone.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHORAGE LOCATIONS

Upper - Top Tether Anchorages

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

WARNING: Always ensure that the attaching clip is properly engaged with the anchor fitting and the tether strap length is adjusted to remove any slack.

WARNING: Always ensure that the locking mechanism of the rear seat back is fully engaged when in the upright position, by attempting to pull it down again.

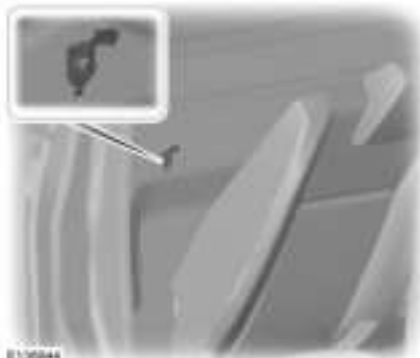
WARNING: Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

WARNING: Make sure that the seatback is secure and fully engaged in the catch.

WARNING: Make sure that the tether strap tightening mechanism remains accessible when the seatback is fully engaged in the catch.

There are two child restraint anchor fittings on the rear panel, one behind each outermost seating position. Do not fit a child restraint to the center rear seat.

All except PHEV



Child Safety

PHEV



To access the child restraint anchor fittings, pull the release strap up and move the seat backrest forward. When returning the seat backrest to the upright position, make sure it is securely latched by moving it back and forth.



The following diagram shows the correct installation and orientation of the attaching clip and anchor fitting.

All except PHEV



PHEV



Child Safety

Illustrations of the restraint attaching clip and anchor fitting only apply to child restraints conforming to Australian Standard AS1754-2004 - or later. If your child restraint does not have an approved latched hook attachment clip, consult an approved Restraint Fitting Station.

ISOFIX Anchor Points



WARNING: Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: When you are purchasing an ISOFIX seat, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations.



Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

ISOFIX Lower Anchorages



WARNING: The ISOFIX lower anchorages must be used in conjunction with the upper (top tether) anchorages.

The ISOFIX lower anchorages are on the outermost rear seats where the cushion and backrest meet.



Attaching a Child Restraint With Top Tethers



WARNING: Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

Child Safety



1. Push the child restraint back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
2. Tighten the tether strap as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

PROTECTING LARGER CHILDREN

The rear seats (where provided) are the safest place for children.

When a child outgrows the recommended weight or height limits for a forward facing child restraint system, the child should sit on a booster seat and wear a lap-sash seatbelt. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the centre of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips. A booster seat should be used until the child is tall enough for the lap-sash seatbelt to fit properly.

Typical Booster Seat



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

CHECKING SEATBELT FIT

If the lap-sash seatbelt touches or crosses the child's neck, then the child needs a booster seat.



WARNING: Never wear a seatbelt across the neck. This could result in serious neck injury in the event of a collision.



WARNING: Do not put the seatbelt under your child's arm or behind its back.



WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.



WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL CHILD PROOF LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The wearing of a seatbelt is a mandatory requirement. Seatbelts should be properly fastened and adjusted before the vehicle is driven. Adjust the driver's seat position before fastening the seatbelt.



WARNING: Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.



WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 144).



WARNING: Never use a seatbelt for more than one person. It is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.



WARNING: Use the correct buckle for each seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not use a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



WARNING: Do not wear thick clothing. The seatbelt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.



WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seatbelt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack or prevent the seatbelt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.



WARNING: Seatbelts are designed to be used by adult sized occupants.

Status After a Crash



WARNING: Seatbelts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.



WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a side curtain airbag is deployed.

Seatbelts

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.



The second row center seatbelt can lock if you forcefully return the seat backrest from a folded position to the upright position. If the seatbelt locks, recline the seat using the recline adjustment.

Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Seatbelts



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on, a front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.

A warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed, and a rear seatbelt has been unfastened.

The warning lamp illuminates until all occupants fasten their seatbelt.

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF (If Equipped)

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Seatbelt not fastened or recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster main menu.
2. Press Select Screens.
3. Select Seatbelts.

CHECKING THE SEATBELTS

Check the seatbelts and child restraints periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary.

Check the following seatbelt assemblies after a crash.

Seatbelts

- Retractors.
- Buckles.
- Shoulder belt guide on seat backrest.
- Child restraint anchors.
- Attaching hardware.

Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

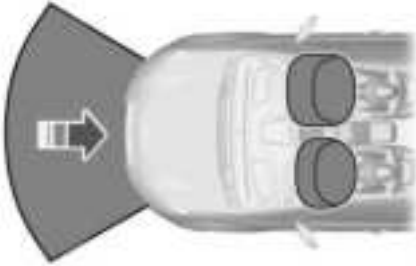
We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be checked and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Seatbelts – Information Messages

Message	Description
Belt monitor fault Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



Driver Airbag

The driver airbag deploys during significant frontal and near frontal crashes. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second and deflates on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. The driver airbag will not deploy during minor frontal crashes, overturns, rear crashes and side crashes.

Passenger Airbag

The passenger airbag deploys during significant frontal or near-frontal crashes. The airbag inflates within a few thousandths of a second and deflates on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. The front passenger airbag will not deploy during minor frontal crashes, overturns, rear crashes and side crashes.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK (IF EQUIPPED)



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front seat backrests, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by the manufacturer of your vehicle could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



The side airbags are inside the seat backrest of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seat backrest to indicate the location of the airbags.

Airbags

Center Mounted Side Airbag - may be equipped

The center mounted side airbag is on the innermost side of the driver seat. There is a label attached to the side of the backrest to indicate the location of the airbag.



This airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. It could also deploy during a significant frontal crash or a vehicle rollover. The airbag reduces contact between the driver and front seat passenger in side impacts and rollovers. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, or a rear crash.

HOW DO THE KNEE AIRBAGS WORK



WARNING: To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



WARNING: Close the glove box door when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the passenger knee airbag and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

A driver knee airbag is under or within the instrument panel. A passenger knee airbag is within or under the glove box door.

During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver and passenger knee airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver and passenger knee airbags may deploy, but the front airbags may not activate.

As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



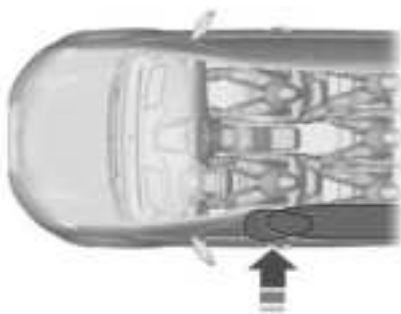
Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Airbags



The airbags are above the front and rear side windows.

The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover .

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not fit a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar to your vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the restraint system, including the airbag deployment, and could result in injury to yourself and others. Fitment of a non-Ford approved bull bar or nudge-bar may also void the vehicle's compliance with Australian Design Rules.



WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not fit any accessories on the front of the vehicle within 150 mm of the centre line of the vehicle as this may interfere with the operation of the front crash sensor.



WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

Note: You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

Airbags

Note: Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

This system detects a properly seated occupant and determines if the front passenger airbag should be enabled.

HOW DOES THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM WORK

The system uses a passenger airbag status indicator which illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either enabled or disabled.

Note: When you first switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



The indicator lamps are in the center of the instrument panel.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable the front passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag under these conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.

- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables the front passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp.
- If you have installed the child restraint and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch your vehicle off, remove the child restraint from your vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- After you have installed a rearward facing child restraint, make sure the passenger airbag indicator off illuminates. If the passenger airbag indicator on illuminates, remove the rearward-facing child restraint from the front passenger seat.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp.

Airbags

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator off lamp is illuminated, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch your vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart your vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains illuminated even after this, you should advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the state of the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.
- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.

- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The listed conditions could cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat could appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions listed.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly.

If the airbag readiness light is on, do the following:

- Pull your vehicle over.
- Switch your vehicle off.
- Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction if found.
- Restart your vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster remains illuminated, there may be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle in for service immediately.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Customer Relationship Center.

Airbags

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.



WARNING: Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, the rear seats are the safest place for children.



WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



WARNING: Do not stow objects in the seatback map pocket or hang objects off a seatback if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of serious injury.



WARNING: Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM INDICATORS

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Adult	OFF: Not Illuminated	Enabled
	ON: Illuminated	

Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

WHAT IS EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE

Emergency Assistance is a system that automatically uses your paired phone to call the emergency services in the event of a severe accident.

HOW DOES EMERGENCY ASSISTANCE WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, your vehicle can contact emergency services by dialing the emergency number through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone.

To switch Emergency Assistance on and off please view the settings information.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 32).

Note: *If any user sets Emergency Assistance to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If Emergency Assistance is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

Not all crashes deploys an airbag or activates the fuel pump shut-off. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone, SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time, about 10 seconds, to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial Emergency.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call Emergency, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the Emergency operator, and then the occupant in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all Emergency systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS



WARNING: Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



WARNING: For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth-enabled and compatible with the system.

Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)



WARNING: Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.



WARNING: Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Emergency Assistance does not work if any of the following occur:

- Your cellular phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone thrown from your vehicle is the one paired and connected to the system.

Note: *The SYNC Emergency Assistance feature only operates in territories that are supporting the feature.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC Emergency Assistance works with most cellular phones, some could have trouble using this feature.*

Emergency Assistance works correctly when all of the following occur:

- SYNC works properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The Emergency Assistance feature is set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone has the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone has adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle has battery power and is in a territory where Emergency Assistance is supported.

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m.

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

USING THE REMOTE CONTROL



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows, glass roof or other controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use your remote control to access various vehicle systems.

Note: The buttons on your remote may vary depending on the vehicle region or options.

Unlock



Press the button to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 74).

Lock



Press the button to lock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 74).

Panic Alarm (If Equipped)



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. See **Sounding the Panic Alarm** (page 68).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE FLIP KEY - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE FLIP KEY

Opening Your Flip Key

Press the round button on the remote control to extend the flip key.



Note: Inspect the key blade for debris. Periodically clean with a brush.

Keys and Remote Controls

Closing Your Flip Key

Press and hold the round button on the remote control to fold the key blade when not in use.



REMOVING THE KEY BLADE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



Push the release button on your passive key and pull the key blade out.

SOUNDING THE PANIC ALARM

(IF EQUIPPED)



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

Note: The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash.

Note: We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Keys and Remote Controls

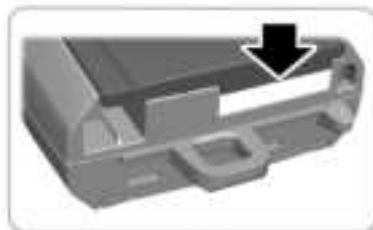


CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.



1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.

Keys and Remote Controls

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: FLIP KEY



3. Insert a screwdriver, and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Press the button to release the key blade before beginning the procedure.



Keys and Remote Controls

1. Insert a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



3. Carefully remove the cover.



4. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.



Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

5. Remove the battery.
6. Install a new battery with the + facing up.
7. Replace the battery cover.



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

Keys and Remote Controls

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

You must have two previously programmed remote controls inside your vehicle and the new, unprogrammed remote controls readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare remote control programmed if two previously programmed remote controls are not available. Make sure that your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you perform any steps out of sequence.

Note: You can program a maximum of four remote controls to your vehicle.

Note: If your programmed remote controls get lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded remote, you need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. Store an extra programmed remote away from your vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconvenience. Contact an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement remote controls.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Place the first programmed remote in the backup slot. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 181). With your foot off the brake pedal, press and release the push button ignition switch.
2. Wait five seconds and then press and release the push button ignition switch again.
3. Remove the remote control.

4. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed remote control in the backup slot. Press and release the push button ignition switch.
5. Wait five seconds and then press and release the push button ignition switch again. Keep the ignition on for at least 3 seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Remove the remote control.
7. Place the unprogrammed remote control in the backup slot and press and release the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete. With your foot on the brake pedal, press the push button ignition switch to verify the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new remote control.

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 7. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: FLIP KEY

General Information

You can program your own remote control to your vehicle. This procedure programs both the engine immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle.

Only use remote controls with an integrated mechanical key.

You must have two previously programmed remote controls and the new unprogrammed remote readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare remote control programmed if the two previously programmed remote controls are not available.

Keys and Remote Controls

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

Steps for Programming Your Spare Remote Control

1. Insert the first previously programmed key into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first previously programmed key from the ignition.
4. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously programmed key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed key from the ignition.
7. After three seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds until you hear the door locks cycle.
9. Remove the newly programmed key from the ignition.

The key starts the engine if programming is successful. You can operate the keyless remote entry system with the new remote control with integrated key.

If programming is not successful, wait 20 seconds and repeat steps 1 through 8. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

Note: You can program a maximum of six remote controls to your vehicle.

USING THE VALET MODE

What is Valet Mode

The valet mode allows you to limit the access of some features on the touchscreen.

Enabling Classic Valet Mode

Make sure the remote control is in your vehicle.

1. From the settings menu, press Valet Mode. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Enter a four digit code to lock the touchscreen.
3. Re-enter the same four digit code to complete enabling valet mode.

Disabling Classic Valet Mode

1. Press Exit Valet Mode.
2. Enter your four digit code to disable valet mode and unlock the touchscreen.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Key battery low Replace soon	Replace remote control battery.

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors.

Locking the Doors



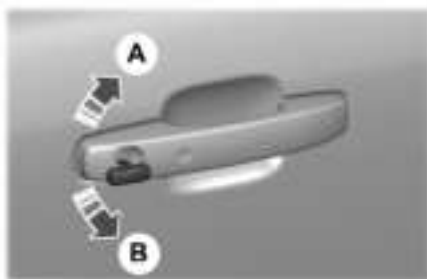
Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

You can also use the remote control to lock or unlock the tailgate if your vehicle comes with a power tailgate lock. See **Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate** (page 81).

Note: For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See **Keyless Entry** (page 78).

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

If there is a power door lock fault you can use the key blade to lock and unlock the doors.



- A Lock.
- B Unlock.

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the front doors.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

Note: The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Pull the interior door handle to unlock and open a door.

Doors and Locks

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door using the interior door handle.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. The vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h.
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door.

Note: Autounlock operates for only 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Autounlock on or off.

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked after requesting a lock.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

The turn signals will not flash when you press the lock button once and the hood or any door is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Locks.
3. Switch Mislock Chirp on or off.

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm return to their previous state.

DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when all doors are locked. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any front door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver door ajar	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door ajar	
Rear left door ajar	
Rear right door ajar	
Hood ajar	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Can accessories such as steps or handles be used with the latch assembly?

- Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

Keyless Entry (If Equipped)

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m from the front door handles.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle Settings. See **Settings** (page 631).
2. Press Locks.
3. Press KeyFree.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function (If Equipped)

You can enable the two-stage unlocking function allowing you to unlock only the driver door when you touch the unlock sensor.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking.

This setting can also be modified in the Vehicle Settings menu on the touchscreen, under Locks.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, you can unlock all of the other doors by pressing the unlock button on your remote or from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

Key Detection Alert

Displays a message in the instrument cluster if no valid key is detected, when you exit your vehicle with a key, after the last front door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in run, indicating your vehicle is still on. The horn sounds if you have driven the vehicle and reached a speed of 25 km/h and the above mentioned conditions are met.

You can switch the audible alert on or off.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Settings** (page 631).
2. Switch Key Detection Alert On or Off.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors



Keyless Entry (If Equipped)

With your passive key within 1 m of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful not to touch the lock sensor at the same time or pull on the door handle too quickly. The intelligent access system requires a brief delay to authenticate your passive key.

Locking the Doors



With your passive key within 1 m of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful not to touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

- If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 78). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

- If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Easy Entry and Exit (If Equipped)

HOW DOES EASY ENTRY AND EXIT WORK

This feature moves the driver seat rearward up to 5 cm when you switch the ignition off. The driver seat returns to its previous position when you switch the ignition on.

SWITCHING EASY ENTRY AND EXIT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Easy Entry/Exit.

If you press any adjustment or memory button when in easy exit mode, the system cancels the operation.

Tailgate

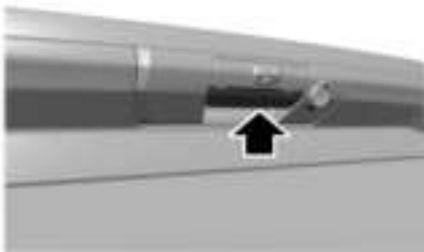
TAILGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

OPENING THE TAILGATE

OPENING THE TAILGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

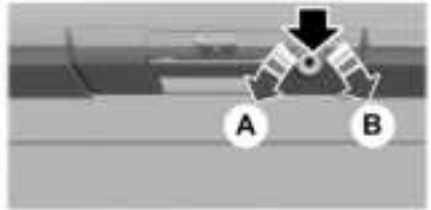


Pull up on the handle to release the tailgate.

Note: You may need to unlock the tailgate first.

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING THE TAILGATE

Manual



A Lock.

B Unlock.

1. Insert the ignition key into the tailgate lock.
2. Turn it to the left to lock the tailgate.
3. Turn it to the right to unlock the tailgate.

Power

You can lock and unlock the tailgate with the remote control or power door unlock control.

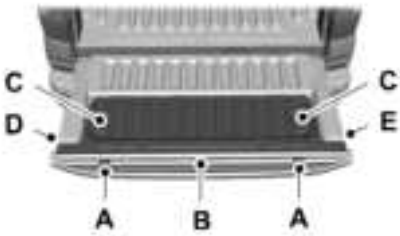
TAILGATE WORK SURFACE

The tailgate work surface is a durable and functional surface on the inside portion of your tailgate you can use to perform various tasks.

To use the tailgate work surface, fold down the tailgate.

Tailgate

Note: Ruler is subject to thermal variations with measurement errors of ± 5 mm.



- A Clamp pocket.
- B Ruler.
- C Cup holder.
- D Bottle opener.
- E Bag holder.



The tailgate work surface contains clamp pockets that allow you to secure work material.

Note: Damage could occur to the tailgate if the vertical clamp arm is overloaded in any direction.

Note: Do not put more than 10 kg in the bag holder.

Note: When you have finished using the tailgate work surface, make sure you remove all of your belongings from the tailgate, then close the tailgate.

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting your vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.*

HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch your vehicle off.

It disarms when you switch your vehicle on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery backup alarm.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above, sounds the alarm again.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for five minutes.

WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS (If Equipped)

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS (If Equipped)

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Security

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM (If Equipped)

The battery backup alarm is a standalone alarm sounder that has its own internal circuitry and a recharging battery which is charged when the engine is running. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system or if the battery backup sounder itself becomes unplugged from the vehicle's electrical harness. The alarm sounds from its own power source if that occurs.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, all sensors and perimeter sensing.

All Sensors

All sensors is the standard setting.

In all sensors, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle or if you are transporting the vehicle as this could trigger the alarm.*

Perimeter Sensing

In perimeter sensing, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

All the other equipped sensors activate when you arm the alarm in this mode.

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Alarm System.
3. Press Motion Sensors and choose a setting.

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch your vehicle off.

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to all sensors.*

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Alarm System.
3. Press Ask on Exit.
4. Switch Ask on Exit on or off.

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm To stop alarm, start vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 144).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position you prefer.
3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Remove the key from the ignition.
2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

Note: Applicable to vehicles with steering wheel lock.

HORN



Press on the center of the steering wheel near the horn icon to activate the horn.

Steering Wheel

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated steering wheel if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, exhaustion or other physical conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, especially if the heated steering wheel is used for long periods of time.



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the touchscreen near the climate controls. The button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on. To turn it off, press the heated steering wheel button again.

Note: *The vehicle must be running to use the heated steering wheel.*

Note: *A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.*

Note: *Depending on the remote start settings, the heated steering wheel may remain on after remote starting your vehicle. It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time the engine was switched off.*

Note: *In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.*

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Do not manually move the wiper arms for service activities.

Note: For vehicles with a service position, make sure the windshield wipers are in this position before proceeding. To place the wiper arms in a service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode, switch on the wipers and switch your vehicle off when the wipers are at their highest position.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe/Auto wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.



Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

For vehicles with auto lamps, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers, when turned on, automatically control the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers if the rain sensors detect moisture on the windshield.

Wipers and Washers

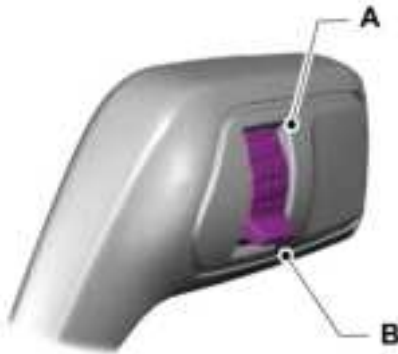
Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Rain sensing on or off.

Note: When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. When you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature on, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR



- A High sensitivity.
- B Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to set the rain sensor sensitivity.

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

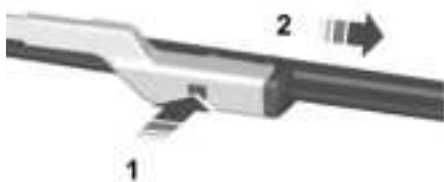
REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

Note: Do not manually move the wiper arms to service position, doing so may damage the wiper motor. To place the wiper arms in a service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode, switch on the wipers and switch your vehicle off when the wipers are at their highest position.

Wipers and Washers

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.



Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See

Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off (page 90).

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 5°C, use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

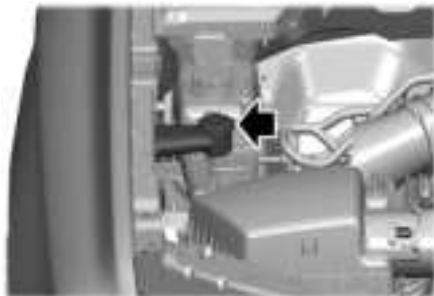
SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Wipers.
3. Switch Courtesy Wipe on or off.

Note: When you switch the feature on, the wipers make an additional single wipe at the end of the washer request. When you switch it off, the wipers finish the current washer request.

Wipers and Washers

ADDING WASHER FLUID



1. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
2. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 91).
3. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Windshield Washer Fluid	WSS-M14P19-A

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS (If Equipped)



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low for vehicles equipped with a washer fluid level sensor.

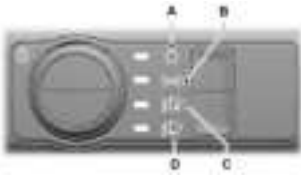
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 89). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 89).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

Note: The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

Note: For vehicles with grille-mounted auxiliary high beam lamps, the lamps switch on and off with the high beam headlamps.

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC HEADLAMP LEVELING

Your vehicle has a dynamic leveling system. The headlamps do not require additional aim adjustment.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL HEADLAMP LEVELING

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams:

Exterior Lighting



1. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

Note: Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

Note: Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

Autolamp Exit Delay

You can adjust the amount of time the autolamps remain on after you switch off your vehicle. Use the touchscreen to choose a delay setting.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Press Autolamp Delay.
4. Select a setting.

Note: If the setting is off, the external lamps switch off immediately when you shut down your vehicle.

Note: You can pull the turn signal toward you to manually switch off the autolamp exit delay.

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF



WARNING: The daytime running lamps system may not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS (If Equipped)

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

- 2.



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Note: The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS (If Equipped)

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the rear fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

Exterior Lighting

2.



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

SWITCHING THE CARGO LAMPS ON

Pickup Bed Lamps



The pickup bed lamps turn on when opening any door.

Note: The cargo lamps turn off after a short period of time.

Using the Cargo Lamp Switch



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the lamps on and off.

Note: If the cargo lamps turned on automatically, this button does not turn them off.

Using the Roller Shutter

The cargo lamps switch on when you open the roller shutter. See **Opening and Closing the Roller Shutter** (page 405).

SWITCHING WELCOME LIGHTING ON AND OFF

Welcome lighting slowly turns on the exterior lamps when you approach your vehicle with an authenticated device or unlock the doors.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Welcome Lighting on or off.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Exterior Lamps On

Sounds when you open the driver door and the lighting control is left in the parking lamps position and the ignition is off.

EXTERIOR ZONE LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS EXTERIOR ZONE LIGHTING

Exterior zone lighting divides the exterior lighting into zones and allows you to switch them on and off to provide lighting around the perimeter of your vehicle.

USING THE EXTERIOR ZONE LIGHTING - EXCLUDING: SUPER DUTY

From the app launcher, press Zone Lighting to access the zone lighting controls. See **Center Display** (page 630).

Exterior Lighting

Note: Indicators on the touchscreen illuminate when the lights outside of the zone lighting control are on.

Note: You can remotely control the zone lighting using the FordPass app.

USING THE EXTERIOR ZONE LIGHTING - SUPER DUTY

From the app launcher, press Zone Lighting to access the zone lighting controls. See **Center Display** (page 630).



- A On and off button.
- B Contextual help.
- C Exterior lamp indicators.
- D All zones on and off.
- E Individual zones on and off.

You can only use zone lighting when the engine is off and the transmission is in park (P). The lighting switches off after a certain period of time to avoid excess battery drain.

Note: For vehicles with a manual transmission, you must apply the electric park brake.

Note: You can also use individual zone controls to switch on each zone.

Note: Make sure to remove exterior lighting covers when using zone lighting.

Note: When your vehicle is off and the timer has one minute remaining, the turn signals flash six times.



- A On and off button.
- B Contextual help.
- C Exterior lamp indicators.
- D All zones on and off.
- E Individual zones on and off.

You can only use zone lighting when the engine is off and the transmission is in park (P). The lighting switches off after a certain period of time to avoid excess battery drain.

Exterior Lighting

Note: For vehicles with a manual transmission, you must apply the electric park brake.

Note: You can also use individual zone controls to switch on each zone.

Note: Not all lighting is available on the vehicle for super duty chassis vehicles. The touchscreen controls for missing lighting features remain to support aftermarket lighting equipment.

Note: Make sure to remove exterior lighting covers when using zone lighting.

Note: When your vehicle is off and the timer has one minute remaining, the turn signals flash six times.

Note: Indicators on the touchscreen illuminate when the lights outside of the zone lighting control are on.

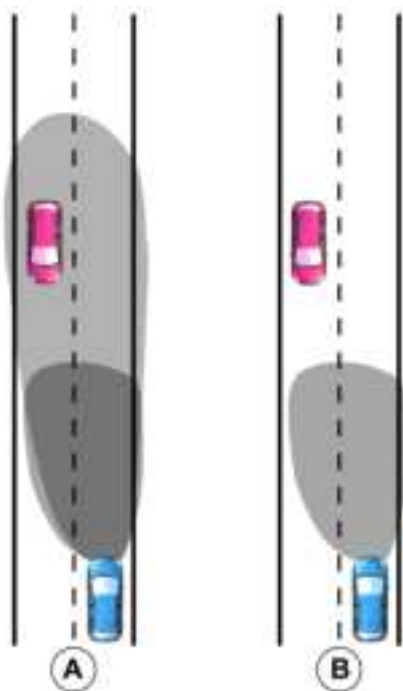
Note: You can remotely control the zone lighting using the FordPass app.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

Exterior Lighting



WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



WARNING: Inspect and replace the windshield wiper blades regularly to make sure the camera sensor has a clear view. The windshield wiper blades must be the correct length.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h.

Note: *The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.*

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Auto High Beam on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

Exterior Lighting

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING (IF EQUIPPED)

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

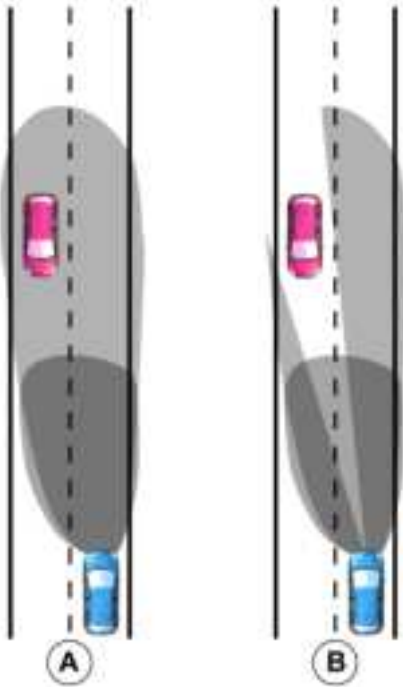
Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera fault Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

HOW DOES GLARE FREE LIGHTING WORK

Glare free lighting enhances visibility and minimizes glare for other road users.

Exterior Lighting



- A Without glare free lighting.
- B With glare free lighting.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not adapt the light.



WARNING: The system may not adapt the lighting to avoid glare if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles such as guard rails.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.



WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h.

The system adapts the lighting to avoid glare if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.

Exterior Lighting

GLARE FREE LIGHTING LIMITATIONS

The system turns off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h.

Note: The deactivation speed is lower on curves.

SWITCHING GLARE FREE LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
2. Press Lighting.
3. Switch Glare Free Lighting on or off.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

OVERRIDING GLARE FREE LIGHTING



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch glare free lighting back on.

GLARE FREE LIGHTING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

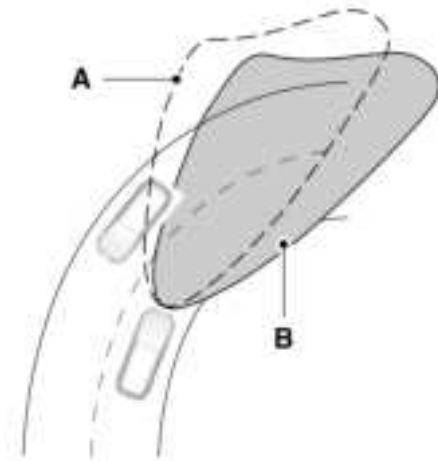
Exterior Lighting

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)

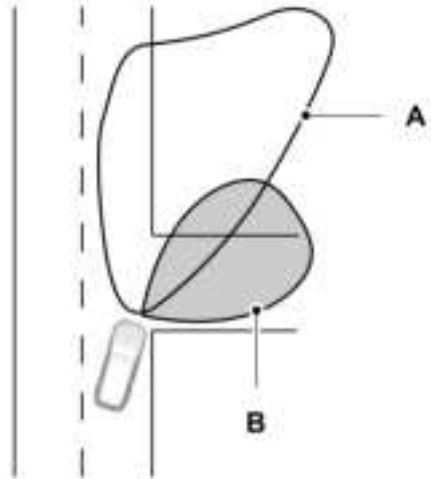
HOW DOES ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING WORK

Dynamic Bending Lamps (If Equipped)

Uses steering wheel and vehicle speed input to adjust the headlamps.



- A Without dynamic bending lamps.
- B With dynamic bending lamps.



- A Headlamp beam.
- B Static bending lamp beam.

Note: Depending on the angle of the steering wheel, the brightness and activation of the feature may vary.

Cornering Lamps (If Equipped)

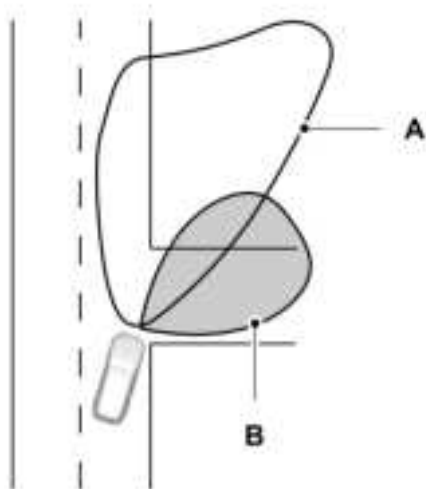
Illuminates the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel or when you switch the turn signal lamps on. They turn on when the vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.

Note: Only the cornering lamp located on the side where your vehicle is turning illuminates.

Static Bending Lamps (If Equipped)

Illuminates the inside of a corner when you are turning the steering wheel.

Exterior Lighting



- A Headlamp beam.
- B Cornering lamp beam.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

Set the lighting control to the autolamps position to use adaptive front lighting.

Note: Other lighting control positions do not turn on adaptive front lighting.

EXTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the exterior lamps?

- Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist or small droplets without streak marks is normal condensation. This may occur under certain environmental conditions and will clear on its own.

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time may vary depending on the outside temperature and environment, the drive duration or speed.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- Standing water or a water puddle inside the lamp. Condensation with drip marks present on the interior of the lens.

Exterior Lighting

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Interior Lighting

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On



Press the button on the overhead console toward the icon.

Switching All of the Interior Lamps Off



Press the button on the overhead console toward the icon.

When the switch is in this position the interior lights do not turn on when the door is open.

SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Press the edge of the lamp lens.

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



Press the lens to switch the lamps on or off.

Note: If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF

The switch is on the overhead console.



Set the switch to the middle position.

Interior Lighting

When you switch the interior lamp function on, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open a door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



Note: There are six levels of brightness adjustments available during the day and twelve levels of brightness adjustments available at night.

AMBIENT LIGHTING - VEHICLES WITH: AMBIENT LIGHTING

The ambient lighting system illuminates the interior of your vehicle.

The ambient lighting controls are on the touchscreen and to access, press General from the settings menu and then scroll down to the Ambient Lighting menu.

Switching Ambient Lighting On



Press the toggle button once to switch on the ambient lighting.

Adjusting the Brightness



Drag the slider left or right to adjust the ambient lighting intensity.

Switching Ambient Lighting Off



Press the toggle button once to switch off the ambient lighting.

INTERIOR LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Lift again or press it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

Windows

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Within one second, press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: *Global opening will only respond to a press and hold of the unlock button for a short period of time after the unlock button is pressed on the remote control.*

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Global Open on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING (If Equipped)



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: *Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 108).*

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF (If Equipped)

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Windows.
3. Switch Global Close on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift and hold the window control switch within two seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



WARNING: When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.



Press the window control switch to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R), to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

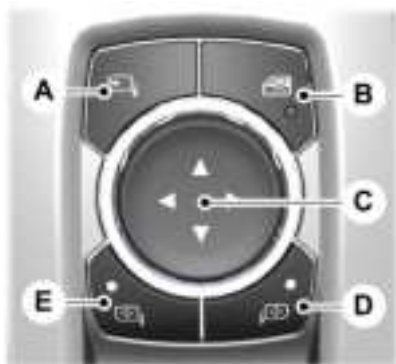
Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Power fold.
- B Window lock.
- C Adjustment control.
- D Right-hand mirror.
- E Left-hand mirror.

To adjust the mirrors, switch your vehicle on, with the push button start in accessory mode or your vehicle running.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLDING MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Directional Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

When your vehicle is running, the forward-facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the turn signal.

Puddle Lamps (If Equipped)

The puddle lamps turn on when you approach your vehicle with a remote control or phone. If your vehicle has auto-folding mirrors, the puddle lamps are only on if the mirrors are unfolded and turn off when the mirrors fold.

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off** (page 136).

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 336).

Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

See **What Is Blind Spot Information System** (page 370).

Exterior Mirrors

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: POWER FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: *This feature requires you to switch the exterior mirrors autofold on.*



For tight parking conditions, press the control switch to fold the mirrors.

Press the control switch again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: *Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control again.*

The left-hand and right-hand mirrors move at different rates. For example, one mirror may stop while the other one continues to move. This is normal.

If you press the control switch to fold in the mirrors with autofold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: *The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.*

Note: *If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating. Wait approximately three minutes with your vehicle running, and up to 10 minutes with your vehicle off, for the system to reset and operate as normal.*

Switching Autofold On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Mirrors.

3. Switch Autofold on or off.

Loose, Noisy or Intermittently Working Mirrors

If you manually fold the power folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. Reset the mirrors if:

- They vibrate when you drive.
- They feel loose.
- They do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.
- The mirrors are intermittently working.

To reset the power fold feature, use the power folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Operate the power folding mirrors an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

If the above process does not help you to fix the mirror, perform the following steps.

1. Fold or retract both mirrors manually.
2. Using the power folding control switch, operate the mirrors until you hear an audible click.
3. Operate the power folding an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

Repeat this process as needed each time you manually fold the mirrors.

Directional Indicator Mirrors (if Equipped)

When your vehicle is running, the forward facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the turn signal.

Exterior Mirrors

Puddle Lamps (If Equipped)

The puddle lamps turn on when you approach your vehicle with a remote control or phone. If your vehicle has auto folding mirrors, the puddle lamps are only on if the mirrors are unfolded and turn off when the mirrors fold.

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off** (page 136).

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 336).

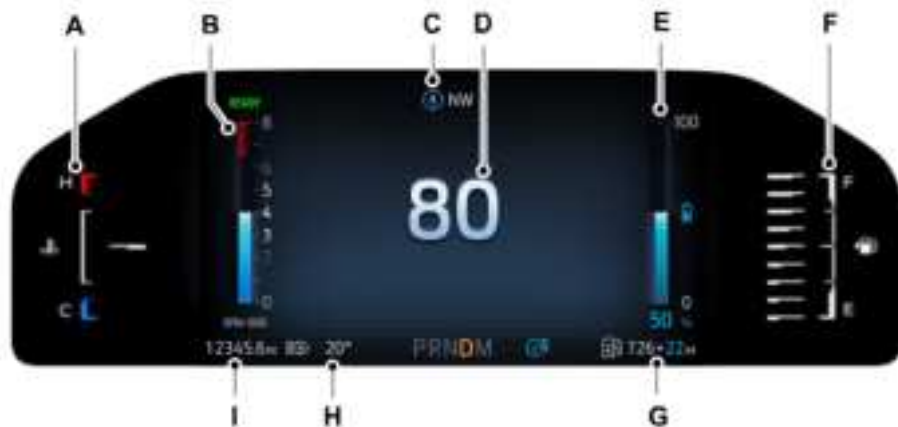
Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

See **What Is Blind Spot Information System** (page 370).

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Note: Depending on the setting you select, your cluster could look different than what you see here.



- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Tachometer.
- C Compass.
- D Speedometer.
- E High voltage battery gauge.
- F Fuel gauge.
- G Vehicle driving range.
- H Outside air temperature.
- I Odometer.

Note: The tachometer and high voltage battery gauge can be configured on or off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Note: Depending on the setting you select, your cluster could look different than what you see here.

Instrument Cluster



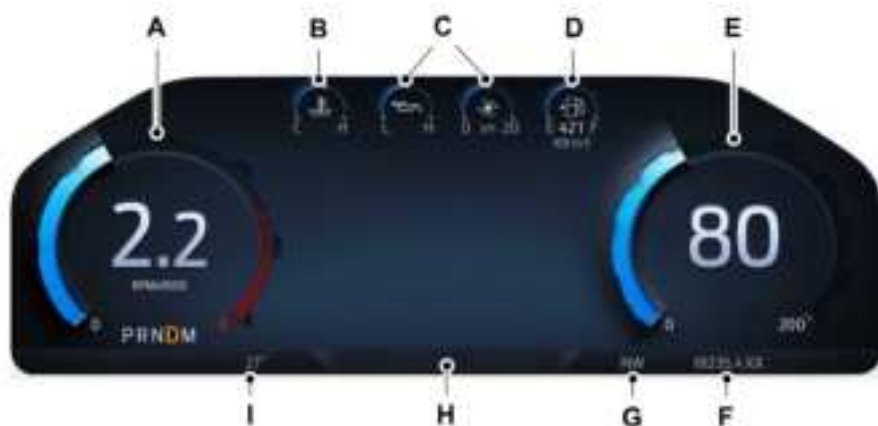
- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Tachometer.
- C Compass.
- D Speedometer.
- E Engine oil temperature.
- F Fuel gauge.
- G Distance to empty.
- H Outside air temperature.
- I Odometer.

Note: The tachometer and engine oil temperature gauge can be configured on or off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Note: Depending on the setting you select, your cluster could look different than what you see here.

Instrument Cluster



- A Tachometer.
- B Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- C Configurable gauges.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Speedometer.
- F Odometer.
- G Compass.
- H Information bar.
- I Ambient temperature.

TACHOMETER

Indicates the engine speed.

The red line indicates the point at which engine revolutions could become limited to avoid over-revving the engine.

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

Secondary Speedometer

You can select a secondary speedometer that displays other measurement units.

Note: You cannot change the units of the primary speedometer.

Instrument Cluster

FUEL GAUGE

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 80 km, 40 km, 20 km and 0 km.

Note: The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by such as:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.
- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Towing.

Note: It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery or fill your tank. You can reset the average energy use by selecting EV Driving History from the settings menu in the instrument cluster display.

Note: Electric range is lower in cold temperatures due to reduced energy capacity in the high voltage battery. Set a departure time and cabin temperature to maintain battery temperature for best range and performance. See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 188). See **Charging Settings** (page 234).

Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

Instrument Cluster

Electric Range

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY GAUGE - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Displays the high voltage battery state of charge. A full, or 100%, charge represents the total amount of energy you can get from plugging your vehicle in.

Charging Status

When you open the door an expanded high voltage battery gauge displays. When plugged in, additional charging information displays such as the charging start or end time, the state of charge limit at which charging stops. You can modify your vehicle charge settings on the center display screen. See **Charging Settings** (page 234).

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 525).

ENGINE OIL PRESSURE GAUGE - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the engine oil pressure. The gauge turns red when the oil pressure warning lamp illuminates.

This gauge is available in an information on demand screen. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 123).

ENGINE OIL PRESSURE GAUGE - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the engine oil pressure. The gauge turns red when the oil pressure warning lamp illuminates.

Note: *This is a configurable gauge.*

TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE GAUGE - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the transmission fluid temperature.

Note: *Special operating conditions such as snowplowing, towing or off-road use can cause higher than normal operating temperatures.*

This gauge is available in an information on demand screen. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 123).

TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE GAUGE - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the transmission fluid temperature.

Note: *Special operating conditions such as snowplowing, towing or off-road use can cause higher than normal operating temperatures.*

Note: *This is a configurable gauge.*

ADBLUE® GAUGE - DIESEL, VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the current AdBlue® level. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 214).

This gauge is available in an information on demand screen. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 123).

ADBLUE® GAUGE - DIESEL, VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Indicates the current AdBlue® level. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System** (page 214).

Note: *This is a configurable gauge.*

Instrument Cluster Display

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN/12 INCH SCREEN, EXCLUDING: RAPTOR



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Back button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

Back Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

OK Button

Press to make a selection.

Menu Button

Press to display the submenus.

Scroll Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

Status Indicator



Menu items with a checkbox indicate a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, an unchecked box indicates the feature is off.

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS - RAPTOR, VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Instrument Cluster Display



- A OK button.
- B Back and Menu button.

Back Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

OK Button

Press to make a selection.

Menu Button

Press to display the submenus.

Scroll Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

Status Indicator



Menu items with a check box indicate a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - PLUG- IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.*

Main Menu	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
MyView	Configure MyView	See Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display (page 129).
Trip/Fuel	Trip 1	
	Trip 2	
	This Trip	
	Electric Economy	
	Fuel Economy	
	Eco Coach	
	Auto StartStop	
	Seatbelt Status	

Instrument Cluster Display

Main Menu	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
	Local Hazard Information	
Off-Road	Off-Road Status	
	Power Distribution	
	Truck Gauges	
	Engine Info	
Towing	Trailer Information	
	Towing Status	
Audio	See Audio System (page 626).	
Phone	See Phone (page 635).	
Navigation	See Navigation (page 640).	
Settings	Screen Content	Secondary Speedometer
		Left Gauge
		Right Gauge
		Eco Advice
		Brake Coach
		Border Crossing Reminder
		Turn-By-Turn Indication
	Classic View	Round Speedometer Gauge
		Digital Speedometer only
Vehicle Maintenance	Oil Life	
	Engine Air Filter	
	Tire Pressure	

Instrument Cluster Display

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN, EXCLUDING: RAPTOR

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.*

Main Menu	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
MyView	Configure MyView	See Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display (page 129).
Trip/Fuel	Trip 1	
	Trip 2	
	Fuel Economy	
	Eco Coach	
	Auto StartStop	
	Seatbelt Status	
	Local Hazard Information	
Off-Road	Off-Road Status	
	Power Distribution	
	Vehicle Gauges	
	Engine Info	
Towing	Trailer Information	
	Towing Status	
Audio	See Audio System (page 626).	
Phone	See Phone (page 635).	
Navigation	See Navigation (page 640).	
Settings	Screen Content	Secondary Speedometer
		Left Gauge
		Right Gauge

Instrument Cluster Display

Main Menu	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
		Border Crossing Reminder
		Turn-By-Turn Indication
	Classic View	Round Speedometer Gauge
		Digital Speedometer Only
Vehicle Maintenance	Oil Life	
	AdBlue® Gauge	
	AdBlue® Level	
	AdBlue® Info	
	Exhaust Filter	
	Engine Air Filter	
	Tire Pressure	

Instrument Cluster Display

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN, EXCLUDING: RAPTOR

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.*

Menu Item	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
MyView	Configure MyView	See Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display (page 129).
Trip/Fuel	Trip 1	
	Trip 2	
	Auto Start/Stop	
	Seat belts	
	Driver Assistance	
Off-Road	Off-Road Status	
	Pitch & Roll	
	Power distribution	
	Driver Assistance	
Towing	Trailer Information	
	Trailer light status	
	Towing status	
	Driver Assistance	
Navigation	See Navigation (page 640).	
Phone	See Phone (page 635).	
Audio	See Audio System (page 626).	
Settings	Configure Gauges	Show selectable gauges
		Left Selectable Gauge
		Right Selectable Gauge

Instrument Cluster Display

Menu Item	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
	Secondary Speedometer	
	Turn-by-turn indication	
	Border Crossing	Reminder On
		Reminder Off
Vehicle Maintenance	Tire Pressure	
	Tire Monitor	
	Engine Information	
	Oil Life	
	AdBlue® Info	
	AdBlue® Level	
	Engine Air Filter	
	Exhaust Filter	

Instrument Cluster Display

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - RAPTOR, VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: *For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.*

Menu Item	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
MyView	Configure MyView	See Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display (page 129).
Trip/Fuel	Trip 1	
	Trip 2	
	Fuel economy	
	Auto StartStop	
	Seat belts	
	Driver Assistance	
Off-Road	Off-Road Status	
	Raptor status	
	Pitch & Roll	
	Power distribution	
	Driver Assistance	
	MyGauges	
Towing	Measurements	
	Trailer Information	
	Trailer light status	
	Towing status	
	Driver Assistance	
Navigation	See Navigation (page 640).	
Phone	See Phone (page 635).	
Audio	See Audio System (page 626).	

Instrument Cluster Display

Menu Item	Submenu 1	Submenu 2
Settings	Configure Gauges	Show selectable gauges
		Left Selectable Gauge
		Right Selectable Gauge
	Secondary Speedometer	
	Turn-by-turn indication	
	Performance Shift Indicator	Enabled
		Shift Tone
		Shift Point
	Border Crossing	Reminder On
		Reminder Off
Vehicle Maintenance	Tire Pressure	
	Tire Monitor	
	Engine Information	
	Oil Life	
	AdBlue® Info	
	AdBlue® Level	
	Engine Air Filter	
	Exhaust Filter	

Instrument Cluster Display

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN

Adding Screens Using MyView

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select MyView.
2. Select Configure MyView.
3. Select an item from the list that you want to include in your MyView list.

Note: A minimum of two items must be selected.

Note: You can select a maximum of seven items to include in MyView.

4. Press the OK button.

Configuring Gauges

1. Select Settings.
2. Select Screen Content.
3. Select Left Gauge or Right Gauge to switch the gauge on or off.

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN

Adding Screens Using MyView

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select MyView.
2. Select Configure MyView.
3. Select an item from the list that you want to include in your MyView list.

Note: A minimum of two items must be selected.

Note: You can select a maximum of seven items to include in MyView.

4. Press the OK button.

Configuring Gauges

1. Select Settings.
2. Select Configure Gauges.
3. Select to change the left-hand side and right-hand side gauges.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

This display comes with an instant fuel economy gauge, along with the average fuel economy. The gauge continuously averages the fuel economy since your last reset.

The system includes both the electric only and the hybrid operation in the calculation. More electric only driving results in a greater average fuel economy.

When the gasoline engine is off, changes from the instant fuel economy gauge to an electric driving message.

Note: Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.

EV COACH - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

EV coach can help you get the most out of your vehicle's electric driving capabilities.

When you are accelerating or maintaining speed you see a blue or white solid bar indicating vehicle power. You may also see a blue rectangular box which shows the power level at which the engine turns on.

Instrument Cluster Display

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar is blue. This means you are in electric operation and the engine is off.
- When the power level is outside of the box, the color of the bar is white. This means you are in hybrid operation with a combination of the electric motor and the engine providing vehicle power.

When you are decelerating with either your foot off the accelerator pedal or on the brake pedal, a green or white solid bar displays indicating the power being used to slow down your vehicle. You may also see a green rectangular box which shows the amount of power that can be recaptured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar will be all green. This means that the regenerative braking system is being used to efficiently slow your vehicle down and return the maximum percentage of energy to the high voltage battery.
- When the power level is outside of the box, then the bar is white. This means both the regenerative braking system and conventional braking system are being used.

ELECTRIC ECONOMY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

This screen shows your average driving distance per kilowatt-hour of electricity used on your plug-in hybrid vehicle. The value is calculated only when your available electric range is being used and the gasoline engine is off.

Distance per full charge is also shown. This is an estimate of the electric range you would have if you plugged in and fully charged your vehicle right now. The higher your electric economy, the higher your distance per full charge.

Your electric economy is affected by your driving style and route, climate control use, outside temperature and other factors. Best economy is achieved with mild to moderate acceleration and braking, moderate speeds and low climate control usage.

Note: *Electric economy is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 129).*

BRAKE COACH - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered.

Note: *While regenerative braking works in all drive modes, brake coach display may not be available in all drive modes.*

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 123).

TRIP SUMMARY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The trip summary displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip screen.

VEHICLE CHARGING STATUS - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The vehicle charge status displays when you switch off your vehicle and when you switch on your vehicle when plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start or charge end time as appropriate. You can modify your charge settings through the touchscreen. See **Charging Settings** (page 234).

Trip Computer

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate to the main menu.
2. Select Trip/Fuel.
3. Select Trip 1 or Trip 2.

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate to the main menu.
2. Select Trip/Fuel.
3. Select Trip 1 or Trip 2.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

Remote Start

WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and to adjust the interior temperature according to the settings that you chose.

REMOTE START PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- The ignition is on.
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- Remote start is not enabled.

Note: Do not use remote start if the fuel level is low.

Note: You can use remote start with FordPass. See **Connecting FordPass to the Modem** (page 623).

ENABLING REMOTE START

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Remote Start Setup.

3. Switch Remote Start on or off.

Note: To remote start with FordPass, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 623).

REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the FordPass app to start the vehicle.

- The vehicle locks the doors.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The horn sounds if the system fails to start.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: You may have to wait a short period of time before remotely starting the vehicle after the vehicle stops running.

The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started it. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you need to turn the ignition on and off before you can use remote start again.

Use the FordPass app to switch the vehicle off.

Remote Start

REMOTE START SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle.
See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Remote Start Setup.

Switching Climate Control Auto Mode On and Off

1. Press Climate Control.
2. Press Auto or Last Settings.

Note: *If you switch the auto mode on, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C. When you switch the vehicle on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.*

Note: *If you switch the last settings on, the system remembers the last used settings.*

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press Seats.
2. Press Auto or Off.

Note: *If you switch the heated seat settings on, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.*

Heated Steering Wheel Settings

1. Press Seats and Steering Wheel.
2. Press Auto or Off.

Note: *If you switch the heated steering wheel settings on, the heated steering wheel turns on during cold weather.*

Remote Start Duration

1. Press Duration.
2. Press the duration you prefer.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, the temperature is set to the highest setting, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window and heated mirrors also turn on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: When maximum defrost is on, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the A/C.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could damage the heated rear window gridlines not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press **+** or **-** to select the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF (IF

EQUIPPED)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 141).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Turn the control on the left-hand side of the climate control to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: This control also sets the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Turn the control on the right-hand side of the climate control to set the right-hand temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control



Press the button.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.

- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press AUTO during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press AUTO during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press AUTO.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press AUTO.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press MAX A/C.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press AUTO.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

CLIMATE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: Even if the temperature rises to above 4°C there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



Illuminates when the outside air temperature is between 4°C and 0°C.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, the temperature is set to the highest setting, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window and heated mirrors also turn on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: When maximum defrost is on, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the A/C.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could damage the heated rear window gridlines not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Turn the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF (IF

EQUIPPED)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 141).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Turn the temperature control counterclockwise for cooler temperature settings.

Turn the temperature control clockwise for warmer temperature settings.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control



Press the button.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button on the touchscreen to access the climate controls.



Press the button.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Press and release **A/C**.
3. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
4. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct air toward the side windows.
6. Close the instrument panel air vents.

Interior Air Quality

WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

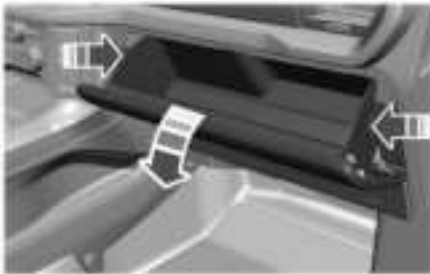
REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

To remove the lower glove compartment and access the filter:

1. Open the glove compartment.



2. Press the tab on each side.
3. Fully lower the glove compartment.
4. Pull the glove compartment toward you.

Front Seats

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



WARNING: All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always keep their whole body inside the vehicle when it is moving.



WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve lock and release button.
- C Guide sleeve.
- D Two steel stems.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Front Seats

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.



MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



Front Seats

ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve lock and release button.
- C Guide sleeve.
- D Two steel stems.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

Front Seats



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION



ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

Front Seats



WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Front Seats



WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.



Press the seat symbol on the touchscreen to select your preferred heat level or off. Then cycle through the seat icon to control the heat intensity. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: The heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings.

Note: The heated seats may turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.

VENTILATED SEATS

VENTILATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

Do not:

- Spill liquid on the front seats. This may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.
- Place cargo or objects under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents to not work properly.

SWITCHING THE VENTILATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.



Press the seat symbol on the touchscreen to switch on the ventilated seats. Then cycle through the seat icon to control the fan speed. More indicator lights indicate higher fan speeds.

Note: The ventilated seats may switch on during a remote start if they are enabled.

Note: The ventilated seats may switch on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you previously switched your vehicle off.

Note: When you switch the climate control fan speed and the ventilated seats to their maximum settings, the ventilated seats provide increased cooling.

Rear Seats - Vehicles With: Rear Seats

REAR SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.



WARNING: When reclining the backrest forward and backward, take care not to get your hands caught between the seat backrest and the frame, catches or mechanism. Failure to take care may result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.



WARNING: When unfolding the seat backrests, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



WARNING: Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS

Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraints



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button - if equipped.
- D Two steel stems.

Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



Rear Seats - Vehicles With: Rear Seats

The head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button - If equipped.
- D Two steel stems.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

The outermost head restraints are non-adjustable.

Pull the center head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the center head restraint:

1. Press and hold the unlock and remove button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before removing the head restraint.
2. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
3. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
4. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Fold the seat backrest forward before installing the head restraint.
2. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle with a seat that is unlatched or in the folded position. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

Rear Seats - Vehicles With: Rear Seats



Pull the strap to fold the backrest forward.

Note: Move the front seats forward to avoid interference between the front and rear seats. This provides more access to the back.

FOLDING THE SEATS



Pull the strap to fold the seat up.

UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: When unfolding the seat, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.



WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Pull the seat backrest up until it latches in the upright position.

Note: We recommend that you push the seat backrest upright from the passenger side of the vehicle.



Hook the strap to the center head restraint.

Rear Seats - Vehicles With: Rear Seats

UNFOLDING THE SEATS



WARNING: Make sure that cargo and other objects are not trapped under the seat cushion and that you return the seat cushion to the full-down position. Failure to do so may prevent the seat from operating properly, which could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.



WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Unhook the strap from the head restraint, then pull the strap to lower the seat.

UNFOLDING THE SEAT ARMREST

(If Equipped)



1. Grab the armrest strap while pushing the top of the armrest inward.
2. Pull the armrest strap up and out at a 45 degree angle.
3. Continue to pull down until you fully open the armrest.

Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When Child Seat Installed is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When Child Seat Installed is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

Note: *Horn sounds only when the Rear Occupant Alert is set to Alert & Horn. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

Note: It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Select Alert & Horn or Alert Only or Off.

Note: The default setting is Alert Only.

Note: If your vehicle only has the On or Off option, the default setting is on.

Note: If you choose Alert only, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

Note: You may also be able to switch the system off through the alert when it appears.

Note: Performing a vehicle system reset causes the system to switch to Alert Only or On again.

Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off (If Equipped)

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
3. Switch Child Seat Installed on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a LATCH system child seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seat for occupants.

Displays when you switch the power off after the alert conditions are met.

Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

The message displays for a short period of time. Press Close to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: *Depending on your center display system version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

Memory Function (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE MEMORY FUNCTION

The memory function recalls the driver seat position.

MEMORY FUNCTION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.



WARNING: Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

LOCATING THE MEMORY FUNCTION BUTTONS



The memory function buttons are on the driver door.

SAVING A PRESET POSITION

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Adjust the memory features to your preferred position.
3. Press and hold the preferred preset button until you hear a single tone.

A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display.

You can save up to three preset memory positions at any time.

RECALLING A PRESET POSITION

Press and release a preset button.

Note: You can recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when you place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N) if the ignition is on and the vehicle is not moving.

Note: Pressing any of the preset buttons or any memory feature control during a memory recall cancels the operation.

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB port is on the lower instrument panel below the climate control.



Note: These USB ports can also charge devices.

Note: Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.

Note: We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.

Charge Only USB Ports (If Equipped)



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- On the windshield, behind the rear view mirror.



PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device to the USB port.

Press App Launcher on the touchscreen. Press Media App. See **Center Display** (page 630).



Press the USB option.

Note: If USB device was not the previous source.



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

USB Ports



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 120V Power Outlet/230V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet is a socket that connects an electrical device to your vehicle's power supply.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use an extension cord or connect multiple devices to the power outlet. Doing so could result in overloading the power outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or property damage.

Note: The power outlet provides up to 400 Watts when the vehicle is in park (P) and it may be reduced when the vehicle is in drive (D). This wattage is divided between multiple outlets when in use at the same time.

Note: The power outlet turns off when you switch off the ignition, or when the battery voltage drops below 11 volts.

POWER OUTLET LIMITATIONS

Do not use the power outlet for these types of devices:

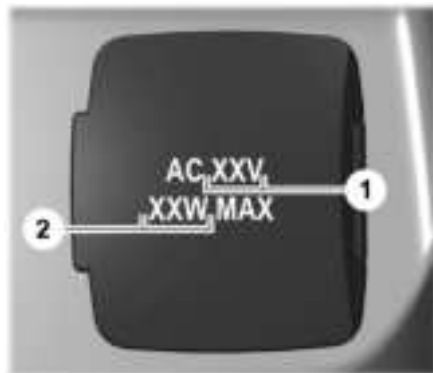
- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators.

- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet may be located on the rear of the center console or in the bed.

Rear of the Center Console



1. Maximum voltage.
2. Maximum wattage.

Note: The power rating varies depending on your vehicle options.

Note: Do not plug in devices that exceed the power rating shown on the outlet cover.

Note: Make sure the plug is designed for the outlet. Do not force the plug into the receptacle.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 120V Power Outlet/230V Power Outlet

Bed Outlet



Note: Depending on your vehicle options, the exterior outlet tray may or may not contain an on and off switch.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options, the exterior outlet tray may contain one or two outlets.

POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to indicate system status.

Indicator Status	Description
On	When the indicator is on, the outlet is providing power.
Off	When the indicator is off, there is no power to the outlet.
Flashing	When the indicator is flashing, the outlet is in a fault mode.

Fault mode

If the device exceeds 400 Watts, the power outlet turns off after five attempts to remain active and the indicator flashes. If during the five attempts you reduce the connected load below 400 Watts, the inverter provides power to the load and the indicator turns on. If the overload condition continues after five attempts, reset the system as follows:

1. Unplug your device.
2. Switch your vehicle off to let the system cool and reset the fault mode.
3. Switch your vehicle back on, but do not plug your device back in.
4. With your vehicle on, make sure the indicator remains on.
5. Make sure your device does not exceed the power limits.
6. Plug in your device and check again.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not plug electrical devices into the power outlets that exceed the maximum power rating. Incorrect use of the power outlets can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or personal injury.



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the power outlets to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A.

To prevent damage to the vehicle's battery:

- Do not use the power outlets over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow.
- Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power outlets. This could result in damage to vehicle systems.
- Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power outlets caps closed when not in use.
- Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power outlets.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.
- Using devices for extended periods may require starting and running the engine to recharge the battery.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet/ 220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE ONBOARD GENERATOR

The vehicle functions as a portable generator and can power devices that require up to the rating listed on the power outlet label.

ONBOARD GENERATOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not connect any vehicle power outlets to any premises. This can create a backfeed to utility lines. Failure to follow this instruction could result in property damage, fire, electrical shock or death.



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.



WARNING: The vehicle's engine runs while the generator is switched on. Running engines emit carbon monoxide. Only use the generator when the vehicle is outdoors. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the onboard generator to power a towable item when your vehicle is in motion unless you are using Ford approved accessories.

When you switch the power outlets on, the vehicle power down timer is disabled and the vehicle continues to be powered on.

Note: We recommend using region specific approved devices for use with the power outlet.

Note: Make sure that plugged in devices do not exceed the ratings displayed on the outlet covers.

Note: Make sure there is no damage to the outlets before driving your vehicle.

Note: Power could be limited during extreme hot or cold temperatures to optimize system performance.

Note: Close all outlet covers when not in use.

Note: Do not aim a water hose, power washer or high-powered spray nozzle directly at the power outlet cover when cleaning the bed.

Note: The gasoline engine may start and stop to provide power when the outlet is switched on.

Note: Make sure that objects are not blocking the inverter inlet and exhaust near the rear underseat storage compartment.

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet/ 220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet

Note: The climate control system may turn on and power may be limited during extreme hot or cold temperatures to optimize system performance.

Note: *Pro Power Onboard* is available when your vehicle is charging. Using the power outlets while the vehicle is charging could increase the vehicle charging time.

Note: When the outlet is switched on and the vehicle is in park (P) the engine turns off 30 minutes after the low fuel warning is displayed. After the vehicle is turned off, generator mode only operates while driving or until the vehicle is refueled.

Grounding Type

Neutral Floating

The neutral of the inverter generator is isolated from system ground.

Neutral Bonded

The neutral of the inverter generator is bonded to system ground. Connecting loads that also have neutral bonded to ground causes the ground fault detection to trip.

Note: If additional grounding measures are required, consult with a qualified electrician.

LOCATING THE OUTLETS

The power outlets are in the cabin and bed of the vehicle.

Rear of the Center Console



Bed Outlet



Note: Depending on your vehicle options, the exterior outlet tray may or may not have a circuit breaker.

Note: The outlet may be on the left or right-hand side of the bed depending on the vehicle.

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet/ 220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet

Note: Do not plug in devices that exceed the power rating shown on the outlet cover.

Note: Make sure the plug is designed for the outlet. Do not force the plug into the receptacle.

ONBOARD GENERATOR INDICATORS

Power Outlet Status Indicator

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Indicator Status	Description
On	The power outlet is working and the vehicle is on.
Off	The power outlet is off and the vehicle is off.
Flashing	The power outlet is in fault mode.

Fault Mode

The power outlet temporarily turns off power if the device exceeds the watt limit.

1. Unplug your device.
2. Switch your vehicle off to let the system cool and reset the fault mode.
3. Switch your vehicle back on, but do not plug your device back in.
4. With your vehicle on, make sure the indicator remains on.
5. Make sure your device does not exceed the power limits.
6. Plug in your device and check again.

Note: If a fault occurs again, your device may exceed the capacity available from the power outlet.

Generator Mode Power Indicator



The generator mode power indicator displays the currently used power and total available power level on the touchscreen. When generator mode is switched off the indicator displays a reduced available power level. When generator mode is switched on the indicator displays the full available power.

Note: Additional indicators may be available based on vehicle configuration.

Note: Maximum power may be reduced when the vehicle is in drive (D).

SWITCHING THE OUTLETS ON AND OFF

Using the Center Display Screen

1. Start the vehicle. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 176).
2. From the app launcher menu, press Pro Power Onboard. See **Center Display** (page 630).

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet/ 220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet

Using the Bed Controls



1. Start the vehicle. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 176).
2. Press the button to switch the power outlet on and off.

WHAT IS GENERATOR MODE

Generator mode uses the vehicle engine to increase power to the bed power outlets up to the rating listed on the power outlet label.

SWITCHING GENERATOR MODE ON AND OFF

1. Start the vehicle. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 176).
2. From the app launcher menu, press Pro Power Onboard. See **Center Display** (page 630).
3. Press Generator Mode.

Note: When the generator mode is off and the vehicle is on, you can power the devices up to 400W in the cabin through the low power mode.

RESETTING GROUND FAULT DETECTION

After disconnecting all electrical loads the ground fault can be reset using the switches on the power point, on the instrument panel or on the touchscreen.

Use the controls on the touchscreen to test the ground fault detection circuit.

RESETTING THE CIRCUIT BREAKER - VEHICLES WITH: 220-240V 6.9KW POWER OUTLET

Cabin Outlet

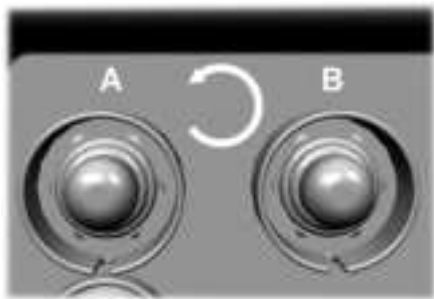


To reset the circuit breaker after it has tripped, press the button on the rear of the center console.

Note: In certain conditions the breaker may trip without notification.

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet/ 220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet

Bed Outlet



To reset the circuit breaker after it has tripped, press the button on the upper right area of the bed outlet. There are two circuit breaker buttons that correspond to the A and B outlets.

Note: *In certain conditions the breaker may trip without notification.*

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet/ 220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet

ONBOARD GENERATOR – TROUBLESHOOTING

ONBOARD GENERATOR – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Item(s) plugged in exceeded the system's maximum capacity. Try unplugging one or more items and reset. See Owner's Manual for details.	Check the displayed available power before plugging in devices. The actual power used by a device can sometimes be higher than what is printed on its label. If you overload the system, unplug the device and restart the vehicle to reset it.
Generator System is outside its operating temperature and capability is reduced. See Owner's Manual for details.	Power could be limited during extreme hot or cold temperatures to optimize system performance.
Another power source is trying to supply power to your vehicle's AC outlets. Disconnect vehicle from that power source. See Owner's Manual for details.	Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power outlets. This could result in damage to vehicle systems.
This button tests outlets for proper operation of ground fault protection. In a successful test, Pro Power Onboard turns off and displays a message.	Displays when you press the Ground Fault Test button on the touchscreen to test the ground fault detection circuit.
Pro Power Onboard detected a ground fault and turned off the affected circuit. If you did not press the Test button, see Owner's Manual.	Displays when the ground fault detection circuit test is successful or when the system detects a real ground fault condition.
Available power is reduced by current operating conditions. For better Pro Power Onboard performance, shift to Park or charge the battery by either plugging in or driving in EV Charge mode.	Current environmental operating conditions are limiting Pro Power Onboard capability. To improve performance, try one or more of the following: Reduce Pro Power Onboard load by unplugging devices. Shift the transmission to park (P). Plug in and charge the battery. See Charging Your Vehicle (page 225). Prior to using Pro Power Onboard, drive the vehicle in EV Charge or EV Later mode to increase or save battery power. See Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes (page 277).

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet/ 220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet

ONBOARD GENERATOR – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: 220-240V 2.3KW POWER OUTLET

Why is there a warning about something being plugged into the bed power outlet when I do not have anything plugged in?

- One or more bed power outlet covers may be ajar or damaged. Make sure the bed power outlets are off and the power outlet covers are properly closed and not damaged. Select OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning.
- If the bed power outlet covers are damaged, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why can I not shift my vehicle out of park (P)?

- Make sure the bed power outlet covers are properly closed and not damaged. Press OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning and to shift out of park (P).

What should I do if my instrument cluster display is malfunctioning and I cannot acknowledge the warning to put the vehicle in drive (D)?

- Turn off the vehicle and make sure nothing is plugged into the bed power outlets and all outlet covers are closed. Start the vehicle and select OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do I get a ground fault detection after I wash out the bed?

- If the power outlet gets wet, a ground fault could occur.

What happens when I press the Ground Fault Test button on the touchscreen?

- The system checks the power outlets to make sure the ground fault detection circuit is functioning properly. If the test is successful, a ground fault detected message appears on the touchscreen, and the power outlets turn off.

Why am I getting ground fault detected message without pressing the Ground Fault Test button?

- The system shows a ground fault detected message when it identifies a real ground fault condition. This can happen due to connecting a defective electrical device, damage in the inverter wiring, or water intrusion into the power outlets.

What should I do to reset the ground fault detected message?

- Disconnect all electrical devices from the power outlets and make sure all power outlets are clean and dry. Press Reset on the touchscreen or the bed power outlet switch.
- If these steps do not fix the fault, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Onboard Generator - Vehicles With: 220-240V 2.3kW Power Outlet/ 220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet

ONBOARD GENERATOR – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: 220-240V 6.9KW POWER OUTLET

Why is there a warning about something being plugged into the bed power outlet when I do not have anything plugged in?

- One or more bed power outlet covers may be ajar or damaged. Make sure the bed power outlets are off and the power outlet covers are properly closed and not damaged. Select OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning.
- If the bed power outlet covers are damaged, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why can I not shift my vehicle out of park (P)?

- Make sure the bed power outlet covers are properly closed and not damaged. Press OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning and to shift out of park (P).

What should I do if my instrument cluster display is malfunctioning and I cannot acknowledge the warning to put the vehicle in drive (D)?

- Turn off the vehicle and make sure nothing is plugged into the bed power outlets and all outlet covers are closed. Start the vehicle and select OK on the instrument cluster display to acknowledge the warning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do I get a ground fault detection after I wash out the bed?

- If the power outlet gets wet, a ground fault could occur.

What happens when I press the Ground Fault Test button on the touchscreen?

- The system checks the power outlets to make sure the ground fault detection circuit is functioning properly. If the test is successful, a ground fault detected message appears on the touchscreen, and the power outlets turn off.

Why am I getting ground fault detected message without pressing the Ground Fault Test button?

- The system shows a ground fault detected message when it identifies a real ground fault condition. This can happen due to connecting a defective electrical device, damage in the inverter wiring, or water intrusion into the power outlets.

What should I do to reset the ground fault detected message?

- Disconnect all electrical devices from the power outlets and make sure all power outlets are clean and dry. Press Reset on the touchscreen or the bed power outlet switch.
- If these steps do not fix the fault, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why is the power outlet not working?

- In certain conditions, the circuit breaker can trip without notification. The circuit breaker may need to be reset. See **Resetting the Circuit Breaker** (page 167).

Wireless Accessory Charger (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is in the front console below the instrument panel.

CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.

Wireless Accessory Charger (If Equipped)



Displays on the status bar, on the touchscreen when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar, on the touchscreen when wireless charging has been interrupted.

Note: *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

Note: *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

Note: *The use of streaming services and other applications while the device is charging can decrease charging efficiency.*

Storage

CUP HOLDERS (IF EQUIPPED)

LOCATING THE CUP HOLDERS



WARNING: Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Instrument Panel



Press the cup symbol to open the cup holder.

Rear Seat Armrest



Fold the armrest down to use the armrest and cup holder.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

OPENING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT



Pull the latch toward the driver side to open.

Storage

CENTER CONSOLE

OPENING THE CENTER CONSOLE



Pull the latch to open the center console.

UNDER SEAT STORAGE (IF EQUIPPED)

LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT



Lift the seat to access the storage. See **Folding the Seats** (page 153).

GLASSES HOLDER (IF EQUIPPED)

LOCATING THE GLASSES HOLDER



The glasses holder is in the overhead console. Press near the rear edge of the door to open.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 2.5 cm.
- Set your climate control to outside air.

IGNITION SWITCH - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START



Note: Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

Note: Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after approximately 30 minutes of inactivity in accessory mode.

Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: You need a valid passive key inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
 - Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
1. Fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

2. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 177).

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
 - Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
1. Fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

2. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 177).

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.



1. Turn the key to position **II**.

Note: Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.

2. Fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



3. Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key and wait until the engine starts.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until the glow plug indicator turns off before starting the engine.

STARTING A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE SYSTEM

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
 - Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
1. Fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

2. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 177).



When you start your vehicle, a green indicator appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not decrease, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions and press the push button ignition switch.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.

2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position **0**.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.
4. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 177).

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort

Starting and Stopping the Engine

could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Only in case of emergency, do the following.



1. Turn the key to position **0**.
2. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to safely bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
4. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort

Only in case of emergency, do the following.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 177).
2. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to safely bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) for automatic transmissions or neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
4. Apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop switches the engine off if it has been idling for an extended period to help you save fuel.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop turns the engine off. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the instrument cluster display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the instrument cluster display to inform you that the engine has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Switch 30min Max Idle on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine stop feature. If you switch it off, it turns on automatically at the next ignition cycle.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the countdown.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine stop feature. If you switch it off, it turns on automatically at the next ignition cycle.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:



1. Open the center console storage compartment lid and locate the backup slot.
2. With the buttons facing upward, place the passive key into the backup slot.
3. Press the brake pedal and the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, the on-board diagnostics system is detecting a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire could be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Powertrain Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a powertrain or four-wheel drive fault. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle could cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system fault	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - DIESEL, VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Why is the engine idle speed high when I start the engine?

- The speed the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why is the engine not cranking?

The engine does not crank if:

- The vehicle battery does not have sufficient charge.
- The clutch pedal is not pressed for manual transmissions.
- The transmission is not in the park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.
- The starting system has been disabled after multiple attempts of starting the engine.

What should I do if the starting system is disabled?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a set number of times before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the limit, a message may appear and you need to wait at least 15 minutes to start the engine again.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - DIESEL, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Why is the engine idle speed high when I start the engine?

- The speed the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why is the engine not cranking?

The engine does not crank if:

- The system does not detect a valid passive key.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The vehicle battery does not have sufficient charge.
- The brake pedal is not pressed for automatic transmissions or the clutch pedal is not pressed for manual transmissions.
- The transmission is not in the park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.
- The starting system has been disabled after multiple attempts of starting the engine.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

What should I do if the starting system is disabled?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a set number of times before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the limit, a message may appear and you need to wait at least 15 minutes to start the engine again.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for about 8 km after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

What happens if the system does not detect a valid passive key?

- If the system does not detect a valid passive key, the engine does not start and a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display. To start the engine insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 181).

What happens when driving the vehicle without a valid key?

- When you drive the vehicle without a valid passive key and reach a speed of 5 km/h for the first time after starting the engine, a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display.
- When the ignition is on or in accessory mode and you exit your vehicle with a valid passive key and close all of the doors, a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display.
- A horn sounds in addition to the warning message in the instrument cluster display, when the ignition is on and you exit your vehicle with a valid passive key and close any one of the front doors, and the following conditions are met:
 - Key detection alert is turned on in the center display. See **Keyless Entry Settings** (page 78).
 - A vehicle speed of 25 km/h is reached at least once in the current drive cycle.

Note: A valid passive key is required to start the engine again if you turned the engine off when the warning message was present in the instrument cluster display.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - GASOLINE

Why is the engine idle speed high when I start the engine?

- The speed the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why is the engine not cranking?

The engine does not crank if:

Starting and Stopping the Engine

- The system does not detect a valid passive key.
 - The passive key battery has no charge.
 - The vehicle battery does not have sufficient charge.
 - The brake pedal is not pressed for automatic transmissions or the clutch pedal is not pressed for manual transmissions.
 - The transmission is not in the park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.
 - The starting system has been disabled after multiple attempts of starting the engine.
3. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 177).

Note: *The engine cranks for a short period of time and then stops.*

4. Release the accelerator pedal.
5. Press the push button ignition switch. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 177).

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for about 8 km after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

What happens if the system does not detect a valid passive key?

- If the system does not detect a valid passive key, the engine does not start and a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display. To start the engine insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 181).

What should I do if the starting system is disabled?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a set number of times before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the limit, a message may appear and you need to wait at least 15 minutes to start the engine again.

What should I do if the engine does not start?

- If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:
1. Fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

Note: *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

Note: *Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.*

2. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

What happens when driving the vehicle without a valid key?

- When you drive the vehicle without a valid passive key and reach a speed of 5 km/h for the first time after starting the engine, a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display.
- When the ignition is on or in accessory mode and you exit your vehicle with a valid passive key and close all of the doors, a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display.
- A horn sounds in addition to the warning message in the instrument cluster display, when the ignition is on and you exit your vehicle with a valid passive key and close any one of the front doors, and the following conditions are met:
 - Key detection alert is turned on in the center display. See **Keyless Entry Settings** (page 78).
 - A vehicle speed of 25 km/h is reached at least once in the current drive cycle.

Note: A valid passive key is required to start the engine again if you turned the engine off when the warning message was present in the instrument cluster display.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Why does the engine not crank?

- When you start your vehicle, a green indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

Why is the engine speed high when the engine first starts?

- When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why can I not start my vehicle when the high voltage battery is charged?

- Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. However, the 12-volt battery can still lose its charge, preventing you from starting your vehicle. See **12V Battery** (page 532).

What happens if the system does not detect a valid passive key?

- If the system does not detect a valid passive key, the engine does not start and a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display. To start the engine insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 181).

Starting and Stopping the Engine

What happens when driving the vehicle without a valid key?

- When you drive the vehicle without a valid passive key and reach a speed of 5 km/h for the first time after starting the engine, a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display.
- When the ignition is on or in accessory mode and you exit your vehicle with a valid passive key and close all of the doors, a warning message displays in the instrument cluster display.
- A horn sounds in addition to the warning message in the instrument cluster display, when the ignition is on and you exit your vehicle with a valid passive key and close any one of the front doors, and the following conditions are met:
 - Key detection alert is turned on in the center display. See **Keyless Entry Settings** (page 78).
 - A vehicle speed of 25 km/h is reached at least once in the current drive cycle.

Note: *A valid passive key is required to start the engine again if you turned the engine off when the warning message was present in the instrument cluster display.*

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information

A plug-in hybrid electric vehicle combines a gasoline engine with an electric motor and rechargeable high voltage battery allowing you to use only electricity to power your vehicle.

Charging your vehicle adds electrical energy that propels the vehicle. Regularly plug in your vehicle to get optimal electric-only range capability from the high voltage battery. The system maximizes the use of electric-only operation in normal drive mode whenever possible. System conditions could require the engine to operate when necessary.

When the electric-only range reaches zero, the powertrain system switches to hybrid operation. This means that you have depleted the energy you gained from plugging in and charging your vehicle. Both the gasoline engine and electric motor power your vehicle and maximize fuel economy during hybrid operation. You receive some electric-only driving with hybrid operation as the powertrain system maintains the high voltage battery charge within functional limits.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics

The gasoline engine starts and stops to provide power when required and to save fuel when not needed. Restarting your vehicle is not required. Simply step on the accelerator when you are ready to drive. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Conditions that may cause the gasoline engine to start or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Driving uphill.
- The high voltage battery charge level is low.

- Heating or cooling the vehicle interior in high or low outside temperatures.
- The gasoline engine is below normal operating temperature.
- Towing a trailer.
- Certain drive modes could cause the engine to run. See **What Is Drive Mode Control** (page 276).

Note: *Having your engine running is not always an indication of inefficiency. In some cases, it is actually more efficient than driving in electric mode.*

Your plug-in hybrid electric vehicle has several EV drive modes to enhance your driving experience.

Your hybrid vehicle also comes with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

You could also notice that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off during extended downhill driving. The engine stays on during this engine braking but is not using any fuel.

You could also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators



When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information

The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both.

Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Warning Lamps



Illuminates if your vehicle's electrical system requires service to identify the cause for your vehicle to shut down or enter a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Information Messages

Message	Details
Is vehicle plugged in? Yes No	Your vehicle needs confirmation that you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Unplug prior to starting vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
Engine enabled due to defrost setting	Your vehicle enables the engine due to the climate control defrost setting. This is normal operation.
Change EV mode for full defrost heat	Select either EV Later or EV Auto or EV Charge to enable full defrost. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine enabled for system performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information

Message	Details
Press OK to enable engine	This temporarily enables the engine for increased performance when in EV Now mode.
In Neutral depletes HV battery Shift out of Neutral for full vehicle function	Displays when the vehicle is in neutral (N) with the engine running and you also select low (L) on the shifter to enter temporary neutral mode. See Temporary Neutral Mode (page 246). Prolonged idling in neutral (N) results in engine idle instability and battery depletion. Shift out of neutral (N) to maintain full vehicle function.
Stop safely now Exit vehicle in safe area	Safely stop and exit your vehicle as soon as possible and contact roadside assistance.

LOW ENGINE USE MODE

Low engine use mode maintains proper engine lubrication at sufficient temperature and activates when you drive your vehicle with limited engine operation.

When in low engine use mode, your vehicle runs the engine as necessary. When low engine use mode begins, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. If low engine use mode does not complete before you switch your vehicle off, it continues the next time you start your vehicle and the message reappears.

Note: *EV Now mode is not available when in low engine use mode.*

Note: *Cold temperatures affect the engine warm up time and the low engine use mode may operate more frequently.*

Note: *An oil change is not required but gives you the option of not running a low engine use cycle. Resetting the oil life monitoring system suspends the low engine use mode.*

Auto-Start-Stop (If Equipped)

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system helps reduce fuel consumption by stopping and restarting the engine when your vehicle has stopped. The engine restarts when you release the brake pedal.

In some situations, your vehicle could restart before you release the brake pedal, for example:

- To maintain interior comfort.
- To recharge the battery.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the button to switch the system off.

Note: Deactivating the system using the button lasts only one key cycle.

Press the button again to switch the system back on.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



Illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



Illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is turned off.

Note: See the instrument cluster display for information on why the system is unavailable.

Auto-Start-Stop (If Equipped)

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Automatic Transmission

Message	Condition	Details
Shift to P, then restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift to park (P) and restart engine.
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop (If Equipped)

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.

- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - GASOLINE



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



WARNING: Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Fuel and Refueling



Use a minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 20% (E20).

Note: *We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.*

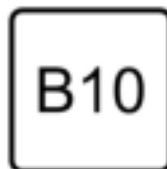
SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - DIESEL

Diesel



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 (for B7), EN 16734 (for B10), EN 16709 (for B20) or the relevant national specification.



Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 20% (B20).

Note: *We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments. Your Warranty does not cover repairs or replacement of parts needed to correct the effects of using such unadvised products.*

HVO and GTL



WARNING: Do not mix hydrotreated vegetable oil or other paraffinic diesel fuels with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Fuel and Refueling



Hydrotreated vegetable oil (HVO) is a paraffinic diesel fuel produced from renewable raw materials. It is a high-quality fuel with properties similar to standard petroleum-derived diesel fuel.

Note: HVO may also be known as renewable diesel (RD) or green diesel.

Note: HVO is not equivalent to biodiesel, unprocessed cooking oil or waste grease.

GTL is another type of paraffinic diesel fuel which is synthesized from natural gas.

Use paraffinic diesel fuel that meets the specification defined by EN 15940 or the relevant national specification.

Note: Do not use normal vegetable oil as this may cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL FOR COLD WEATHER - DIESEL

Diesel sold in city and coastal regions often has different cold temperature properties than diesel sold in Alpine regions. Wax may form in the fuel lines if the temperature is 0°C or below.

Note: The engine may not start or run correctly until the wax melts.

To prevent fuel waxing, if a prolonged or overnight stay is planned in an alpine region, we strongly recommend that the vehicle has enough fuel to get to the Alpine region, and is then refuelled locally so that at least 50% of the fuel volume is Alpine mix diesel.

At the time of publication, Alpine mix diesel is available at the following BP service stations:

- **Victoria** Bright, Corryong and Mansfield.
- **NSW** Jindabyne, Thredbo, Tumut, Talbingo, Adaminaby and Cooma.

Note: Please confirm current availability at the time of your trip.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL (IF EQUIPPED)

The fuel filler funnel is behind the right-hand side rear seat with the vehicle jack.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel and Refueling

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER - VEHICLES WITH: CAPLESS FUEL FILL



WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 196).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L of fuel to restart the engine.

Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

Fuel and Refueling

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER - VEHICLES WITH: FUEL CAP



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

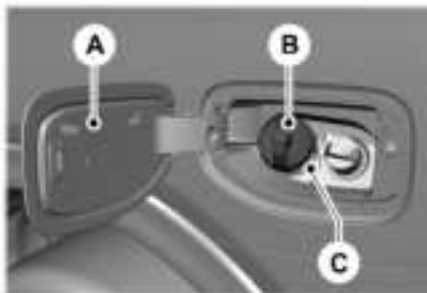
1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Turn the fuel filler cap counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. To replace the fuel filler cap, turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L of fuel to restart the engine.

Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW - DIESEL



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel cap.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW - GASOLINE



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

Fuel and Refueling

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), VEHICLES WITH: CAPLESS FUEL FILL



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.



WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.



WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.



WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.



WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.



2. Press the button on the instrument panel next to the headlamp switch to open the fuel filler door. The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.

Note: Avoid pressing the button and blocking the fuel filler door at the same time.

Fuel and Refueling



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



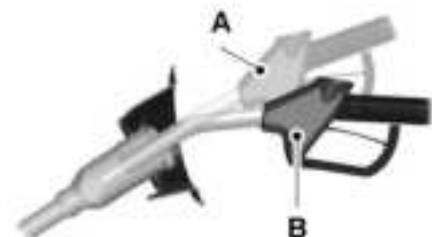
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.

6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Close the fuel filler door.

Note: To close the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapses, press the button on the left side of the instrument panel again. Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the left side instrument panel.

Note: Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

Fuel and Refueling

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - VEHICLES WITH: CAPLESS FUEL FILL



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.



WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



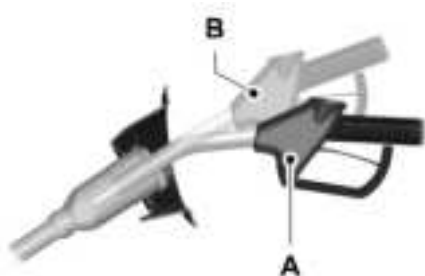
WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

Fuel and Refueling



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position A when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position B can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the pump shuts off, wait five seconds, then raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - VEHICLES WITH: FUEL CAP



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Fuel and Refueling



WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

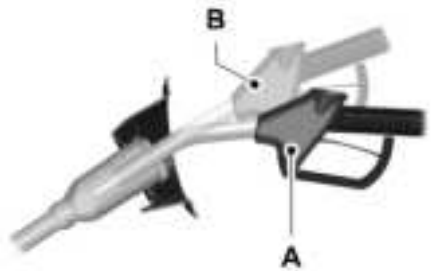


WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Remove the fuel filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.



4. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



5. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position A when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position B can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



6. When the pump shuts off, wait five seconds, then raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Install the fuel filler cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks.
8. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Fuel and Refueling

MANUALLY OPENING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV), VEHICLES WITH: CAPLESS FUEL FILL



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Note: The transmission must be in park (P) or neutral (N).

When using the manual override cable do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.



Note: The manual override cable is in the left side rear wheel well area.

2. Pull the manual override cable down.

Note: Pull the manual override cable once. Repeated pulls can damage the manual override cable.

Note: Make sure the manual override cable moves freely without any obstructions.

3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes.

Note: Only follow this procedure if the fuel filler door fails to open. If the problem remains, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 2.0L DIESEL

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Non-Raptor	80 L
Raptor	76.5 L

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 3.0L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All	77 L

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - 3.0L DIESEL

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All	80 L
Super Duty	130 L

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	70 L

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

Diesel Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The diesel particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful diesel particulates from the exhaust gas.

HOW DOES THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

The diesel particulate filter reduces emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The system must periodically clean the exhaust particles that gather inside the filter. This is carried out in three ways, passive regeneration, active regeneration and manual regeneration.

Passive Regeneration

In passive regeneration, the normal exhaust system temperature cleans the filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning occurs during normal vehicle operating conditions due to driving patterns.

Active Regeneration

Once the diesel particulate filter is full, active regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles.

When the engine control module detects that the diesel particulate filter is nearly full of particulates, and you are not operating your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, messages appear in the instrument cluster display as a reminder for you to drive your vehicle in order to clean the diesel particulate filter. If you drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, the instrument cluster display shows a cleaning exhaust filter message.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



WARNING: When the **Exhaust filter cleaning** message appears in the information display, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Note: Avoid running out of fuel.

Note: During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

Note: Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Failure to perform active or manual regeneration when instructed could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, your vehicle disables the ability for active and manual regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage your vehicle Warranty may not cover.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION - SUPER DUTY

WHAT IS DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Diesel particulate filter manual regeneration allows you to manually start regeneration of the diesel particulate filter at idle to clean the filter.

Note: *If you are not sure whether your vehicle has this feature, contact your authorized dealer.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Stay clear of the exhaust tailpipe during regeneration. Hot exhaust gases can burn you badly.

You may not be able to use manual regeneration if the service engine soon warning lamp appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *During the use of manual regeneration, you may observe a light amount of white smoke. This is normal.*

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION REQUIREMENTS

You can use the manual regeneration feature when a message appears in the information display and you are not able to drive in a manner that allows effective automatic active regeneration or if you choose to manually start the regeneration of the diesel particulate filter while the vehicle is idle.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Before you start manual regeneration, do the following:

- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the brake pedal is not pressed.
- Shift into park (P) or neutral (N), on stable, level ground.
- Park your vehicle outside of any structure.
- Park your vehicle 3–5 m away from any obstructions and away from materials that can easily combust or melt, for example paper, leaves, petroleum products, fuels, plastics and other dry organic material.
- Make sure there is a minimum of 1/8 tank of fuel.
- Make sure all fluids are at proper levels.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION LIMITATIONS

You cannot use manual regeneration until the diesel particulate filter load percentage has reached 70%. The diesel particulate filter load percentage fluctuates up and down when driving your vehicle due to active and passive regenerations.

If your vehicle is operated with significant stationary operation, low speed drive cycles less than 40 km/h, short drive cycles, drive time less than 15 minutes or the vehicle does not fully warm up, passive and active regeneration may not sufficiently clean the diesel particulate filter system.

Aftermarket devices or modifications to the exhaust system may reduce the effectiveness of the exhaust system as well as cause damage to the exhaust system or engine. This may also degrade vehicle performance and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

STARTING DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER MANUAL REGENERATION

Start your vehicle and allow to reach normal operating temperature.

1. From the settings menu, press Vehicle. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Switch Auto Regeneration on.

Press the menu button on the steering wheel. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 120). If the diesel particulate filter is near or at saturation, a message requesting permission to initiate filter cleaning appears in the instrument cluster display. See **Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages** (page 212).

Answer yes to this prompt and then follow the next prompts regarding exhaust position required to initiate manual regeneration. Be sure to understand each prompt. If you are not sure what is being asked by each prompt, contact an authorized dealer. The display shows when the operation has started and finished. You can also drive to clean the filter.

Note: *If the back button on the steering wheel is pressed, the manual regeneration will be interrupted.*



When the system is at the point of oversaturation, the malfunction indicator lamp illuminates and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. You cannot initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Once manual regeneration starts, engine speed increases and the cooling fan speed increases. The engine sound changes when the engine and cooling fan speeds increase.

It is not necessary to open the hood on the engine compartment. Once manual regeneration completes, the engine speed returns to normal idling. The exhaust system remains very hot for several minutes even after regeneration is complete. Do not park the vehicle over materials that could burn until the exhaust system has had sufficient time to cool. Depending on the amount of soot collected by the diesel particulate filter, ambient temperature and altitude, manual regeneration lasts approximately 30 minutes.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



If there are any issues with the diesel particulate filter system, or when the system is at the point of oversaturation, the powertrain warning lamp and the malfunction indicator lamp illuminate to inform you that your vehicle requires service. You may not be able to initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The diesel exhaust filter regeneration disabled warning lamp will illuminate to inform you that the automatic cleaning function is disabled.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Exhaust filter overloaded Drive to clean	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle for 15-20 minutes above 50 km/h when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter overloaded Clean now	
Exhaust filter at limit Clean now	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle for 15-20 minutes above 50 km/h when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust filter at limit Drive to clean now	
Exhaust filter cleaning	Your vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions raise the exhaust temperature in the diesel particulate filter system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the vehicle burns the particles off, the exhaust temperature returns to normal levels. Drive the vehicle for 15-20 minutes until the message turns off. This message is normal.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Message	Details
Exhaust filter Drive complete	Your diesel particulate filter is clean.
Exhaust filter cleaning stopped	The manual regeneration process has stopped (OCR only).
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	You must have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer. Ignoring this warning message could lead to reduced drivability and customer expense, including damage to the diesel particulate filter. Your vehicle warranty may not cover this damage.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Diesel

WHAT IS THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM

The selective catalytic reduction system helps reduce emission levels of oxides of nitrogen from the exhaust system.

HOW DOES THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM WORK

The selective catalytic reduction system injects diesel exhaust fluid into the exhaust system to enable correct selective catalytic reduction system function.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. In case of contact with your eyes, immediately flush with water and get prompt medical attention. In case of contact with your skin, immediately clean with soap and water. If you swallow any AdBlue®, drink plenty of water and immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: Only refill the AdBlue® tank in a well-ventilated area. When you remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap or an AdBlue® container cap, ammonia vapors may escape. Ammonia vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.



WARNING: Immediately refill the AdBlue® fluid when low and replace when contaminated. Drive with caution and be careful where you stop because you cannot restart your vehicle until you refill or replace the fluid.



WARNING: Tampering with or disabling the selective catalytic reduction system results in severe vehicle performance limitation, eventually your vehicle not starting.

Do not dilute the AdBlue® with water or any other liquid.

Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.

Make sure you immediately rinse any spills of AdBlue® on painted surfaces. Damage to the painted surface could occur.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM GUIDELINES

Note: *The use and refilling of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (AdBlue®) is mandatory for your vehicle to comply with the legal emission requirements.*

Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Diesel

- Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.
- Do not add fuel or any additives to the AdBlue tank. This will cause damage not covered by vehicle warranty.
- Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.
- Do not dilute with water or any other liquid.
- Do not reuse an empty fluid container.
- Do not store in direct sunlight.
- Store the AdBlue® at temperatures between -5°C and 20°C.
- Do not store fluid containers in your vehicle.
- The fluid is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.
- Make sure you immediately rinse any spills of AdBlue® on painted surfaces. Damage to the painted surface could occur.



The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK IN COLD WEATHER

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C. Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C. If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: *It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C.*

Note: *If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.*

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A FUEL STATION PUMP



WARNING: Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Diesel



WARNING: Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Open the fuel filler door.



2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.

Note: The AdBlue® tank has a blue filler cap.

3. Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.



4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

Note: The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Using incorrect fluid could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Diesel

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A PORTABLE CONTAINER



WARNING: Do not allow diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) to come into contact with eyes, skin or clothing. Should the fluid come into contact with eyes, flush them with plenty of water and seek medical attention. Clean affected skin with soap and water. If swallowed, drink plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately.



WARNING: Refill the diesel exhaust fluid (AdBlue) tank in a well-ventilated area. When removing the tank cap or a container cap, ammonia vapor may escape. Ammonia vapor is an irritant to the eyes, skin and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapor can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose resulting in watering eyes or severe coughing.

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.
2. Place the spout onto the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.



3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.
5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

Note: *The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.*

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Using incorrect fluid could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Diesel

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM STATUS

The information display shows a series of messages about the amount of AdBlue® available.

A systems check displays messages indicating the amount of AdBlue® available or displays a warning message indicating the approximate distance remaining as the fluid in the AdBlue® tank nears empty. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Information Messages** (page 219).

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID CONSUMPTION

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption but could be more under extreme conditions such as heavy towing.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All except Raptor	19.3 L
Raptor	18 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Diesel Exhaust Fluid	WSS-M99C130-A

Note: *ADBLUE is only for engines with Selective Catalytic Reduction System.*

Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Diesel

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The cold emission system temperature indicator light will illuminate to inform you of periods of engine power reduction during cold exhaust system treatment.



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid is low or a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reduction system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® Low Range XXXX km Refill Soon AdBlue® Low Range XXXX mi Refill Soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® Low No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® Low No engine start in XXXX mi	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® level empty. Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display.

Note: When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, allow a short period of time for the increased AdBlue® level to register.

Note: If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the remaining distance shown in the information display could be reduced.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Diesel

AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® System Fault Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® System No engine start in XXXX km AdBlue® System No engine start in XXXX mi	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® System Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Catalytic Converter

WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 482).

- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 194).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Gasoline Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER

The gasoline particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters particulates from the exhaust emissions.

HOW DOES THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

Particles in the exhaust emissions collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles captured by the filter into harmless gases.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

If the filter is saturated or approaching saturation, a warning lamp could illuminate and a message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the instrument cluster display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

Regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed. However if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust emissions temperature to remove the particulates that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist in regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional trips that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

Note: *The best gasoline particulate filter regeneration occurs following moderate acceleration or extended cruise, such as exiting the highway, with your foot off the accelerator and decelerating while in gear.*

Gasoline Particulate Filter

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction indicator lamp.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Exhaust Filter at Limit Drive to Clean Now	• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears. • Avoid prolonged engine idling. • Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	• Drive at a moderate speed. • Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration. • Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

High Voltage Battery - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electric energy to power your vehicle.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

Battery Shutoff



Illuminates when the high voltage battery is shut off.

Battery Temperature



Illuminates when the high voltage battery is above or below normal operating conditions.

Limited Performance



Illuminates if your vehicle has limited performance due to a cold or hot battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature.

High Voltage Hazard



Illuminates if there is a presence of a high voltage hazard.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT PRECAUTIONS (IF EQUIPPED)



WARNING: Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charging equipment.



WARNING: Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.



WARNING: Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.



WARNING: Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not

operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C to 50°C. Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C to 85°C. Stow the control box indoors on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler. Supervise any children in the vicinity of the charging equipment when plugged into the wall outlet. Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the charging equipment, fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



WARNING: This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm above the floor.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of fire, connect only to a circuit provided with 40 amps maximum branch circuit overcurrent protection installed in accordance with NEC and local electrical code.

Charging Your Vehicle



WARNING: High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution panel. Contact with high voltage can result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Make sure that the charge cord is completely unwrapped before charging. Always plug the cord into the AC outlet before connecting the charged coupler into the charge port on your vehicle.

Note: When you plug the charge cord into an outlet, if the power indicator light is off after plugging in the charge cord, use a different outlet.

MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Note: Do not hold the charge cord by the flexible power cable.

Make sure that you completely wrap the charge cord after charging.

When charging is complete, place the charge cord into the storage bin under the left rear seat.

Note: Do not trap the cable on the charge cord within the rear seat latch when stowing, as this could damage the cable.

Note: Store the charge cord in a clean, dry place between the temperature of $-40-90^{\circ}\text{C}$.

CHARGING EQUIPMENT OVERVIEW

If your vehicle is equipped with a charge cord as standard, it is located inside the vehicle under the left rear seat inside the storage compartment.

- Do not use this product if the flexible power cord or electric vehicle cable has broken insulation, or any other signs of damage.
- Do not use this product if the enclosure or the electric vehicle connector is broken, cracked, open, or shows any other indication of damage.

Note: You need to plug the charge cord into a dedicated outlet.

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE

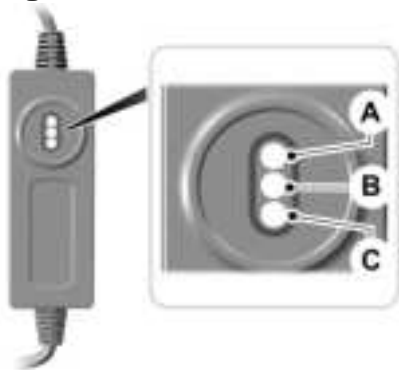
- Use a three-prong AC outlet that is properly grounded, 15–20 amps or greater, and in good condition. Use a dedicated circuit. You cannot have other appliances connected to the same circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

Note: Make sure the electrical source meets the requirements for the high-voltage batteries to charge.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT INDICATORS (IF EQUIPPED)

Charge Cord



- A. Power.
- B. Fault.
- C. Check Outlet.

Charge Cord Indicator Lights

Charge Cord LED Indicators			What it Means	What to Do
Power (Green)	Fault (Red)	Check Outlet (Amber)		
Off	Off	Off	If the LED indicators are off after plugging in the charge cord and the plug is experiencing a no power condition from the wall outlet, use a different outlet.	Use a different wall outlet.
On	Off	Off	The charge cord is plugged into the wall outlet and ready to charge your vehicle. Reference the charge port section below for information on vehicle charging.	No action required.
On	Flashing	On	The charge cord AC plug is experiencing an overheating condition. The charge cord is in retry mode to return to normal condition. If the fault persists, you have a bad wall outlet.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use a different outlet.

Charging Your Vehicle

Charge Cord LED Indicators			What it Means	What to Do
Power (Green)	Fault (Red)	Check Outlet (Amber)		
On	Off	Flashing	The charge cord is charging at a reduced current rate due to a wall outlet over temperature condition.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use a different outlet.
On	On	Flashing	The charge cord AC plug has overheated. The cordset retry mode has been exhausted. Your vehicle is not charging. You have a bad wall outlet.	Check the outlet. If the problem persists, use a different outlet.
On	Flashing	Off	The charge cord is experiencing a ground fault at the charge port. The charge cord is in retry mode to return to normal condition. Your vehicle is not charging.	Unplug and re-plug to vehicle charge port.
On	On	Off	The charge cord is experiencing a ground fault at the charge port. The cordset retry mode has been exhausted. Your vehicle is not charging. Call for service.	Request vehicle service.
On	On/Two flash interval	Two flash interval	Missing ground at AC outlet. Your vehicle is not charging. The charge cord is in retry mode.	Connect to a properly grounded AC outlet. If fault still exists for more than two minutes, return cordset for service.
On	On/Flashing	Off	The charge cord is experiencing an internal fault. Call for service.	Wait two minutes. If fault is still present, request cordset service. Replace the cordset.

Note: If charging for your plug-in vehicle fails, please call the Customer Relationship Center, or click on Call for support or Live chat at our website.

LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is located near to the fuel door. To open, press the center right edge of the charge port door, and then release.

Charging Your Vehicle



Note: Do not force the charge port door open or closed. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.

We use the color white as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in, unplugging or pressing the charge cord unlock button.

We use the color blue when you plug the vehicle in and are either charging or waiting to charge.

We use the color amber to indicate charge faults.

The charge status indicator displays how far along the state of charge is:

- When the charge status indicator is pulsing in blue, the vehicle is actively charging.
- When the indicator illuminates constantly in blue, the state of charge is 100 percent, or the charge target is reached.



Note: When charging stops, the charge status indicator illuminates solidly in a blue color for 30 seconds before turning off. Charging stops when complete or when paused due to charge settings or charge station actions.

Note: Charging faults are identified by the color amber on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or electrical supply.

Note: If the system detects a fault in the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the charge status indicator illuminates solidly in an amber color for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charge coupler and then plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists please have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station the charge status indicator flashes amber continuously for 30 seconds and then turns off. If this happens check the charge station or electrical supply.

Charging Your Vehicle

AC CHARGING

CHARGING AT HOME



AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

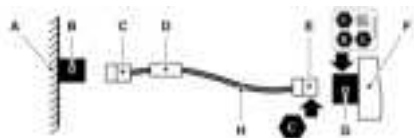
When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF

FIRE - The plug must be properly grounded. Use a dedicated circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

You must completely unwrap the charge cord before charging.

When using the charge cord, plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A Mains.
- B Socket outlet (Household).
- C Plug.
- D Control box.
- E Charge coupler.
- F Vehicle.
- G Charge port receptacle.
- H Charge cord.

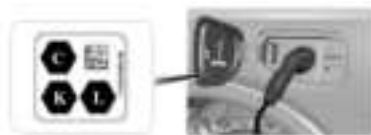
1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

2. Press and release the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate connector for the wall outlet you will use and plug the connector into the charge cord control box.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly hold the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until it clicks. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion causes a longer charge session or faults.

4. Plug the connector into the wall outlet.
5. Confirm that the charge cord's LEDs illuminate.
6. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.

Charging Your Vehicle

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: Plug the connector into the wall outlet before connecting the charge coupler to your vehicle's charge port.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Note: If charging for your vehicle fails, contact the Customer Relationship Center. To ensure superior service, take note of the serial number when contacting customer support.

For more information, visit <https://www.owner.ford.com>.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could cause damage not covered by your vehicle warranty.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, contact roadside assistance.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING IN PUBLIC



AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

Charging Your Vehicle

When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose a charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

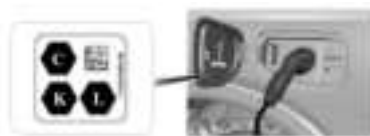


- A AC charge station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Put your vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle must be in park (P) to charge.

2. Press and release the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle locks to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it starts charging to 100% by default unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the light illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in light illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

You can find information about public charging stations, including pricing, power levels, and real-time availability, in the vehicle's touchscreen app or the mobile app. Charging rates vary depending on the power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Note: If your vehicle does not have the customer connectivity settings option in the vehicle touchscreen, the app may not function as intended.

Note: Depending on the region, the functionality of the public charging app may not be supported and charge function may not operate as stated.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle app to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit <https://www.owner.ford.com>.

Charging Your Vehicle

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could cause damage not covered by your vehicle warranty.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, contact roadside assistance.

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot shift your vehicle out of park (P) until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE

If your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler, you can manually release it.

Releasing the charge coupler:

1. Switch off your vehicle.
2. Open the tailgate.
3. Remove the inner access panel on the left hand side of the bed.

Charging Your Vehicle



4. Locate the manual release mechanism in the gap of the inner access panel.
5. Firmly pull the manual release mechanism pull ring towards the center of your vehicle. Once pulled, make sure you do not tangle the pull ring cord as it resets on the next charge session.

6. Remove the charge coupler from the charge port.
7. Reinstall the inner access panel cover and place the tool back in the glove compartment.

Note: *The next time you plug in to charge your vehicle, the locking mechanism re-engages and the pull ring resets.*

CHARGING SETTINGS

You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower-cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set an upper charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Charging Your Vehicle

Scheduled charging can be set up in the center display or in the vehicle app.

To view your charge settings:

1.  Press to open the settings menu.
2.  Press Charging.

Charging Time Information

When charging, the start and estimated end time displays.

When your vehicle is at a saved charging location and not plugged in, the start and end times display based on known charging infrastructure.

Note: Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

Estimated Vehicle Driving Range

Displays the estimated distance the vehicle can travel with the current high voltage battery charge level.

Charging Locations



Press the edit button to set preferred charge times for a specific charging location.

Your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred time settings. You can set two preferred charging time windows for weekdays and two for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: Your vehicle will charge during your preferred time windows. Charging outside these windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge level set for this location by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle will typically begin charging right away after plugging in.

Note: You can also access this feature using the vehicle app.

Departure and Comfort



Press the edit button for departure and comfort settings.

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time, your vehicle can use your charge time settings to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

Note: By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy will be needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.

Note: You can also access this feature using the vehicle app.

Charging Your Vehicle

Additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen once charging locations and departure and comfort have been set up.

Charging Location Name

Displays when your vehicle is at a saved charging location.

Next Departure Time and Cabin Comfort Level

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

On/Off Switch for Charging Locations

This switch is visible when your vehicle is at a saved charging location. Use this switch to turn your settings off and on for this location only. Switching off for this location does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

On/Off Switch for Departure and Comfort

This switch is visible when you have at least one departure time set. Use this switch to turn all departure times off and on. Switching off departure and comfort does not delete your settings, however, you must switch back on to re-enable them.

Charging Location Setup

Follow these steps to set time and charge level preferences for a charging location.



Press the edit button for charging locations on the charge settings screen.

1. Select an address from the list of recent charge locations. If the previously saved charge locations are not listed, then you must first select add new location. You can also edit settings for previously saved locations.
2. Confirm that this is the location you want to save with the help of the map view. Edit the location name if desired and set a maximum charge level. Press next.

Note: *The name of locations cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.*

Note: *Charging will stop when your vehicle reaches the maximum charge level setting.*



3. Set preferred charging times for weekday and/or weekend by pressing and dragging along the 24 hour time wheel. You can set up to two blocks of time (charge windows). Press next once you have your desired time settings for weekday and weekend.

Note: *Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.*

Charging Your Vehicle

4. The summary screen displays your settings for this location. Press save or press the left arrow to go back and change your settings. Whenever your vehicle is at a saved charging location, the charge settings screen displays the location name, and the charging times are based on your preferred time settings for that location plus the next departure time.

Note: Reaching your max charge level by your next departure time is always the priority. When charge times are set, charging outside your preferred charging time windows could be necessary in order to finish by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle will typically begin charging right away after plugging in.

Departure and Comfort Setup

Follow these steps to set departure times and cabin comfort level

1. Press the edit button for departure and comfort on the charge settings screen.

2. Select a time for each day of the week you want your settings to apply. Select the hour and minutes as well as your desired comfort level. Your selected days/times now display your departure and comfort settings. Press Save to apply your settings. The next departure display on the charge settings screen will update appropriately.

Note: Save your departure settings before selecting additional days/times. The process must be repeated in order to add additional unique departure times and comfort levels.

Note: Cabin conditioning comfort level may vary depending on if you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power in addition to the charging power could be used to heat the cabin.

Charge Status

Shows the present state of charging system.

Charge Status	Details
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and will start charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your settings. You must plug in prior to the start time shown for the vehicle to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your charge time settings.

Charging Your Vehicle

Charge Status	Details
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the vehicle app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized EV certified dealer.
Charge station fault	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charging station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charge station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charge station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charging station.

Charge Status Indicators

Displays when your vehicle is plugged in.



Not charging due to a fault.



Not currently charging.



Charging.



Waiting to charge based on charge time settings.

USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The vehicle app allows you to monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.

For more information, visit <https://www.owner.ford.com>.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SYMBOLS



Identifier symbol visible on vehicle cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Vehicle coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Charge station port, public charge cord coupler.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	50 volt to 500 volt



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Charging Your Vehicle

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	200 volt to 920 volt

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Is vehicle plugged in?	Your vehicle needs confirmation that you unplugged it before allowing a start. Make sure your vehicle is unplugged and you respond to the message before starting your vehicle.
Unplug prior to starting vehicle	Your vehicle detects it is still plugged in after you attempt to start it.
Charge Station Fault See Manual	A charging fault has been detected. Check the charging cord and the charge station or electrical supply.
Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider	The charging station cannot communicate with your vehicle. Contact the station provider.

Charging Your Vehicle

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does my vehicle have a hum or fan noise when charging?

- A hum or a fan noise could be present when charging the high voltage battery. This is a normal operation as your vehicle is keeping the battery cool while charging.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: Ford vehicles incorporate innovative transmissions to boost fuel efficiency and reduce greenhouse gases, among other benefits. Optimizing performance involves balancing many vehicle attributes including acceleration, handling, shift-feel, fuel economy, or hauling and towing capacity. Designing a transmission in light of that balance and to meet varied customer expectations and preferences, from smoother shift to quick shift and everything in between, may result in what some operators could perceive as a brief jerking or shaking sensation during gear changes. That is a normal part of transmission operation. If you have concerns about your transmission, please visit your Ford-authorized dealer. If the vehicle has a malfunction during normal use because of a defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship during the warranty term, Ford will service the vehicle under warranty. Transmission service may be a software modification (including calibration upgrades) to alter the subjective driving characteristics of your vehicle, such as transmission shift-feel, that may better fit your personal preferences. To the extent Ford offers a software modification to enhance customer satisfaction, the service is not evidence of the existence of a defect or to cure an impairment to the use, value or safety of the vehicle.

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC SHIFT

The selector is on the center console.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Move the lever to select a position.

Note: The position illuminates on the selector.

3. Press the manual (M) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.

Automatic Transmission

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL SHIFT

The selector is on the center console.

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Move the lever to select a position.

PARK (P) - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC SHIFT



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12 V battery has run out of charge.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 298).

Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P). See **Automatic Return to Park (P)** (page 247).

Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

PARK (P) - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL SHIFT



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12 V battery has run out of charge.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 298).

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: *Progressive range selection is available in drive (D). See **Using Progressive Range Selection** (page 249).*

MANUAL (M) - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC SHIFT

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 244).

Note: *We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer.*

MANUAL (M) - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL SHIFT

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear.

Note: *We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 413).*

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



Note: *The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.*

MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR

Shifting Using the Buttons on the Selector Lever

The instrument cluster displays the current gear. The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear. Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: *Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by vehicle warranty.*

Note: *Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.*

Automatic Transmission

Electronic Shifter



Mechanical Shifter



Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads, or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 413).

Press any button to switch the feature on.

Press the upper (+) button to upshift.

Press the lower (-) button to downshift.

Shift to drive (D) to switch the feature off.

MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS - RAPTOR

Shifting Using the Paddle Shifters

The instrument cluster displays the current gear. The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear. Your vehicle does not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.



Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature to temporarily change gears.

Automatic Transmission

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking or driving on hilly or mountainous roads.

- Pull any paddle to switch the feature on.
- Pull the right (+) paddle to upshift.
- Pull the left (-) paddle to downshift.
- Hold the (+) paddle for a few seconds to switch the feature off.

Note: The feature switches off after a short period of time if you do not pull either paddle.

Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads, or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 413).

- Shift to manual (M) or with the selector in drive (D) press the manual (M) button to switch the feature on.
- Pull the right (+) paddle to upshift.
- Pull the left (-) paddle to downshift.
- Shift to drive (D) or press the manual (M) button again to switch the feature off.

TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

How Does Temporary Neutral Mode Work

Use this mode to keep your vehicle in neutral (N), for a limited time, when you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off. For example, if you exit your vehicle before an automatic car wash.

Note: You do not need to use this mode at an automatic car wash if you shift into neutral (N) and stay in your vehicle with power on.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Note: Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See **Automatic Return to Park (P)** (page 247).

Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations

This mode could be unavailable if your 12 volt battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 volt battery to run out of charge.

This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Entering Temporary Neutral Mode

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Power your vehicle on.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: An instructional message appears.

5. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

6. Release the brake pedal.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Automatic Transmission

Note: The neutral (N) indicator on the transmission selector may flash in this mode.

Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with the driver seatbelt unfastened.
- You unfasten the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

Note: Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 176).

Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations

Automatic return to park (P) may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears, with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P) - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC SHIFT



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your 12 volt battery charge level is low. Connect an external power source and attempt the procedure again.

Note: Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the 12 volt battery to run out of charge.

Note: This mode could be unavailable if your vehicle is below operating temperature. Warm up your vehicle and attempt the procedure again.

Automatic Transmission

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park (P)

1. Apply the parking brake.

Note: If the battery is out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Power your vehicle on without your foot on the brake pedal.
3. Fully press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.
5. Shift into neutral (N).
6. Press the M button within a few seconds.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

Note: You must complete this procedure within 15 seconds. If your vehicle shifts into park (P) attempt the procedure again.

8. Release the accelerator and brake pedals.
9. Release the parking brake.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

10. Switch your vehicle off.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P) - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL SHIFT



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.



WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park

1. Apply the parking brake.

Note: If the 12V battery has run out of charge, use an external power source to apply the parking brake.

2. Remove the selector cover. Insert a screwdriver between the shifter boot material and trim ring (1) to release the retainer tabs from the top panel trim ring. Lift the shifter boot (2) upward.

Automatic Transmission



3. Sit in the drivers seat.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Locate the selector override lever (3) on the side of the selector lever.



6. Using a screwdriver, move the release lever (3) toward the front of the selector lever and hold.
7. Shift into neutral (N).
8. Release the selector override lever.
9. Install the selector cover.
10. Release the parking brake.
11. Release the brake pedal.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS - VEHICLES WITH: ELECTRONIC SHIFT

Transmission Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL SHIFT

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if any of the following occur:

- You switch your vehicle off before shifting into park (P).
- You open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

USING PROGRESSIVE RANGE SELECTION

Progressive range selection gives you the ability to lock out gears from the automatic shifting range. This could provide you with an improved driving experience by reducing transmission shifts, for example in slippery conditions or steep slopes or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 413).

Automatic Transmission

With the transmission in drive (D), press the minus (-) button to begin switching the feature on.

Press the minus (-) button again to continue locking out higher gears. Beginning with the highest gear, the instrument cluster indicates the current gear and highest gear available. For example, press the minus (-) button twice to lock out 10th and 9th gears.

Note: The instrument cluster indicates the current gear and highest gear available.

Press the plus (+) button to unlock gears to allow the transmission to shift to higher gears.

Note: The transmission automatically shifts within the gear range you select.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.

Note: Only use MERCON ULV transmission fluid for automatic transmissions that require MERCON ULV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid could cause transmission damage.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
10R80: Level 4-5 on dipstick.	12 L ¹
10R60: Level 3-4 on dipstick.	12.39 L ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Fluid	WSS-M2C949-A,

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
6R80: Level to left side fill plug	11.47 L ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount could vary during fluid changes.

Automatic Transmission

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Fluid	WSS-M2C938-A

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

HOW DOES FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE

Advanced 4x4 With Automatic On Demand Engagement (If Equipped)

This system monitors various vehicle sensory inputs to provide an increased level of performance. This system offers the driver two-wheel drive high (2H), four-wheel drive auto (4A), four-wheel drive high (4H) and four-wheel drive low (4L) as available modes of operation.

When you select four-wheel drive auto (4A), the system continuously varies power to the front wheels for optimum performance for all on-road conditions.

When you select four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L), the system provides mechanically locked power to the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or slippery conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud.

Selecting four-wheel drive low (4L) also provides additional gearing for increased torque multiplication for conditions like deep sand, steep slopes, or pulling heavy objects.

HOW DOES FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - SUPER DUTY, ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE

Advanced 4x4 With Automatic On Demand Engagement (If Equipped)

This system provides two-wheel drive high, four-wheel drive high, and four-wheel drive low modes.

- **Four-Wheel Drive Auto (4A):**
Continuously varies power to the front wheels for optimal on-road performance in all weather conditions.
- **Four-Wheel Drive High (4H):**
Mechanically locks power to front and rear wheels for off-road or slippery conditions, for example; deep snow, ice, sand or mud.
- **Four-Wheel Drive Low (4L):**
Mechanically locks power to front and rear wheels and provides increased gearing for additional torque in severe off-road conditions, such as; deep sand, mud, on steep slopes, or when pulling heavy objects.

HOW DOES FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - 4X4 WITH PART TIME ENGAGEMENT

4x4 With Part Time Engagement (If Equipped)

This system offers the driver two-wheel drive high, four-wheel drive high, and four-wheel drive low as available modes of operation.

When you select four-wheel drive high or four-wheel drive low, the system provides mechanically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or slippery conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud.

Selecting four-wheel drive low also provides additional gearing for increased torque multiplication for conditions like deep sand, steep slopes, or pulling heavy objects.

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

Do not use four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) mode on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so can produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and damage drive components.

4H or 4L mode is only for use on consistently slippery or loose surfaces. Use of 4L mode on these surfaces could produce some noise, such as occasional clunks, but should not damage drive components.

For vehicles with an electronic shift-on-the-fly transfer case, the driveline could become mechanically blocked when attempting to shift out of a four-wheel drive mode on dry, hard surfaced roads.

Note: *If your vehicle has the 4x4 part-time selectable engagement transfer case and you are transitioning from consistently loose or slippery surfaces, make sure the four-wheel drive system is not mechanically blocked when you are on dry, hard surfaced roads in two-wheel drive high.*

Note: *In certain scenarios, and depending on specific part-time transfer case, where the four-wheel drive system has difficulty engaging, a To Engage 4x4 Slow to 3 MPH or To Engage 4x4 Slow to 5 km/h message could appear in the instrument cluster. This message may also appear when engaging the four-wheel drive system in extreme cold climates at the beginning of the drive cycle. When the driveline warms up, shifting to four-wheel drive can resume as normal.*

Operating Four-Wheel Drive with a Spare or Mismatched Tires

On four-wheel drive vehicles, the size of the spare tire can affect the four-wheel drive system.

If there is a significant difference between the size of the spare tire and the remaining tires, you could have limited four-wheel drive functionality, added noise, discomfort and driveline damage.

Due to normal tire wear, your spare tire is not necessarily the same size as your on-road tires, which makes your spare tire a dissimilar size. Use the spare tire on a limited basis only.

When driving with a dissimilar wheel and tire assembly do not:

- Exceed 80 km/h when operating in a four-wheel drive mode.
- Select a four-wheel drive mode unless the vehicle is stationary.
- Use a four-wheel drive mode on dry pavement.

You could have limited four-wheel drive functionality when driving with a dissimilar wheel and tire assembly, especially when driving in a mechanically locked four-wheel drive mode. You can experience the following:

- Additional noise from the transfer case or other drive components.
- Difficulty shifting in and out of a mechanically locked four-wheel drive mode.
- Driveline component damage.

Note: *When driving with a spare tire, do not switch on four-wheel drive unless you need to free your vehicle.*

After you free your vehicle, switch to 2H by performing the following steps:

1. Come to a stop on a flat, horizontal surface.
2. Shift the transmission to park (P) for automatic transmissions and neutral (N) for manual transmissions.
3. Switch to two-wheel drive mode.
4. Shift the transmission to reverse (R).

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

5. Shift the transmission to drive (D) for automatic transmissions and to first gear for manual transmissions to make sure the transfer case system is not still engaged.

Mechanical Shift Blocking

On vehicles with an electronic shift-on-the-fly transfer case, the transfer case distributes torque to the front wheels by mechanically interlocking the front and rear driveshafts together. Various external factors can affect shifting performance of this type of system including, but not limited to:

- Vehicle acceleration.
- Dissimilar tire sizes.
- High steering input.

For vehicles with an electronic shift-on-the-fly transfer case, when shifting into two-wheel drive high (2H) on dry, hard surfaced roads, we recommend you preform the following procedure to reduce the likelihood of a mechanical shift block:

1. While driving straight, come to a complete stop on a flat, horizontal surface.
2. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmissions or press the clutch for vehicles with a manual transmission.
3. Select 2H and wait for the 2H LED to become solid.
4. Shift the transmission into reverse (R) for automatic transmissions or select reverse (R) and release the clutch for vehicles with a manual transmission. Allow the vehicle to roll back approximately 1 m and press the brake.

5. Shift the transmission into drive (D) for automatic transmissions or press the clutch in and select a forward gear and release the clutch for vehicles with a manual transmission. Allow the vehicle to roll forward approximately 1 m.

If the system is mechanically blocked or if the system detects a mechanical shift block at the current speed after you select two-wheel drive high (2H), depending on the specific part-time transfer case, a message can appear momentarily indicating that four-wheel drive is unable to disengage. One or more of the following actions can relieve the mechanical shift block:

- Momentary acceleration.
- Momentary braking.
- Bringing the vehicle to a stop.
- Shifting the transmission to neutral (N) and back to drive (D).
- Shifting the transmission to reverse (R) and back to drive (D).
- Driving the vehicle around a tight turn at a slow speed.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS - RAPTOR

Do not use four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) mode on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so can produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and damage drive components.

4H or 4L mode is only for use on consistently slippery or loose surfaces. Use of 4L mode on these surfaces could produce some noise, such as occasional clunks, but should not damage drive components.

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Operating Four-Wheel Drive with a Spare or Mismatched Tires

On four-wheel drive vehicles, the size of the spare tire can affect the four-wheel drive system.

If there is a significant difference between the size of the spare tire and the remaining tires, you could have limited four-wheel drive functionality, added noise, discomfort and driveline damage.

Due to normal tire wear, your spare tire is not necessarily the same size as your on-road tires, which makes your spare tire a dissimilar size. Use the spare tire on a limited basis only.

When driving with a dissimilar wheel and tire assembly do not:

- Exceed 80 km/h when operating in a four-wheel drive mode.
- Select a four-wheel drive mode unless the vehicle is stationary.
- Use a four-wheel drive mode on dry pavement.

You could have limited four-wheel drive functionality when driving with a dissimilar wheel and tire assembly, especially when driving in a mechanically locked four-wheel drive mode. You can experience the following:

- Additional noise from the transfer case or other drive components.
- Difficulty shifting in and out of a mechanically locked four-wheel drive mode.
- Driveline component damage.

Note: When driving with a spare tire, do not switch on four-wheel drive mode unless you need to get your vehicle unstuck.

Immediately after getting your vehicle unstuck, shift to 2H.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS - SUPER DUTY, ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE

Do not use four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) mode on dry, hard surfaces. This can cause excessive noise, increase tire wear and damage drive components.

Use 4H or 4L mode only on consistently slippery or loose surfaces. Some noise, such as occasional clunks, could occur when using 4L mode on these surfaces, but should not damage drive components.

Operating Four-Wheel Drive with a Spare or Mismatched Tires

On four-wheel drive vehicles, the spare tire size can affect the four-wheel drive system.

If there is a significant difference between the size of the spare tire and the remaining tires, you could have limited four-wheel drive functionality, added noise, discomfort and driveline damage.

Due to normal tire wear, your spare tire is not necessarily the same size as your on-road tires, which makes your spare tire a dissimilar size. Use the spare tire on a limited basis only.

When driving with a dissimilar wheel and tire assembly do not:

- Exceed 80 km/h when operating in a four-wheel drive mode.
- Select a four-wheel drive mode unless the vehicle is stationary.
- Use a four-wheel drive mode on dry pavement.

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

You could have limited four-wheel drive functionality when driving with a dissimilar wheel and tire assembly, especially when driving in a mechanically locked four-wheel drive mode. You can experience the following:

- Additional noise from the transfer case or other drive components.
- Difficulty shifting in and out of a mechanically locked four-wheel drive mode.
- Driveline component damage.

Note: When driving with a spare tire, do not switch on four-wheel drive mode unless you need to get your vehicle unstuck.

Immediately after getting your vehicle unstuck, shift to 4A.

SWITCHING FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE ON AND OFF

A vehicle that comes with four-wheel drive, when selected, has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction, which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

On some four-wheel drive models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to four-wheel drive while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal as the front drivetrain comes up to speed and are not cause for concern.

SELECTING A FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODE - SUPER DUTY, ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE



Push the button or rotate the four-wheel drive mode selector to select the preferred four-wheel drive mode.

- 4A - Four-wheel drive auto. See **Four-Wheel Drive Auto** (page 259).
- 4H - Four-wheel drive high. See **Four-Wheel Drive High** (page 259).
- 4L - Four-wheel drive low. See **Four-Wheel Drive Low** (page 260).

Note: Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping, while applying the accelerator pedal or when driving in a tight turn.

Note: Momentarily releasing the accelerator pedal while a shift in progress message displays improves engagement or disengagement performance.

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Note: Do not perform this operation when cruise control or trail control is selected and active. The system may not shift as expected.

Note: If your vehicle has a push button four-wheel drive mode selector and the light is solid, the system has achieved the preferred four-wheel drive mode. When a selected four-wheel drive mode light blinks, the system is attempting to shift to that specific mode.

Note: The selector position indicates the preferred four-wheel drive mode. This does not indicate that the system has achieved the preferred four-wheel drive mode.

Shifting to or from Four-Wheel Drive Low

1. Bring your vehicle to a speed of 0 km/h.
2. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, place in neutral (N). For vehicles with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
3. Push or rotate the four-wheel drive mode selector to the preferred four-wheel drive mode.

Note: A 4x4 Shift in Progress message appears in the instrument cluster display indicating the shift is in progress. If any of the previous shift conditions are not met, the shift does not occur and the instrument cluster display guides the driver through the proper shifting procedures.

Note: If Shift Delayed Drive Forward displays in the instrument cluster display, place the transmission in a forward gear, move your vehicle forward approximately 1.5 m, and shift the transmission back to neutral (N) to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.

SELECTING A FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODE - 4X4 WITH PART TIME ENGAGEMENT



Depending on the vehicle configuration, your vehicle could have either a push button or a rotary four-wheel drive mode selector. Push the button or rotate the four-wheel drive mode selector to select the preferred four-wheel drive mode.

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

- 2H - Two-wheel drive high.
- 4H - Four-wheel drive high. See **Four-Wheel Drive High** (page 259).
- 4L - Four-wheel drive low. See **Four-Wheel Drive Low** (page 260).

Note: Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping, while applying the accelerator pedal or when driving in a tight turn.

Note: Momentarily releasing the accelerator pedal while a shift in progress message displays improves engagement or disengagement performance.

Note: Do not perform this operation when cruise control or trail control is selected and active. The system may not shift as expected.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with a push button four-wheel drive mode selector and the light is solid, the system has achieved the preferred four-wheel drive mode. When a selected four-wheel drive mode light is blinking, the system is attempting to shift to that specific mode.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with a rotary four-wheel drive mode selector, the selector position indicates the preferred four-wheel drive mode. This does not indicate that the system has achieved the preferred four-wheel drive mode.

Shifting to or from Four-Wheel Drive Low

1. Bring your vehicle to a speed of 0 km/h.
2. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, place in neutral (N). For vehicles with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
3. Push or rotate the four-wheel drive mode selector to the preferred four-wheel drive mode.

Note: A 4x4 Shift in Progress message appears in the instrument cluster display indicating the shift is in progress. If any of the previous shift conditions are not met, the shift does not occur and the instrument cluster display guides the driver through the proper shifting procedures.

Note: If Shift Delayed Drive Forward displays in the instrument cluster display, place the transmission in a forward gear, move your vehicle forward approximately 1.5 m, and shift the transmission back to neutral (N) to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.

SELECTING A FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODE - ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE



Push the button to select the four-wheel drive mode.

- 2H - Two-wheel drive high.
- 4A - Four-wheel drive auto. See **Four-Wheel Drive Auto** (page 259).

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

- 4H - Four-wheel drive high. See **Four-Wheel Drive High** (page 259).
- 4L - Four-wheel drive low. See **Four-Wheel Drive Low** (page 260).

Note: Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping or while applying the accelerator pedal.

Note: When the light is solid, the system has achieved the desired four-wheel drive mode. When a selected four-wheel drive mode LED is blinking, the system is attempting to shift to that specific mode.

Note: When all lights are blinking have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Shifting to or from Four-Wheel Drive Low

1. Bring your vehicle to a speed of 0 km/h.
2. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, place in neutral (N). For vehicles with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
3. Push the four-wheel drive mode selector to the four-wheel drive mode you prefer.

Note: A 4x4 Shift in Progress message appears in the instrument cluster display indicating the shift is in progress. If any of the previous shift conditions are not met, the shift will not occur and the instrument cluster display guides you through the proper shifting procedures.

Note: If Shift Delayed Drive Forward displays in the instrument cluster display, place the transmission in a forward gear, move your vehicle forward approximately 1.5 m, and shift the transmission back to neutral (N) to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODES

TWO-WHEEL DRIVE HIGH (If Equipped)

Two-wheel drive high is for general on-road driving. Power is sent to the rear wheels only.

Note: Two-wheel drive high can turn on or off based on the drive mode you select. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 280).

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE AUTO (If Equipped)

Four-wheel drive auto provides electronically controlled four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels, as required, for increased traction in varying on-road conditions. The four-wheel drive auto tuning varies based on selected Drive Mode. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 280).

Note: Four-wheel drive auto can turn on or off automatically based on Drive Mode selection. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 280).

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE HIGH

Four-wheel drive high provides electronically or mechanically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or winter conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud. This mode is not for use on dry pavement.

Note: Four-wheel drive high can turn on or off automatically based on Drive Mode selection. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 280).

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE LOW

Four-wheel drive low provides electronically or mechanically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use on low traction surfaces, but does so with additional gearing for increased torque multiplication. This mode is only for off-road conditions such as deep sand, steep slopes, or pulling heavy objects.

Note: *Four-wheel drive low can turn on or off automatically based on drive mode selection. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 280).*

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE INDICATORS

When the indicator lights are solid the system has achieved the desired four-wheel drive mode.

Two-wheel Drive High (If Equipped)



Illuminates briefly when you select two-wheel drive high.

Four-wheel Drive Auto (If Equipped)



Illuminates when you select four-wheel drive auto.

Four-wheel Drive High



Illuminates when you select four-wheel drive high.

Four-wheel Drive Low



Illuminates when you select four-wheel drive low.

TRANSFER CASE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Four-wheel drive (Electronic shift on the Fly).	1.2 L
Automatic four-wheel drive.	1.55 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Fluid	WSS-M2C938-A

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when a four-wheel drive or power train fault is

present.

Note: When a system fault is present, the system can typically remain in whichever mode was selected prior to the fault condition occurring. It does not default to two-wheel drive in all circumstances. When this warning displays, have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES - EXCLUDING: SUPER DUTY

Message	Details
For 4L slow to a stop	Displays when the driver attempts to shift into four-wheel drive low (4L) when traveling at too high of a speed.
For 4L shift to N	Displays when the driver attempts to shift into four-wheel drive low (4L) without the transmission in neutral (N).
For 4L press clutch	Displays when the driver attempts to shift into four-wheel drive low (4L) without the clutch pedal pressed.
To exit 4L slow to a stop	Displays when the driver attempts to shift out of four-wheel drive low (4L) when traveling at too high of a speed.
To exit 4L shift to N	Displays when the driver attempts to shift out of four-wheel drive low (4L) without the transmission in neutral (N).
To exit 4L press clutch	Displays when the driver attempts to shift out of four-wheel drive low (4L) without the clutch pedal pressed.
4x4 shift in progress	Displays when the four-wheel drive system is shifting into and out of two-wheel drive high (2H) or between high and low ranges.
4x4 temporarily locked	Displays when the four-wheel drive system detects a driving condition which temporarily requires greater four-wheel drive performance. The system resumes normal function after the system no longer detects these driving conditions.

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Message	Details
4x4 temporarily disabled	Displays when the four-wheel system detects elevated system temperature and temporarily stops providing power to the front wheels. The system resumes normal function when the system temperature returns to normal.
4x4 restored	Displays when the four-wheel drive system resumes normal function.
Shift delayed Drive forward	Displays when the transfer case is not able to complete a shift and requires forward motion to complete the shift.
Shift to Neutral	Displays when the system requires an additional transmission shift to neutral (N) to complete a transfer case shift.
4x4 Off	Displays when the system has become disabled due to mismatched tires or an external fault.
Selected 4x4 mode not available in current drive mode	Displays when the driver selects a four-wheel drive mode that is not allowed in the currently drive mode.
To engage 4x4 slow to 3 MPH	Displays when the system is unable to engage four-wheel drive high (4H) and requires the driver to slow down before attempting to engage.
To engage 4x4 release accelerator pedal	Displays when the four-wheel drive system requires the accelerator pedal to be released to perform the shift into four-wheel drive mode.
4x4 Performance reduced See manual	Displays when the system has entered a degraded mode due to mismatched tires.
Check 4x4	A four-wheel drive system fault is present. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
4x4 unable to disengage See manual	Displays when the four-wheel drive system detects a mechanical shift block when shifting out of four-wheel drive high (4H). See Four-Wheel Drive Limitations (page 253).

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES - SUPER DUTY

Message	Details
For 4L slow to a stop	Displays when you attempt to shift into four-wheel drive low (4L) when traveling at too high of a speed.
For 4L shift to N	Displays when you attempt to shift into four-wheel drive low (4L) without the transmission in neutral (N).
To exit 4L slow to a stop	Displays when you attempt to shift out of four-wheel drive low (4L) when traveling at too high of a speed.
To exit 4L shift to N	Displays when you attempt to shift out of four-wheel drive low (4L) without the transmission in neutral (N).
4x4 shift in progress	Displays when the four-wheel drive system shifts into and out of four-wheel drive auto (4A) or between high and low ranges.
4x4 temporarily locked	Displays when the four-wheel drive system detects a driving condition which temporarily requires greater four-wheel drive performance. The system resumes normal function after the system no longer detects these driving conditions.
4x4 temporarily disabled	Displays when the four-wheel system detects elevated system temperature and temporarily stops providing power to the front wheels. The system resumes normal function when the system temperature returns to normal.
4x4 restored	Displays when the four-wheel drive system resumes normal function.
Shift delayed Drive forward	Displays when the transfer case is not able to complete a shift and requires forward motion to complete the shift.
Shift to Neutral	Displays when the system requires an additional transmission shift to neutral (N) to complete a transfer case shift.
4x4 Off	Displays when the system has become disabled due to mismatched tires or an external fault.
Selected 4x4 mode not available in current drive mode	Displays when you select a four-wheel drive mode that the system does not allow in the current drive mode.

Four-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

Message	Details
4x4 Performance reduced See manual	Displays when the system enters a degraded mode due to mismatched tires.
Check 4x4	A four-wheel drive system fault is present. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
4x4 unable to disengage See manual	Displays when the four-wheel drive system detects a mechanical shift block when shifting out of four-wheel drive high (4H). See Four-Wheel Drive Limitations (page 253).

Front Axle

FRONT AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

Use fluid that meets the defined

specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Without electronic locking differential and without front axle disconnect.	705 ± 25 ml

Materials

Name	Specification
Gear/Transmission Fluid - SAE 80W-90	WSP-M2C197-A

FRONT AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - RAPTOR

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
With electronic locking differential.	775 ± 25 ml

Materials

Name	Specification
Gear/Transmission Fluid - SAE 80W-90	WSP-M2C197-A

Front Axle

FRONT AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - SUPER DUTY

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
With electronic locking differential.	825 ± 25 ml

Materials

Name	Specification
Gear/Transmission Fluid - SAE 80W-90	WSP-M2C197-A

Rear Axle

REAR AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

Use fluid that meets the defined

specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Specification	Quantity
Standard axle high ride.	75W85	1.6 ± 0.03 L
Standard axle low ride.	80W90	1.19 ± 0.03 L
Locking axle high ride.	75W85	1.54 ± 0.03 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Gear/Transmission Fluid - SAE 80W-90	WSP-M2C197-A
Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant XY-75W85-QL	WSS-M2C942-A

REAR AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - RAPTOR

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Specification	Quantity
Raptor.	75W85	3.35 ± 0.1 L

Rear Axle

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant XY-75W85-QL	WSS-M2C942-A

REAR AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - SUPER DUTY

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Specification	Quantity
Super Duty.	75W85	3.195 ± 0.035 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 75W-85 Premium Synthetic Hypoid Gear Lubricant XY-75W85-QL	WSS-M2C942-A

Electronic Locking Differential - Vehicles With: Electronic Locking Differential (ELD)

WHAT IS THE ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

The electronic locking differential is a device housed in the rear axle and when activated, allows both wheels on that axle to turn at the same speed. The electronic locking differential can provide additional traction should your vehicle become stuck.

You can activate the electronic locking differential and shift it on the fly within the operating speed range. The electronic locking differential automatically disengages when the vehicle speed exceeds a set value and automatically reengages when the vehicle speed goes below a set value. See **Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off** (page 270). It also automatically engages based on certain selected drive modes. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 280).

The electronic locking differential is for use in mud, rocks, sand, or any off-road condition where you need maximum traction. It is not for use on dry pavement.

Note: The electronic locking differential is for off-road use only and not for use on dry pavement. Using the electronic locking differentials on dry pavement results in increased tire wear, noise and vibration or driveline damage.

Note: Switching the electronic locking differential off while turning results in disengagement difficulties. If the electronic locking differential has difficulty disengaging, release the accelerator pedal and turn the steering wheel back and forth in small increments while maintaining control and following a straight line.

WHAT IS THE ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL - RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

The electronic locking differential is a device housed in the front or rear axle and, when activated allows both wheels on that axle to turn at the same speed. The electronic locking differential can provide additional traction should your vehicle become stuck. You can activate the differential electronically and shift it on the fly within the operating speed range. The electronic differential automatically disengages when the vehicle speed exceeds a set value and it automatically reengages when the vehicle speed goes below a set value. See **Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off** (page 270). It also automatically engages based on certain selected drive modes. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 284). The electronic locking differential is for use in mud, rocks, sand, or any off-road condition where you need maximum traction. It is not for use on dry pavement.

Note: The electronic locking differentials are for off-road use only and not for use on dry pavement. Using the electronic locking differentials on dry pavement results in increased tire wear, noise and vibration or driveline damage.

Note: The front electronic locking differential is only available in four-wheel drive low (4L).

Note: Locking the front differential reduces your ability to make tight turning maneuvers and creates additional resistance to steering inputs.

Electronic Locking Differential - Vehicles With: Electronic Locking Differential (ELD)

Note: Switching the electronic locking differentials off while turning results in disengagement difficulties. If the electronic locking differential has difficulty disengaging, release the accelerator pedal and turn the steering wheel back and forth in small increments while maintaining control and following a straight line.

SWITCHING THE ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL ON AND OFF - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

Activating the Electronic Locking Differential

You can activate the rear electronic locking differential by pressing the switch on the center stack or through the touchscreen display. See **Off-Road Screen** (page 470).

Note: Do not perform this operation when cruise control or trail control is selected and active. The system may not engage or disengage as expected.

Rear Electronic Locking Differential Engagement Speed and Availability

Drive Modes (Four-Wheel Drive Modes)	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
Normal (2H,4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Eco (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Tow/Haul (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Slippery (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Sand (4H) ¹	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit
Mud/Ruts (4H) ¹			

¹ Automatically engages when you select these drive modes. You have the ability to manually override the automatic engagement by pressing the electronic locking differential switch.

Four-Wheel Drive Modes	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
4L	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit

Electronic Locking Differential - Vehicles With: Electronic Locking Differential (ELD)

SWITCHING THE ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL ON AND OFF - RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

Activating the Electronic Locking Differential

You can activate the front or rear locking differential by pressing the switch on the center stack or through the touchscreen display. See **Off-Road Screen** (page 470).

Note: Do not perform this operation when cruise control or trail control is selected and active. The system may not engage or disengage as expected.

Front Electronic Locking Differential Engagement Speed and Availability

Four-Wheel Drive Mode	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
4L	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h

Rear Electronic Locking Differential Engagement Speed and Availability

Drive Modes (Four-Wheel Drive Modes)	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
Normal (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Sport (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Slippery (4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Mud/Ruts (4H) ¹	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit
Sand (4H) ¹			
Baja (2H, 4H)			
Rock Crawl (4L) ¹			

¹ Automatically engages when you select these drive modes. You have the ability to manually override the automatic engagement by pressing the electronic locking differential switch.

Four-Wheel Drive Modes	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
4L	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit	No Speed Limit

Electronic Locking Differential - Vehicles With: Electronic Locking Differential (ELD)

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL INDICATORS - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY



Rear electronic locking differential indicator.

If the rear electronic locking differential indicator in the instrument cluster is amber, both wheels of the indicated axle are locked together providing additional traction.

If the rear electronic locking differential is selected and the indicator in the instrument cluster is gray or turns from amber to gray while driving, one of the following has occurred:

- Your vehicle speed is too high.
- The accelerator pedal is too high during an engagement attempt.
- Your vehicle is experiencing an anti-lock brake activation.
- The left and right wheel speed difference is too high during an engagement attempt.

If the rear electronic locking differential is selected and the indicator in the instrument cluster does not illuminate, one of the following has occurred:

- The rear electronic locking differential is not allowed in the current drive mode and is accompanied by **SELECTED LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL NOT AVAILABLE IN CURRENT DRIVE MODE** in the instrument cluster display.
- The rear electronic locking differential is not allowed in the current 4x4 mode and is accompanied by **SELECTED LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL NOT AVAILABLE IN CURRENT 4x4 MODE** in the instrument cluster display.

- The system has malfunctioned and is accompanied by **CHECK LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL** in the instrument cluster display. See your authorized dealer for assistance.
- The rear electronic locking differential was selected above allowable vehicle speed and is accompanied by **TO ENGAGE LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL SLOW TO XX MPH/KM/H** in the instrument cluster display.

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL INDICATORS - RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY



Rear locking differential indicator.



Front locking differential indicator.

If the front or rear locking differential indicator in the instrument cluster is amber, both wheels of the indicated axle are locked together providing additional traction.

If the electronic locking differential is selected and the indicator in the instrument cluster is gray or turns from amber to gray while driving, one of the following has occurred:

- Your vehicle speed is too high.
- The accelerator pedal is too high during an engagement attempt.
- Your vehicle is experiencing an anti-lock brake activation.
- The left and right wheel speed difference is too high during an engagement attempt.

If the electronic locking differential is selected and the indicator in the instrument cluster does not illuminate, one of the following has occurred:

Electronic Locking Differential - Vehicles With: Electronic Locking Differential (ELD)

- The electronic locking differential is not allowed in the current drive mode and is accompanied by **SELECTED LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL NOT AVAILABLE IN CURRENT DRIVE MODE** in the instrument cluster.
- The electronic locking differential is not allowed in the current 4x4 mode and is accompanied by **SELECTED LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL NOT AVAILABLE IN CURRENT 4x4 MODE** in the instrument cluster.
- The system has malfunctioned and is accompanied by **CHECK LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL** in the instrument cluster. See your authorized dealer for assistance.

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

Message	Details
Selected locking differential not available in current drive mode	The selected electronic locking differential is not available in the current drive mode. See Selecting a Drive Mode (page 280).
Selected locking differential not available in current 4x4 mode	The selected electronic locking differential is not available in the current four-wheel drive mode. See Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off (page 270).
To engage locking differential release accelerator pedal	The selected electronic locking differential requires that you release the accelerator pedal in order to engage.
Check locking differential	An electronic locking differential system fault is present. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
To Engage Locking Differential Slow to XX mph/km/h	Slow the vehicle to the displayed speed to allow the electronic locking differential to engage.

The following conditions affect the electronic locking differential:

- Based on the drive mode selected, the rear electronic locking differential does not engage if your vehicle speed is above 32 km/h.
- Based on the drive mode selected, the electronic locking differential automatically disengages at speeds above 41 km/h and automatically re-engages at speeds below 32 km/h.

Electronic Locking Differential - Vehicles With: Electronic Locking Differential (ELD)

- The electronic locking differential may not engage if you press the accelerator pedal during an engagement attempt. A message may display in the instrument cluster instructing you to release the accelerator pedal.
- The AdvanceTrac system has the ability to take control of the electronic locking differential and disable it during driving maneuvers when necessary.

Operating Electronic Locking Differential With a Spare or Mismatched Tires

On vehicles with an electronic locking differential, the size of the spare tire can affect system performance. If there is a significant difference between the two rear tires or two front tires, you may have limited electronic locking differential functionality. If the electronic locking differential has difficulty disengaging, release the accelerator pedal and turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction when rolling. We recommend engaging and disengaging the electronic locking differential at a stop when you mount a spare or mismatched tire on either axle.

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

Message	Details
Selected locking differential not available in current drive mode	The selected electronic locking differential is not available in current drive mode. See Selecting a Drive Mode (page 284).
Selected locking differential not available in current 4x4 mode	The selected electronic locking differential is not available in your current four-wheel drive mode. See Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off (page 271).
To engage locking differential release accelerator pedal	The selected electronic locking differential requires that you release the accelerator pedal in order to engage.
Check locking differential	An electronic locking differential system fault is present. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

The following conditions affect the electronic locking differential:

- Based on drive mode selection, the rear electronic locking differential does not engage if your vehicle speed is above 32 km/h.
- The front electronic locking differential does not engage if your vehicle speed is above 32 km/h in four-wheel drive low (4L).

Electronic Locking Differential - Vehicles With: Electronic Locking Differential (ELD)

- Based on drive mode selection, the electronic locking differential automatically disengages at speeds above 41 km/h and automatically re-engages at speeds below 32 km/h.
- The electronic locking differential may not engage if you press the accelerator pedal during an engagement attempt. A message may display in the instrument cluster guiding you to release the accelerator pedal.
- In four-wheel drive low (4L), the front electronic locking differential automatically disengages at speeds above 41 km/h and automatically re-engages at speeds below 32 km/h.
- The AdvanceTrac system has the ability to take over control of the electronic locking differential and disable it during driving maneuvers when necessary.

Operating Electronic Locking Differential With a Spare or Mismatched Tires

On vehicles with an electronic locking differential, the size of the spare tire can affect system performance. If there is a significant difference between the two rear tires or two front tires, you may have limited electronic locking differential functionality. If the electronic locking differential has difficulty disengaging, release the accelerator pedal and turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction when rolling. We recommend engaging and disengaging the electronic locking differential at a stop when you mount a spare or mismatched tire on either axle.

Drive Mode Control - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

The system delivers a driving experience through a suite of sophisticated electronic vehicle systems. These systems optimize steering, handling and powertrain response. This provides a single location to control multiple systems performance settings.

Changing the drive mode changes the functionality of the following systems:

- Electric power-assisted steering system adjusts steering effort and feel based on the mode you select. See **How Does Electric Power Steering Work** (page 320).
- Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See **Stability Control** (page 309).
- Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your driving inputs.
- Transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules tuned to each mode.
- Four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.
- Electric vehicle mode selections may be limited.

The system tailors your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

Note: Not all settings may be available.

Note: The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear shifter position, the mode defaults to Normal.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE

EV Drive Mode Selection



Press the button on the center console. The first press activates the drive mode selection menu in the display. Subsequent presses change the selected drive mode. See **Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes** (page 277).

Note: Button icons vary depending on the vehicle.

Non-EV Drive Mode Selection



Drive Mode Control - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

Rotate the drive mode control on the center console to select or change a drive mode. See **Drive Modes** (page 280).

Note: *Button icons vary depending on the vehicle.*

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES

AUTO EV



This mode provides an automatic use of high voltage battery power during the drive, staying in electric mode when possible and running the engine when needed.

EV CHARGE



This mode uses your vehicle's engine to charge the high voltage battery versus plugging the vehicle into a utility grid.

The electric range gained through the EV Charge allows you to switch to Auto EV or EV Now for full electric operation later in your drive. The battery cannot completely charge to 100% when in EV Charge mode. This is to allow for full operation of the regenerative braking system. When the battery reaches its EV Charge limit, the vehicle remains in EV Charge mode and maintains that charge level, until you select another EV Mode, or until you switch your vehicle off.

When you enable EV Charge, a white EV Charge icon appears in the information display.

EV Charge resets to Auto EV when you switch off your vehicle. You may select EV Charge again during your next drive.

EV LATER



In EV Later, your vehicle runs on the engine as needed and saves most of the available electric range for later use in Auto EV or EV Now mode.

For example, your initial drive is at high speeds on open roads, but later your drive is at low speeds in an urban area where electric only driving is most efficient. In this case, you can select EV Later for the higher speed portion of your trip and then select Auto EV or EV Now for the urban portion.

When you enable EV Later, a white EV Later icon appears in the information display. EV Later resets to Auto EV when you switch off your vehicle. You may select EV Later again during your next drive.

When you select the EV Later mode with the vehicle fully charged or nearly fully charged, a portion of the electric-only driving range is used to slightly discharge the battery. Once this is achieved, the vehicle will automatically switch the engine on. This process ensures the full functionality of the regenerative braking system.

EV NOW



This mode provides an electric only driving experience.

Do not use EV Now when towing a trailer. The electric drive system is not designed for towing.

Your vehicle could accelerate slower and the top speed could be lower than when in Auto EV mode.

Drive Mode Control - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)

You can enable your engine at any time by using one of the following methods:

- Fully press the accelerator pedal. A pop-up message appears. Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enable the engine. When the engine is no longer needed, your vehicle returns to EV Now. The message disappears if you release the accelerator pedal.
- Select a different EV mode. This exits EV Now mode and permits engine operation. To return to EV Now mode, select it again.

Your vehicle could enter Engine Enabled mode if system conditions require it. A message displays if this occurs. This is a normal function of the system and your vehicle returns to EV Now mode when possible.

When you enable EV Now mode, a blue EV Now icon appears in the information display. If your vehicle is in Engine Enabled mode, the EV Now icon is amber. EV Now exits when your available electric range reaches zero.

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES – TROUBLESHOOTING

PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVE MODES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Engine enabled due to defrost setting	Your vehicle enables the engine due to the climate control defrost setting. This is normal operation.
Change EV mode for full defrost heat	Press the EV button and select either EV Later or EV Auto to enable full defrost. The engine may run to provide more cabin heat.
Engine enabled for system performance	Your vehicle enables the engine for system performance. This is normal operation.
Press OK to enable engine	You can press OK to enable the engine temporarily for increased performance when in EV Now mode.

Drive Mode Control - Excluding: Raptor

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

HOW DOES DRIVE MODE CONTROL WORK

Drive mode control adjusts your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

Changing the drive mode adjusts the steering effort and feel of the steering system.

The stability and traction control assist your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high-performance driving.

Throttle control enhances the powertrain response, transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules, and four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.

Changing the drive mode can engage or disengage the electronic locking differentials.

Changing the drive mode changes the four-wheel drive mode to the default setting for the selected drive mode.

Note: The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Note: Your vehicle reverts to normal mode each time it is started.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON SELECTABLE DRIVE MODES



Press the button on the center console. The first press activates the drive mode selection menu in the display. Subsequent presses change the selected drive mode.

Note: Button icons vary depending on the vehicle.

Note: Mode changes are not available when your vehicle is off or when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Drive Mode Control - Excluding: Raptor

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE - VEHICLES WITH: ROTARY SELECTABLE DRIVE MODES



Rotate the drive mode control on the center console to select or change a drive mode.

Note: Button icons vary depending on the vehicle.

DRIVE MODES

ECO



For efficient driving. This mode helps deliver maximum fuel efficiency and helps to increase driving range.

Depending on your vehicle options, four-wheel drive auto (4A) or two-wheel drive high (2H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is not selectable in eco mode.

The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

MUD/RUTS



For off-road driving. This mode enhances vehicle performance to traverse muddy, rutted or uneven terrains.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is selectable in mud/ruts mode. Depending on your vehicle options, four-wheel drive auto (4A) or two-wheel drive high (2H) is not selectable in mud/ruts mode.

The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in mud/ruts mode and is available at any speed in all selectable four-wheel drive modes.

Note: Do not use this mode on dry, hard pavement. This could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection.

NORMAL



For everyday driving. This mode is the perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. This is the default mode after each ignition cycle, the driveline settings remain the same prior to the ignition cycle.

Depending on your vehicle options, four-wheel drive auto (4A) or two-wheel drive high (2H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. All four-wheel drive modes are selectable when in normal mode.

The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

Note: The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).

Drive Mode Control - Excluding: Raptor

ROCK CRAWL



For off-road driving and optimum rock climbing. Rock crawl mode optimizes throttle response and adjusts transmission shift points to provide additional control of your vehicle.

Four-wheel drive low (4L) is the only four-wheel drive mode available in rock crawl mode.

The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in rock crawl mode and is available at any speed.

SAND



For off-road driving on soft, dry sand or deep snow. This mode may help get your vehicle unstuck from deep snow or sand.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is selectable in sand mode. Depending on your vehicle options, four-wheel drive auto (4A) or two-wheel drive high (2H) is not selectable in sand mode.

The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in sand mode and is available at any speed in all selectable four-wheel drive modes.

Note: Do not use this mode on dry, hard pavement. This could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection.

Note: Sand mode is not intended for use on firm, slippery surfaces, such as paved roads covered with snow or ice. For slippery, firm surfaces use slippery mode.

SLIPPERY



For less than ideal conditions such as snow or ice. This mode can be used for crossing terrain where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material. Slippery mode lowers throttle response and optimizes shifting for slippery surfaces.

Depending on your vehicle options, four-wheel drive auto (4A) or four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. When Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is the default, two-wheel drive high (2H) is not available.

The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

Note: The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).

Note: Do not use this mode on hard pavement while in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L). This could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection.

TOW/HAUL



For improved transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. This mode moves upshifts to higher engine speeds to reduce the frequency of transmission shifting. This mode also provides engine braking in all forward gears, which slows your vehicle and assists you in controlling your vehicle when descending a slope. The amount of downshift braking provided varies based on the amount you press the brake pedal.

Drive Mode Control - Excluding: Raptor

Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is the default four-wheel drive mode when four-wheel drive auto (4A) is available, otherwise this mode does not default to a certain four-wheel drive mode and maintains the previous selection. All four-wheel drive modes are selectable when in tow/haul.

The system tunes the steering to enhance driving comfort when towing or carrying heavy loads.

The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

Note: *The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).*

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Note: *The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.*

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Selected 4x4 mode not available in current drive mode	You have selected a four-wheel drive mode that is not available in the current drive mode. Select an available four-wheel drive mode.

Drive Mode Control - Excluding: Raptor

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why did the system default to normal mode?

- If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Can I switch drive modes while I am driving?

- In most instances, you can switch drive modes while you are driving (if you maintain attention on the road), or while the vehicle is stationary. However, you should not switch the vehicle into a drive mode intended for off-road or track use while driving on paved, public roads. For example, while driving on a paved highway, it would be acceptable to switch from normal mode to eco mode, but not to off-road mode.

How long does it take for the vehicle to switch modes after I make a selection?

- After switching modes, the new drive mode activates within several seconds, if all the preconditions are met.

How should I decide which drive mode to use?

- Selecting a drive mode usually depends on the driving experience you would like to have, and the driving conditions. For example, if you want to have a more exciting on-road driving experience, you could switch into sport mode. If you find yourself driving on slick roads, you could switch into slippery mode.

Will drive modes impact my vehicle's fuel consumption?

- Drive modes can have an impact on your vehicle's fuel consumption. In addition to the active mode, your driving style also affects the fuel consumption.

Drive Mode Control - Raptor

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

HOW DOES DRIVE MODE CONTROL WORK

Drive mode control adjusts your vehicle configuration for each mode you select.

Changing the drive mode adjusts the steering effort and feel of the steering system.

The stability and traction control assist your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high-performance driving.

Throttle control enhances the powertrain response, transmission controls become optimized with shift schedules, and four-wheel drive settings are optimized and tuned to each mode.

Changing the drive mode can engage or disengage the electronic locking differentials.

Changing the drive mode changes the four-wheel drive mode to the default setting for the selected drive mode.

Note: The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Note: Your vehicle reverts to normal mode each time it is started.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE



Rotate the drive mode control on the center console to select or change a drive mode.

Note: Button icons vary depending on the vehicle.

Selecting a Steering Mode



To change the steering feel, press the button on the steering wheel. The first press displays a pop-up message in the instrument cluster display of the selected mode and subsequent presses changes the selected mode.

Modes:

- Normal – Developed to complement vehicle response during daily driving.
- Sport – Slightly less assist and damping for improved steering feel during spirited driving.
- Comfort – Slightly more assist for driver preference and daily driving ease.

Drive Mode Control - Raptor

- Off-road – Similar assist to Normal with added damping for improved control during off-road driving.

After selecting the desired setting, you may feel a soft feedback bump in the steering wheel when the changeover occurs.

Note: *If you disconnect or remove the battery, the steering system defaults to normal.*

Selecting a Suspension Mode



To change the suspension feel, press the button on the steering wheel. The first press displays a pop-up message in the instrument cluster display of the selected mode and subsequent presses changes the selected mode.

Modes:

- Normal – Developed to complement vehicle response during daily driving.
- Sport – Slightly firmer suspension with emphasis on handling and control.
- Off-road – Maximizes suspension performance in extreme off-road environments.

Selecting an Exhaust Mode



To change the exhaust sound, press the button on the steering wheel. The first press displays a pop-up message in the instrument cluster display of the selected mode and subsequent presses changes the selected mode.

Modes:

- Normal – Default setting provides a balance of comfort and feedback.
- Sport – Slightly louder than normal for spirited driving.

- Baja – Loudest setting for off-road use only. Maximum exhaust noise under all driving conditions.
- Quiet – Quietest setting for maximum comfort under all driving conditions.

Quiet Start

Quiet start allows you to schedule when the exhaust mode turns on the quiet setting. The time window can be from 1 to 24 hours

Enabling and disabling quiet start:

1. Press Settings.
2. Press Vehicle.
3. Press Quiet Start.
4. Press Quiet Start.
5. Press Settings.

Setting quiet time:

1. Press Settings.
2. Press Vehicle.
3. Press Quiet Start.
4. Press Set Quiet Time.
5. Set your desired start and end times.

MyMode



You can use MyMode to create one custom vehicle configuration based on the current state of your vehicle.

When you have your vehicle configured to your desired settings, press and hold the button for a few seconds to save as MyMode.

Press the button twice to activate your saved MyMode.

You can check the saved MyMode settings with a single press of the button.

Drive Mode Control - Raptor

You can save the following settings as MyMode:

- Drive mode.
- Steering mode.
- Suspension mode.
- Exhaust mode.
- Four-wheel drive mode.
- Stop and start on or off.
- Rear electronic locking differential on or off.

Note: MyMode can only be set with configurations that are available for each drive mode. See **Drive Modes** (page 280).

Note: You can save or view MyMode at any time, regardless of your vehicle's speed or transmission selection, as long as your vehicle is running and it meets system conditions.

Note: When activating MyMode, your vehicle must meet all preconditions for the drive mode and various settings before it activates. A message appears if it does not meet system conditions.

DRIVE MODES

BAJA



For high speed off-road driving. Baja mode optimizes the throttle control for better response and torque delivery.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is not selectable in baja mode.

Off-road is the default steering and suspension mode. All steering and suspension modes are available.

Baja is the default exhaust mode. All exhaust modes are available.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed in all selectable four-wheel drive modes.

Note: Do not use this mode on dry, hard pavement. This could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection.

MUD/RUTS



For off-road driving. This mode enhances vehicle performance to traverse muddy, rutted or uneven terrains.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is selectable in mud/ruts mode. Two-wheel drive high (2H) or four-wheel drive auto (4A) is not selectable in mud/ruts mode.

Comfort is the default steering mode. All steering modes are available.

Off-road is the default suspension mode. All suspension modes are available.

Normal is the default exhaust mode. All exhaust modes are available.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in mud/ruts mode and is available at any speed in all selectable four-wheel drive modes.

Note: Do not use this mode on dry, hard pavement. This could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection.

Drive Mode Control - Raptor

NORMAL



For everyday driving. This mode is the perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. This is the default mode after each ignition cycle, the driveline settings remain the same prior to the ignition cycle.

Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is the default four-wheel drive mode. All four-wheel drive modes are selectable when in normal mode.

Normal is the default steering, suspension, and exhaust mode.

Off-road steering mode is not available.

All suspension and exhaust modes are available.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

Note: The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).

ROCK CRAWL



For off-road driving and optimum rock climbing. Rock crawl mode optimizes throttle response and adjusts transmission shift points to provide additional control of your vehicle.

Four-wheel drive low (4L) is the only four-wheel drive mode available in rock crawl mode.

Comfort is the default steering mode. All steering modes are available.

Off-road is the default suspension mode. All suspension modes are available.

Normal is the default exhaust mode. All exhaust modes are available.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in rock crawl mode and is available at any speed.

SAND



For off-road driving on soft, dry sand or deep snow. This mode may help get your vehicle unstuck from deep snow or sand.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is selectable in sand mode.

Two-wheel drive high (2H) or four-wheel drive auto (4A) is not selectable in sand.

Comfort is the default steering mode. All steering modes are available.

Off-road is the default suspension mode. All suspension modes are available.

Sport is the default exhaust mode. All exhaust modes are available.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in sand mode and is available at any speed in all selectable four-wheel drive modes.

Note: Do not use this mode on dry, hard pavement. This could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection.

Note: Sand mode is not intended for use on firm, slippery surfaces, such as paved roads covered with snow or ice. For slippery, firm surfaces use slippery mode.

Drive Mode Control - Raptor

SLIPPERY



For less than ideal conditions such as snow or ice. This mode can be used for crossing terrain where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material. Slippery mode lowers throttle response and optimizes shifting for slippery surfaces.

Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Two-wheel drive high (2H) is not available.

Normal is the default steering, suspension, and exhaust mode.

Off-road steering mode is not available.

All suspension and exhaust modes are available.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

Note: The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).

Note: Do not use this mode on hard pavement while in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L). This could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear depending on the four-wheel drive mode selection.

SPORT



For sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases accelerator pedal response and provides a sportier steering feel. The powertrain system holds onto lower gears longer, helping your vehicle accelerate faster.

Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is not selectable in sport mode.

Sport is the default steering, suspension, and exhaust mode.

Off-road steering mode is not available.

All suspension and exhaust modes are available.

The front electronic locking differential is not available in sport mode. The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Note: The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, the drive mode system defaults to normal. When the system defaults to normal, the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Drive Mode Control - Raptor

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Selected 4x4 mode not available in current drive mode	You have selected a four-wheel drive mode that is not available in the current drive mode. Select an available four-wheel drive mode.

Drive Mode Control - Raptor

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why did the system default to normal mode?

- If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Can I switch drive modes while I am driving?

- In most instances, you can switch drive modes while you are driving (if you maintain attention on the road), or while the vehicle is stationary. However, you should not switch the vehicle into a drive mode intended for off-road or track use while driving on paved, public roads. For example, while driving on a paved highway, it would be acceptable to switch from normal mode to eco mode, but not to off-road mode.

How long does it take for the vehicle to switch modes after I make a selection?

- After switching modes, the new drive mode activates within several seconds, if all the preconditions are met.

How should I decide which drive mode to use?

- Selecting a drive mode usually depends on the driving experience you would like to have, and the driving conditions. For example, if you want to have a more exciting on-road driving experience, you could switch into sport mode. If you find yourself driving on slick roads, you could switch into slippery mode.

Will drive modes impact my vehicle's fuel consumption?

- Drive modes can have an impact on your vehicle's fuel consumption. In addition to the active mode, your driving style also affects the fuel consumption.

WHAT IS ECO COACH

Eco coach is designed to monitor certain driving characteristics to help you drive more efficiently.

HOW DOES ECO COACH WORK

Eco coach provides feedback through the instrument cluster display about your driving behaviour.

Note: *The efficiency levels do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure.*

Note: *The system only indicates the efficiency level for the current trip. The system resets each time you switch the ignition on.*

HOW DOES INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL WORK

The display ring increases as the instantaneous efficiency level increases and illuminates when it reaches maximum efficiency. The level continuously updates to indicate the efficiency level for the current trip.

VIEWING THE INSTANTANEOUS EFFICIENCY LEVEL

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco Coach**.

HOW DOES TRIP SUMMARY WORK

The calculated trip summary is shown as four percentage values. The percentage values increase as the calculated efficiency levels increase. The percentage values indicate the average efficiency level for acceleration, deceleration, speed and gear shifting during the total distance traveled by your vehicle for the current trip.

How to improve your efficiency:

- Acceleration: Light to moderate acceleration improves your score.
- Braking: We recommend slow and steady braking.
- Speed: Maintain reasonable vehicle speeds for best scores.
- Gear shifting: Shifting the gears at the right moment improves your score.
- Compliance: Follow the recommendations to improve your score.

Note: *Vehicles with an automatic transmission do not have a percentage value for gear shifting.*

VIEWING THE TRIP SUMMARY

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Eco Coach**.

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

See **Under Hood Overview** (page 511).

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.

Brakes



Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 293).

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced brake performance.

Note: *We recommend you to use Dot 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 specifications or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. If you use any fluid other than the recommended fluid, it could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: *To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.*

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2

Brakes

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

BRAKES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Brake fluid level low	The brake fluid level is low, check the brake system immediately. See Checking the Brake Fluid (page 292).
Check Brake System	Have the system checked as soon as possible.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn. Have the system checked.

There is an electrical motor sound when I press on the brake pedal or activate the park brake switch. Is this normal?

Yes, those sounds are the electronic brake booster or the electronic park brake operating.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 560).*

Parking Brake

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking brake lever upward to its fullest extent.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park Brake Engaged	You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h. If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Apply the parking brake and make sure your vehicle is in park (P). Power the vehicle off and remove the keys or remote control whenever you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The electric parking brake switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply when you shift into park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 243).

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull the switch up and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

Note: Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

Pulling Away When Towing a Trailer Uphill

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.

Electric Parking Brake

4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 482).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

Electric Parking Brake

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Parking Brake

Message	Details
Park Brake On	The electric parking brake is fully applied.
Park Brake Off	The electric parking brake is fully released.
Park brake System over-heated	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition where components may have been subject to overheating. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set and you attempted a manual release without pressing the brake.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	With the electric parking brake set, you attempted an automatic release with no success. Perform a manual release.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h. Release the parking brake before continued driving.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Park Brake Maintenance Mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode to allow rear brake service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R). It functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h.

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system. Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

Note: *The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.*

Note: *The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.*

Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Reverse Brake Assist. See **Center Display Overview** (page 630).

2. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: The system is unavailable when the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert is off.

Note: If your vehicle is not equipped with cross traffic alert, the reverse brake assist relies on input from only the rear parking aid and rear camera sensors.

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays for a few seconds when the system applies the brakes.
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Make sure the rear parking aid and cross traffic alert systems are switched on. Make sure that all doors, liftgate or tailgate and hood are closed and no vehicle add-on devices or modifications are interfering with the system. Make sure the rear view camera is clear and the mirrors are not folded while in reverse if 360 degree cameras are installed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist Off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist (If Equipped)

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What are the precautions to be followed when using the reverse brake assist system?

- The system uses a combination of rear parking aid cameras and parking sensors for operation. Poor visibility or low lighting conditions can impact performance. Make sure the rear parking aid cameras and parking sensors are not dirty or obstructed.
- Reverse your vehicle slowly. On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to road infrastructure, for example sloped driveways and textured surfaces behind the vehicle or objects close to the reversing path.

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 301).
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **What Is Cross Traffic Alert** (page 376).
- Make sure the rear parking aid system is on.
- Make sure that traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 307).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.

- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 324). See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 377).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: *If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the vehicle is stationary beyond the Hill Start Assist hold time.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF

Hill start assist is active when you switch the ignition on. You cannot switch the system on or off.

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill Start Assist not available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto Hold

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

You can switch the system on or off by accessing the menu on the touchscreen.

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 630).

Note: If your vehicle has mechanical shift, you can only switch the system on after you close the driver door and fasten your seatbelt.

Note: If your vehicle has electronic shift, you can only switch the system on after you close the driver door.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: When using an automatic car wash, switch auto hold off or shift into neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to make sure auto hold is not active.

USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the instrument cluster display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: The system only activates if you bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

Note: Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 298).

Note: While auto hold is applying the brakes, if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) with your foot on the brake pedal, auto hold releases the brake. However, while auto hold is applying the brakes, if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) without your foot on the brake pedal, auto hold continues to apply the brakes. In this case, the driver pressing the brake pedal causes auto hold to release the brake.

The following situations can cause auto hold to not work:

- Your vehicle is in temporary neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

Auto Hold

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Traction Control

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your wheels begin to spin, the loss of traction can compromise steering control and stability of the vehicle. The traction control system applies the brakes to individual wheels and when needed, reduces engine power at the same time to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Switching the System Off



The switch for the stability and traction control system is on the center console.

When you switch the system off, a message and an illuminated icon appear in the instrument cluster display.

Use the switch again to return the traction control system to normal operation.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

Note: When you place your vehicle into four-wheel drive low (4L), the traction control disables. Traction control resumes when you put your vehicle back into two-wheel drive or four-wheel drive high (4H).

Note: For additional information on the traction and stability control systems. See **Stability Control** (page 309).

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR

Stability and Traction Control Indicator



If the indicator does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



The traction control off indicator illuminates when you switch the traction control system off, or when an alternative stability control mode is selected that requires the traction control off depending on the drive mode selected.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



The traction control light temporarily illuminates on start-up and flashes when activated by a driving condition. The light stays on if a problem occurs in the system.

Traction Control



The traction control off light temporarily illuminates on start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.

TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Traction Control Off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Stability Control

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle.

Electronic Stability Control

Electronic stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying the brakes individually to one or more of the wheels and if necessary, reducing engine power.

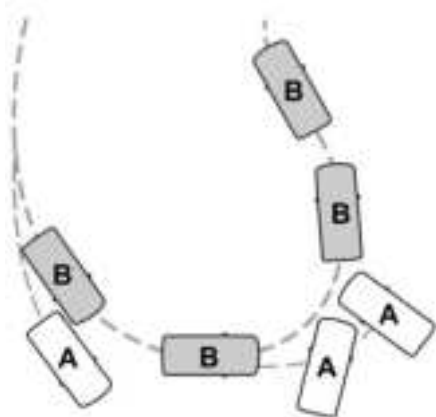
Roll Stability Control

Roll stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes individually to one or more wheels.

Traction Control

Traction control enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **How Does Traction Control Work** (page 307).

Stability Control



- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.

- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

Stability Control turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You can switch the stability control off by pressing and holding the stability and traction control button off for 5-15 seconds, or you can press the button again to switch the system on.

Shifting the transmission into reverse (R) will disable the system.

You can switch the traction control system off or on independently. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 307).

Stability Control

Stability Control and Traction Control with Roll Stability Control

	Stability Control OFF Light	Roll Stability Control ³	Electronic Stability Control ³	Traction Control System ³
Default at start-up	Illuminated during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled ³	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Illuminated	Enabled	Enabled ³	Disabled ¹
Button pressed and held for 5 - 15 seconds	Illuminated	Enabled	Disabled ²	Disabled ¹
Button not pressed and transfer case is switched to 4x4 Low or put into Rock Crawl Mode	Illuminated	Disabled	Disabled	Disabled ¹

¹ The Traction Control system can still be enabled but with tighter or looser thresholds.

² When you press and hold the button, a progress bar will display to show the button hold time progress.

³ Functions can vary depending on what selectable drive mode the vehicle is currently in.

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on. You can switch off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **How Does Traction Control Work** (page 307).

Stability Control

STABILITY CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

STABILITY CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Service AdvanceTrac	Displayed when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off	The traction control has been disabled by the driver.
AdvanceTrac On	The traction control has been enabled by the driver.

Trail Control (If Equipped)

WHAT IS TRAIL CONTROL



WARNING: The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.

Trail control lets you focus on steering during low-speed and off-road use by controlling your vehicle's acceleration and braking to maintain the speed that you set.

You may hear a noise from the anti-lock brake system pump motor when you use the system. This is normal.

TRAIL CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Trail control is unavailable when any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle speed is greater than 32 km/h in two-wheel drive high (2H), four-wheel drive auto (4A) or four-wheel drive high (4H) modes.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 15 km/h in four-wheel drive low (4L) mode.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 8 km/h in reverse (R).
- The transmission is in park (P).
- The driver side door is open.
- Cruise control is on.
- Pro trailer backup assist is on.
- The parking brake is applied.

SWITCHING TRAIL CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press Trail Control on the touchscreen. See **Using the Off-Road Screen** (page 471).

The system switches off if you press the button again or exceed 68 km/h.

SETTING THE TRAIL CONTROL SPEED

Note: The buttons are located on the steering wheel.

Drive to your preferred speed.



Press button to increase the set current speed.



Press button to decrease the set current speed.

Note: The indicator changes color.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

You can also decrease the set speed by braking.

Note: If a set speed is set and the trail control is active and the vehicle is stopped by the brake, releasing the brake will allow the vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Pressing the brake pedal does not switch off the system.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

Trail Control (If Equipped)

TRAIL CONTROL INDICATORS



When trail control is active, the indicator illuminates green in the

instrument cluster. When the system is switched on but is unavailable or in standby mode, it illuminates gray.

Trail Control (If Equipped)

TRAIL CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAIL CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Reduce speed to enter Trail Control	Reduce your vehicle speed to use trail control.
Trail Control not available with park brake applied	Release the park brake to use trail control.
Trail Control not available while Pro Trailer Backup Assist active	Switch off the trailer backup assist to use trail control.
Trail Control enabled Use SET button to set speed	You successfully enabled trail control and can set a speed with the Set+ or Set- control.
Trail Control Off Driver resume control	A system fault has occurred when trail control was active and you must resume control.
Trail Control Off	Displays when the system has turned off.
Trail Control fault See manual	A system fault is present. See the trail control section in your Owner's Manual. See your authorized dealer for diagnosis.
Trail Control To activate select gear	You must be in drive (D), neutral (N), or reverse (R) to use trail control.
Trail Control not available with Cruise Control active	Switch the cruise control off to use trail control.
Trail Control not available with driver door open	Close the driver door to use trail control.
Set Trail Control to 1 MPH to aid in getting unstuck in sand	The system detects you may be stuck in sand and recommends using trail control on the lowest set speed. Doing this could slowly pull sand under the tires to free the vehicle.
Set Trail Control to 2 km/h to aid in getting unstuck in sand	
Hill Descent Control now active Press Trail Control switch to exit	Due to some driver action, trail control propulsion was turned off but the vehicle still brakes if descending a hill. Press the trail control switch to turn the feature off, you can then turn it back on.
Trail Control not available with seat belt Off	You must have the seatbelt on to use trail control.

Trail Turn Assist (If Equipped)

WHAT IS TRAIL TURN ASSIST

Trail turn assist can reduce the turning radius of your vehicle by applying the brakes to the inside rear wheel in low-speed, high steering-angle maneuvers.

TRAIL TURN ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

Note: Do not use trail turn assist on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so can produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and may damage drive line, or braking components. Trail turn assist is only intended for slippery, or loose surfaces.

You may hear noise from the anti-lock brake system while trail turn assist is active. This is normal operation.

TRAIL TURN ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Trail turn assist can only be used when the vehicle's four-wheel drive system is in the four-wheel drive high (4H), or four-wheel drive low (4L) modes.

Trail Turn Assist cannot be used when the vehicle's rear differential is locked. If the rear differential has recently been locked prior to Trail Turn Assist being turned on, Trail Turn Assist may not activate until it can confirm that the rear differential is unlocked.

SWITCHING TRAIL TURN ASSIST ON AND OFF

You can switch trail turn assist on or off from the touchscreen. See **Using the Off-Road Screen** (page 473).

Once switched on, trail turn assist activates when:

- Vehicle speed is less than 19 km/h.
- Vehicle is in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L).
- Rear differential is fully unlocked.
- Steering wheel is almost fully turned to the left or right.

You can deactivate trail turn assist by performing any of the following:

- Select two-wheel drive high (2H) or four-wheel drive auto (4A).
- Switch on the rear locking differential.
- Reduce the steering wheel input.

Trail turn assist remains available, even if not active, until you switch it off in the touchscreen.

TRAIL TURN ASSIST INDICATORS



When trail turn assist is on, one of these two indicators will be displayed, depending on the direction of the vehicle's last turn. When the feature is available but not in use, the indicator will be gray. When the feature is active the indicator will be green.

Trail Turn Assist (If Equipped)

TRAIL TURN ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAIL TURN ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trail Turn Assist available in 4L or 4H	Switch to four-wheel drive low (4L) or four-wheel drive high (4H) to activate trail turn assist. See Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode (page 257).
Trail Turn Assist not available See manual	Trail turn assist system malfunction could be present. If this condition persists, have your vehicle serviced.
Trail Turn Assist On	You have activated trail turn assist.
Trail Turn Assist Off	You have switched trail turn assist off.

TRAIL TURN ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does Trail Turn Assist not activate after unlocking the rear differential?

- The rear differential may not be fully disengaged. When possible, turn off the rear axle locker while driving immediately before using trail turn assist. If you are already in a tight turn when you encounter this situation, driving the vehicle for a short distance in reverse could allow the differential to fully disengage.

Hill Descent Control

WHAT IS HILL DESCENT CONTROL

Hill descent control allows the driver to set and maintain vehicle speed while descending steep slopes in various surface conditions.

HOW DOES HILL DESCENT CONTROL WORK

When hill descent control is active, it functions up to speeds of 32 km/h. When the vehicle speed exceeds 32 km/h, the system remains on but inactive.

If the vehicle speed stays below 64 km/h, hill descent control remains on but inactive. Under this condition, when the vehicle speed goes below 32 km/h, the system becomes active and resumes maintaining vehicle speeds once the driver has selected a speed.

If the vehicle speed goes above 64 km/h hill descent control is powered off and does not resume without the driver reactivating the system.

HILL DESCENT CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Hill descent control cannot control descent in all surface conditions and circumstances, such as ice or extremely steep grades. Hill descent control is a driver assist system and cannot substitute for good judgment by the driver. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

SWITCHING HILL DESCENT CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button on the instrument panel or on the off-road screen (if so equipped). A light illuminates, a message is displayed and a tone sounds when the system is active.

SETTING THE HILL DESCENT SPEED

To increase or decrease the descent speed, press the accelerator or brake pedal, or use the SET + and SET - buttons on the steering wheel. Once you reach the preferred speed remove your feet from the pedals.

Note: *Increasing and decreasing the set speed can only be done in small increments.*

Hill Descent Control

HILL DESCENT CONTROL INDICATOR



Illuminates when you switch hill descent control on.

HILL DESCENT CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL DESCENT CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
For Hill Descent Reduce Speed XX MPH/km/h or Less	Your vehicle speed requirement for off-road mode entry has not been met.
For Hill Descent Select Gear	You need to select a transmission gear for hill descent mode.
Hill Descent Driver Resume Control	Hill descent control mode is deactivated and you must resume control.
Hill Descent Control Fault	A hill descent system fault is present.
Hill Descent Control Off System Cooling	The hill descent system is cooling due to overuse.
Hill Descent Control not available with Cruise Control Active	The hill descent system cannot activate while Cruise Control is actively controlling speed.

Steering

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system uses an electric motor to provide assistance when turning the steering wheel to steer your vehicle. If your vehicle detects a steering concern when you are driving, a warning message appears and the system reduces steering assistance. If your vehicle loses electrical power, the steering system still operates and you can manually steer your vehicle. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Note: *When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.*

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds could also make the steering wander or pull.*

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

Note: *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.

Steering

STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Steering fault Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist fault Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering lock fault Service now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Use water to thoroughly clean mud, ice, or debris from the inner and outer surfaces of the bumper and parking sensors. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF

Your vehicle may have any of the following parking aid buttons:



Press the button to switch the system on and off.



Press the button and use the menu to switch the system on and off. You may only be able to mute the system.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)



Shift into reverse (R) and press the button on the rear view camera display screen to switch the system's audible tone on and off.

Switching Parking Aid On and Off Long Term (If Equipped)

The system can be set to stay on or off in between ignition cycles.

1. Open the driver assistance menu. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Park Aid Sensors.
3. Switch Front Sensors (Always) or Rear Sensor (Always) on or off.

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The sensor coverage area is up to 200 cm from the driver assistance technology bar.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system does not provide an audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.



The rear parking aid sensors are on the driver assistance technology bar.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



Parking Aids (If Equipped)

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 50 cm or less from the driver assistance technology bar.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: *When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.*

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm from the front bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects and provides an audible warning when your vehicle is moving at a low speed and when an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example, another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and a visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide a visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h and the system detects obstacles inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm or less from the front bumper.

Note: If your vehicle remains stationary, the audible and visual warnings turn off. If your vehicle moves forward, the audible and visual warnings resume. If the detected object is 30 cm or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.

PARKING AID INDICATORS

Parking Aid Indicators Shown When 360 Degree Camera Views are not Available



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color. The indicators for closer objects appear closer to the vehicle icon.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- A white indicator means the system detects a blocked sensor. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 328).
- If the system does not detect an object, the distance indicators do not activate.

The active visual indicators continue to display with your vehicle stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the active visual indicators disappear after four seconds.

Note: If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the active visual indicators continue to display.

Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off in the settings menu.
- If the system detects a trailer or an open tailgate, rear parking aid disables. Front parking aid may continue to operate.
- Something is blocking the sensors. Front parking aid disables if any front parking sensor is blocked. Rear parking aid disables if any rear parking sensor is blocked. If all sensors disable, both the front and rear sensors are blocked.
- A system fault occurs.

Note: If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 328).

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Note: Front and side park aid indicators may not be available.

Parking Aid Indicators Shown in 360 Degree Camera Views (If Equipped)



The system provides object distance indication through the touchscreen.

- As the distance to an object decreases, the indicators change color.
- The indicators are green when the object is at the farthest detection point. As the object gets closer, the indicators turn amber. When the object is at the closest detection point, the indicators turn red.
- If the system does not detect an object, the distance indicators do not activate.

The activate visual indicators continue to display with your vehicle stopped in reverse (R). If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N), the active visual indicators disappear after four seconds.

Note: If stopped in drive (D) or neutral (N) with rear camera delay mode showing the rear camera view, the active visual indicators continue to display.

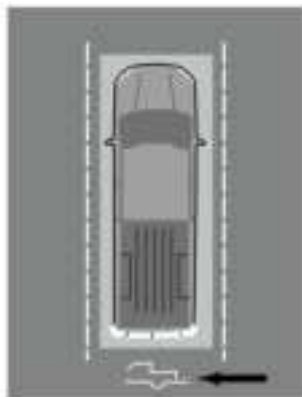
Parking aids are not available in the following situations:

- The system is switched off.
- The system detects a trailer or an open tailgate. Rear parking aid disables, but front parking aid may continue to operate.
- Something is blocking the sensors. Front parking aid disables if any front parking sensor is blocked. Rear parking aid disables if any rear parking sensor is blocked. If all sensors disable, both the front and rear sensors are blocked. Blocked sensors appear with a white indicator.
- A system fault occurs.

Note: If the parking aids are not available, the distance indicators do not display. See **Parking Aids – Troubleshooting** (page 328).

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Parking Aid Indicators when the Tailgate is Open



E46225T

If your vehicle has a power open and close tailgate or a power release tailgate, you may see a tailgate ajar icon in the 360-degree view camera image when you do not fully close the tailgate.

Note: When this icon appears, the rear parking aid disables. Make sure the tailgate is securely closed to enable the rear parking aid.

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Message	Details
Parking Sensors fault	You may be able to resolve by cleaning the sensors and restarting your vehicle. If this does not resolve the condition, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	Inclement weather, ice, mud, or water is blocking the sensor, causing the system to become unavailable. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia are blocking the sensor. Remove add-on devices to resolve.
Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	This message may appear when you drive slowly at a constant distance from a stationary object. It disappears once the distance from the object changes. This may happen when driving slowly close to something like a wall.
Rear Park Aid Deactivated Trailer attached	The system senses an electrical trailer connection during a given ignition cycle.

Rear View Camera

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R).



Your vehicle may also have a camera button on the touchscreen. Press to access the rear view camera.

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA - VEHICLES WITH: ANALOG REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R).

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the tailgate is ajar. If the tailgate is ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.

Rear View Camera



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



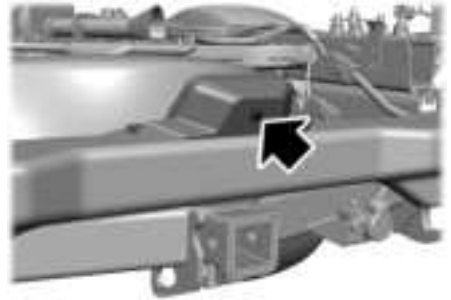
WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA - VEHICLES WITHOUT: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR

The rear view camera is on the tailgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

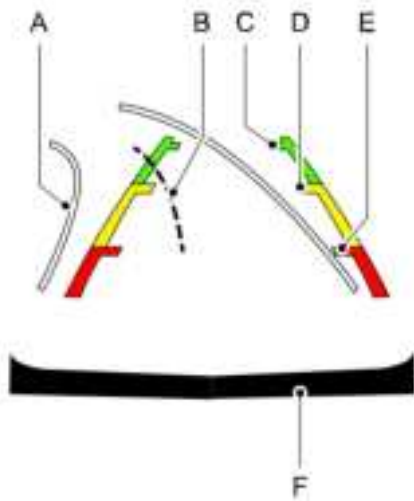
LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



The rear view camera is on the driver assistance technology bar. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

Rear View Camera

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES - VEHICLES WITHOUT DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

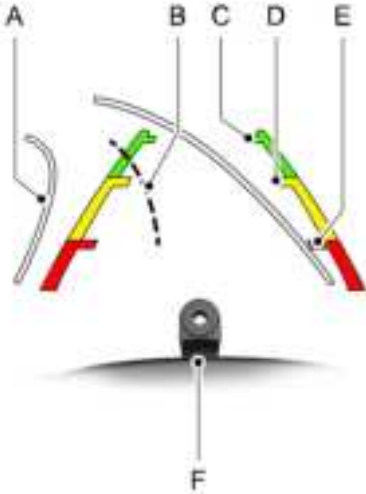
Note: Active guide lines and fixed guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: The centerline is only available if the active or fixed guide lines are on.

Note: Not all camera modes work properly without an auxiliary camera.

Rear View Camera

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Tow hitch.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Note: Active guide lines and fixed guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: The centerline is only available if the active or fixed guide lines are on.

Note: Not all camera modes work properly without an auxiliary camera.

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Rear View Camera

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: DIGITAL REAR VIEW CAMERA

1. Open the driver assistance menu. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Switch Rear View Camera delay on or off.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until the vehicle speed reaches approximately 8 km/h or you shift your vehicle into park (P).

SWITCHING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA VIEW - VEHICLES WITH: DIGITAL REAR VIEW CAMERA



Press to access the different camera views.



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.

Note: Rear split view is not available when your vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h



The hitch view provides an image of the area around the tow hitch. This view is only available to vehicles with trailer wiring.



Trailer AUX camera shows a rear view camera image of what is behind your trailer. This camera view may not be available depending on your vehicle features.

Rear Views at Speed

Note: This view is only available to vehicles with trailer wiring.

Rear normal view, hitch view and trailer aux view are available when your speed is greater than 10 km/h.

Press the camera button on the touchscreen with your vehicle at a stop in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D). Then select the required rear view. The view is visible during takeoff and afterward. You can exit the view any time by pressing the X button, returning to the sync screen.

Automatic Rear Split View

When your vehicle is in reverse (R), the camera view automatically switches to rear split view whenever the cross traffic alert system is active.

To switch automatic rear split view on and off:

1. Open the driver assistance menu. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Switch Automatic Rear Split View on or off.

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The 360 degree camera system provides visibility around your vehicle in parking maneuvers such as:

- Centering in a parking space.
- Obstacles near your vehicle.
- Parallel parking.

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Helps you when parallel parking and centering in a parking space.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



WARNING: Use caution when the tailgate is ajar. If the tailgate is ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: Use caution when the side mirrors are folded. If the side mirrors are folded, the cameras are out of position and the video image could be incorrect.

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR

Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is on the tailgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the front grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

Note: For vehicles with selectable drive modes, the front view camera switches on when you are in mud/ruts, deep snow/sand, rock crawl or baja mode, or in four-wheel drive low.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, some modes may not be available.

Side View Cameras

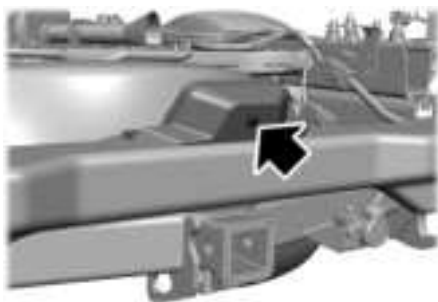
The side view cameras are on the outside mirrors. They provide a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking or when backing up a trailer.

Note: Use caution when the side mirrors are folded. If the side mirrors are folded, the cameras are out of position and the video image could be incorrect.

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR

Rear View Camera



The rear view camera is on the driver assistance technology bar. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

Front View Camera

The front view camera is in the front bumper. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

Note: For vehicles with selectable drive modes, the front view camera switches on when you are in mud/ruts, deep snow/sand, rock crawl or baja mode, or in four-wheel drive low.

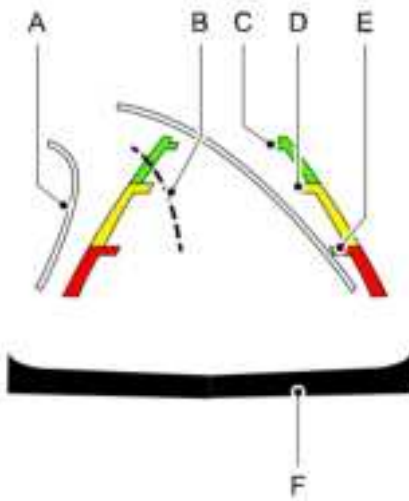
Note: Depending on your vehicle, some modes may not be available.

Side View Cameras

The side view cameras are on the outside mirrors. They provide a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking or when backing up a trailer.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES - VEHICLES WITHOUT: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR

Note: Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



- A Active guidelines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone.
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

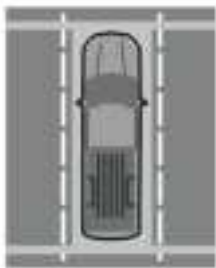
Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

360 Camera Unseen Area

This is the black box region that surrounds the 360 vehicle avatar. This depicts the area around the vehicle that the cameras are unable to see.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR

Note: Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



- A Active guidelines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone.
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone.
- F Tow hitch.

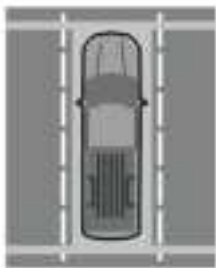
Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

360 Camera Unseen Area

This is the black box region that surrounds the 360 vehicle avatar. This depicts the area around the vehicle that the cameras are unable to see.

360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



Press the camera button at the top of the touchscreen.

Note: When you press the camera button, it defaults to the front 360 camera view. The other front camera views are accessible on the touchscreen.

Note: The rear view camera activates when you shift into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), the front images display when you press the camera button.

Note: Not all cameras are available.

Note: The 360 degree camera system turns off when your vehicle is in motion at low speed, except when in reverse (R).

Switching Additional Views On and Off (If Equipped)

You can switch additional camera views on and off via the touchscreen.

Trailer Side View

Trailer side view activates using the turn signal with a trailer attached. It provides a side view of the vehicle and trailer for better visibility during lane changes and turns.

To switch trailer side view on and off:

1. Open the driver assistance menu. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Switch Trailer Side View on or off.

360 Degree Camera (If Equipped)

Automatic Rear Split View

When your vehicle is in reverse (R), the camera view automatically switches to rear split view whenever the cross traffic alert system is active.

To switch automatic rear split view on and off:

1. Open the driver assistance menu. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Switch Automatic Rear Split View on or off.

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Press to access the different camera views.



Front normal view provides an image of what is directly in front of your vehicle.



Front split view provides an extended view of what is in front of your vehicle.



Normal + 360 degree view contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Rear normal view provides an image of what is directly behind your vehicle.



Rear split view provides an extended view of what is behind your vehicle.



50/50 view provides views of the left and right side of your vehicle. It is available in park (P), neutral (N) and drive (D).



Trailer AUX camera view shows a rear view camera image of what is behind your trailer. This camera is purchased and installed separately.



Trailer reverse guidance shows the sides of your truck and trailer. See **Trailer Reverse Guidance** (page 451).



The hitch view provides an image of the area around the tow hitch.



Zooms in on the image. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 408).



Zooms in on the 360 degree image. Also provides access to corner zoom views and front and rear offset views with tire guidelines depending on what gear and which drive mode you are in.

Rear Views at Speed

Note: The rear normal view, hitch view and 50/50 view are also available when your vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 kph). Intended for trailering and load carrying purposes.

Turn on stationary in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D) and press the camera button on the touchscreen. Then select the required rear view. The view is visible during takeoff and afterward. You can exit the view any time by pressing the X button, returning to the touchscreen.

Note: Pressing the camera soft button while in motion returns you to the last active view.

Adaptive Cruise Control

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor to adjust your vehicle speed to maintain a set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes, railroad crossings, pedestrian crossings, and school zones. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

Adaptive Cruise Control

When Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Hilly Condition and Trailer Tow Usage

You should select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

Note: An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.

Note: When towing with adaptive cruise control, switch on Tow/Haul mode and diesel engine brake.

Note: Tow/Haul mode increases the time gaps and allows more distance for braking.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations



WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h.



WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.



WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Adaptive Cruise Control



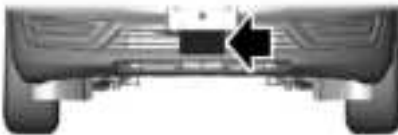
WARNING: The system may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 354).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.



The camera is mounted on the windshield behind the interior mirror.



The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Detection issues can occur:



- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode. When you are below 12 mph (20 km/h), adaptive cruise control does not activate unless you are following another vehicle. The system will activate at 12 mph (20 km/h), but will automatically set to the minimum set speed of 15 mph when in imperial units.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode or switch your vehicle off.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and/or open the driver door after adaptive cruise control stops your vehicle.
- Adaptive cruise control holds your vehicle at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+ Press the toggle button up or down to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop



Press the toggle button up or down while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

The set speed adjusts to 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Note: The system activates from a complete stop only when it detects a lead vehicle in close proximity.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Manually Changing the Set Speed



Press and release the toggle button up to increase the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button up to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the preferred speed.



Press and release the toggle button down to decrease the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button down to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the set speed is equal to the preferred speed.

You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button up or down to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.*

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Note: *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

Adaptive Cruise Control

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop (If Equipped)

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than a few seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than a few seconds, an indicator and message displays.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.



Message	Details
Stopped	Cruise control does not resume automatically when this display is active.
Press button to resume	If the lead vehicle begins to move, you are prompted to press the resume button.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
	Press and release the button or use the accelerator pedal to resume following the lead vehicle.
Auto-Resume	Displays when on a limited access highway after following a vehicle to a complete stop. In this situation, the vehicle resumes following the lead vehicle without a button press or pressing the accelerator pedal. The system can remain in auto-resume state for approximately 30 seconds, after which it no longer automatically resumes.

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the indicator remains blue, the set speed is dimmed and the lead vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Cruise Control.

Adaptive Cruise Control

3. Press Normal Cruise Control.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic emergency braking remains active to maintain set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on highway roads.

Note: *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering, operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

Note: *The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.*

Note: *If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.*

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 341).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 350).
- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go enabled and set.
- The steering system detects your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.
- A trailer is not detected.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.

Note: If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 349).

Lane Centering may not be able to center your vehicle in the lane in any of the following conditions:

- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.
- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When a trailer is detected, the system disables lane centering. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 349).

Note: The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



Press the button.

The indicator appears in the instrument cluster. When the lane centering system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Note: The lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 349).

Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Cruise Control.
3. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
4. Switch Lane Centering on or off.

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Adaptive Cruise Control

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 351).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *If a keep hands on the wheel message appears on the instrument cluster display, the system may not detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel. Slight steering wheel input may be required to cancel the message.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of the vehicle.

If this alert is ignored, the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel.

If your vehicle slows down or stops and you resume control, a message appears to prompt you to press the accelerator pedal to allow the system to resume.

Note: *If the system detects significant inactivity, a 'Lane Centering Unavailable' message displays in the instrument cluster and lane centering is disabled until the next time you start your vehicle.*

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering cancels:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



An indicator illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

- Gray/white indicates the system is on but in standby mode.
- Blue indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.
- Gray/white with an audible tone, indicates the system automatically canceled.

Adaptive Cruise Control

LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, some messages can appear different or not at all.

Message	Details
Keep hands on steering wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane Centering not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

HOW DOES INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Intelligent adaptive cruise control combines speed sign recognition and navigation map data with adaptive cruise control to adjust the cruise set speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system detects new speed signs, the set speed updates.

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. The intelligent adaptive cruise control system and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Speed Sign Recognition** (page 388).

Note: The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.

Adaptive Cruise Control

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

Traffic sign recognition must be enabled for intelligent adaptive cruise control to be active.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 630).

2. Press Cruise Control.
3. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
4. Press Speed Sign Recognition.

ADJUSTING THE SET SPEED TOLERANCE (If Equipped)

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Cruise Control.
3. Press Adaptive Cruise Control.
4. Press Speed Sign Recognition.
5. Press Tolerance.
6. Use the slider bar to adjust the allowable tolerance for the system.

Note: *You cannot set the tolerance more than 10 km/h above or below the recognized speed.*

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ALERTS

If you increase the set speed beyond the speed limit or speed limit plus a positive tolerance (if equipped) value, the set speed indicator flashes.

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

Adaptive Cruise Control

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



A blue circle appears around the detected speed limit in the instrument cluster.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Note: Certain messages may be abbreviated or shortened depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control Predictive Speed Assist not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available. Check that the front windshield camera and adaptive cruise control radar sensor are not blocked. Navigation system information may not be available. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Note: The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	A malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging.
Front Sensor Not Aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this issue. Due to the nature of sensor technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Normal Cruise Active Adaptive Braking Off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the traffic sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

Intelligent speed limiter uses data from the traffic sign recognition system to set a maximum speed. For example, if the traffic sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: The system does not limit your vehicle's speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF



Press to switch the system on.

The system activates with the detected speed limit or, if no speed limit is detected the current speed of your vehicle is set. Press again to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT



Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument

cluster.

Note: The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

Note: If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.



Intelligent Speed Limiter

ADJUSTING THE SPEED LIMIT TOLERANCE

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance.
2. Press Speed Limit Assist.
3. Switch Intelligent Speed Limiter on.
4. Use the slider bar to adjust the allowable tolerance for the system.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The symbol in instrument cluster display appears grey.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to resume the limiter. The system sets the speed limit to the detected maximum speed limit when it resumes. The symbol in the instrument cluster display appears green.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily turn the system off. The system reactivates once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster when the system is in standby or active.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning appears in the instrument cluster and a tone sounds if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle's speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than your vehicle's current speed. A tone sounds when your vehicle speed remains above the speed limit for 30 seconds.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

If the traffic sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, 24–182 km/h, a single warning tone sounds and the system switches to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Speed Limit Assist. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Switch Intelligent Speed Limiter off.

Note: If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system alerts you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the lane of travel.

When the camera detects a drift out of the lane of travel, the lane keeping system alerts the driver by vibrating the steering wheel, or aids the driver by providing a small steering input to move the vehicle back into the lane of travel.

The driver can select one of three modes:

- Alert (if equipped)
- Aid
- Alert + Aid

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS - EXCLUDING: SUPER DUTY

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 64 km/h.

The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.

Lane Keeping System

Note: When you select Aid or Alert and Aid mode and the system detects no steering activity for a short period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signal on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 64 km/h.
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.
- Entering or exiting a tight curve when driving at high speeds.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS - SUPER DUTY

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 60 km/h.

The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.

Note: When you select Aid or Alert and Aid mode and the system detects no steering activity for a short period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signal on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h.
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.
- Entering or exiting a tight curve when driving at high speeds.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the instrument cluster display to show the status.

Note: For some markets, the system defaults to ON with every key cycle.

Note: To change the steering wheel vibration intensity, use the lane keeping system menu in the touchscreen.



To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button twice. For some markets, an icon appears when you manually disable the system, or if there is a fault. Other markets will have no visible icon in this location when you manually disable the system.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Lane-Keeping System.
3. Press Lane-Keeping Mode.
4. Select a mode.

Note: The system stores the on or off setting until manually changed. For some markets, the system defaults to the ON setting at every Ignition cycle.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Lane Keeping System.
3. Press Lane Keeping Intensity.
4. Select a setting.

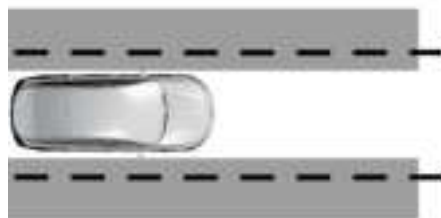
Note: This setting is not available in all modes.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

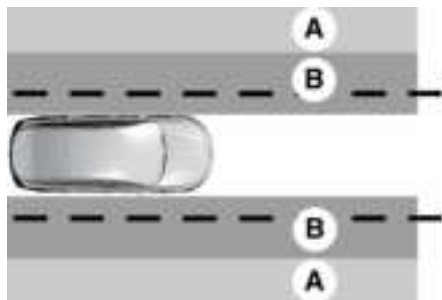
ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far from the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK



- A Alert.
- B Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicles enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



If you switch the lane keeping system on, a graphic with lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.

When you switch the system off, the lane marking graphics do not display.

Note: The overhead vehicle graphic may still display if adaptive cruise control is enabled.

While the lane keeping system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray	White	Yellow	Red
Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It helps you identify adjacent vehicles in your blind spot during a lane change.

The system provides a blind spot alert and steering assistance to help you steer away from detected adjacent vehicles.

Lane Keeping System

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select Aid or Alert +Aid from the lane keeping system.

During lane changes, the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching your blind spot and provides a warning plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

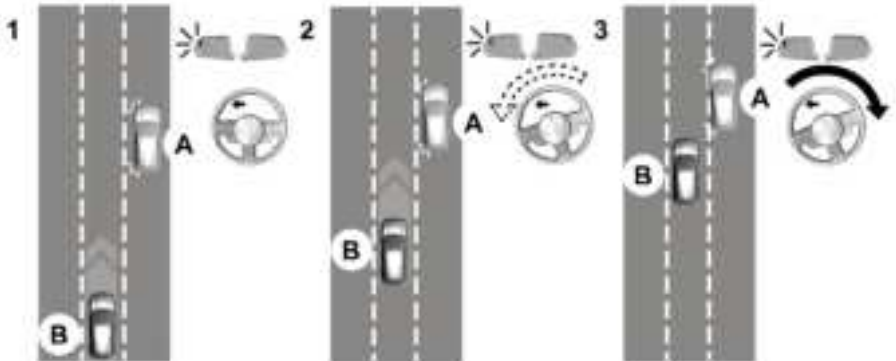
Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- No lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- Attaching bike or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a speed higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather obstructing the sensors.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS



Lane Keeping System

Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster display indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 370).

Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if something is blocking the blind spot information system sensors.
Blind Spot Assist System fault	The system detects a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Lost communication with the trailer module. The system suppresses blind spot assist until you have the failure fixed.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. The system suppresses blind spot assist until you have the failure fixed.
Front Camera Fault Service Required	Front camera fault. Blind spot assist disables until you have the failure fixed.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system.

It may help you identify adjacent vehicles during a lane change.

Blind spot assist provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance to help you become aware of and steer away from vehicles in your blind spot during lane changes.

Lane Keeping System

When attaching a trailer, ensure you have properly set up the trailer coverage settings. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 372).

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select Aid or Alert +Aid from the lane keeping system.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If you connect a supported trailer, the system reduces the function to only detect vehicles on both sides of the vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 372).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- No lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- You have not configured the attached trailer correctly in the trailer tow menus or you attached an unsupported trailer. The system only supports certain trailer shapes and dimensions.

Note: *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if any of the above limitations are present.*

Blind spot assist may have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS

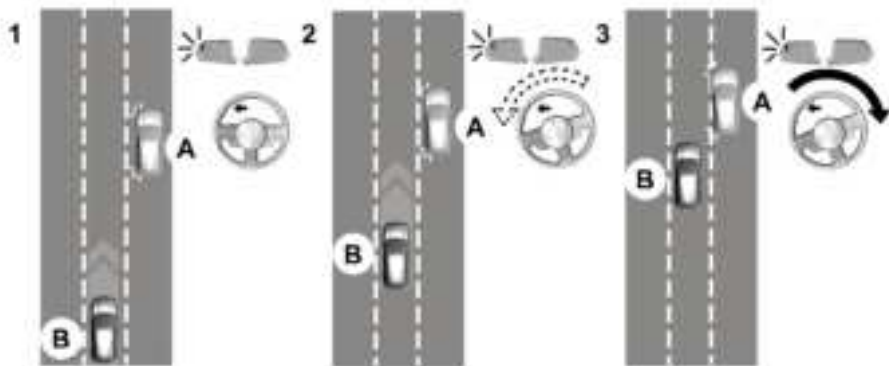


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster display indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 370).

Blind Spot Assist Information Messages

Message	Action
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle with the blind spot information system switched off or you have not configured the trailer.
Blind Spot Assist Not Available Side Sensor Blocked	Displays if your blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lane Keeping System

Message	Action
Trailer Brake Module Fault	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	Lost communication with the trailer module. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.
Front Camera Fault Service Required	Front camera fault. Blind spot assist is disabled until the failure is fixed.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Lane-Keeping System fault Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera fault Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - EXCLUDING: SUPER DUTY

Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?

- Your vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
- You are driving your vehicle too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
- Driving at high speeds in curves.
- The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
- Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
- Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
- Sudden offset in lane markings.
- ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
- There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
- You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
- There is standing water on the road.
- Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
- Lane width is too narrow or too wide.

- The windshield camera was not properly calibrated after a windshield replacement.
- Driving on roads with tight curves or uneven surfaces.

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?

- High cross winds are present.
- There is a large road crown.
- Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
- Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
- The tires or suspension has been modified from what your vehicle was designed to use.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - SUPER DUTY

Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?

- Your vehicle speed is less than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
- You are driving your vehicle too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
- Driving at high speeds in curves.
- The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.

Lane Keeping System

- Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
- Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
- Sudden offset in lane markings.
- ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
- There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
- You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
- There is standing water on the road.
- Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
- Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
- You have not calibrated the camera after a windshield replacement.
- Driving on roads with tight curves or uneven surfaces.

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?

- High cross winds are present.
- There is a large road crown.
- Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.
- Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.
- You changed the tires or modified the suspension.

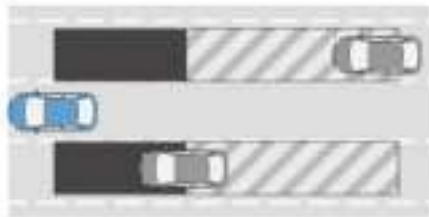
Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

Blind spot information system uses sensors on both sides of your vehicle, detecting rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Note: *Blind spot information system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It does not detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructure.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Blind spot information system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone while overtaking.

Note: *For vehicles without the trailer coverage feature, we recommend that you switch the blind spot information system off when you attach a trailer.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h.

Note: *The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).*

Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Blind Spot Information System. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 632).
2. Switch Blind Spot Information System on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice. A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when the blind spot information system is switched off in the settings menu.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



The sensors are inside the brake lamp on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

If the sensors become blocked, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. See **Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages** (page 374). The alert indicators illuminate but the system does not alert you.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



The sensors are found on either side of the rear of the chassis.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

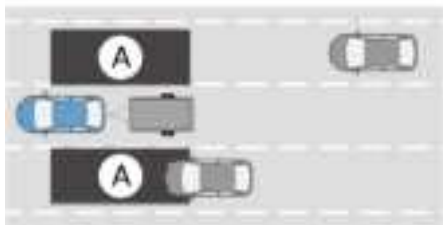
Note: *Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.*

Note: *Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.*

If the sensors become blocked, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. See **Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages** (page 374). The alert indicators illuminate but the system does not alert you.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



A. Trailer coverage detection zone.

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h.

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Trailer coverage only supports conventional trailers. The system turns off if you select a fifth wheel or gooseneck trailer type.

Make sure the trailer width is less than or equal to 2.4 m and the length is less than 10.1 m. If you input values higher, the system turns off.

Some trailers could cause a slight change in system performance:

- Large box trailers could cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructures or near parked cars. A false alert could also occur while making a 90-degree turn.
- Trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m at the front and have a total length greater than 6 m could cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speeds.

Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m at the front could cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clamshell or V-nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m at the front could cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE ON AND OFF

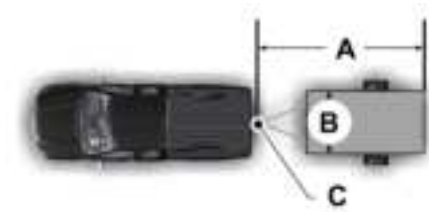
1. From the settings menu, press Driver Assistance. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Switch Blind Spot Information System on or off.

Note: Some vehicles may not have the ability to switch the feature on or off.

When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system turns off and a message appears when a trailer is connected, but not set up or selected.

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch ball.

You can set up a trailer to work with the blind spot information system through the touchscreen by using the add trailer menu.

1. Input the trailer name, then save to continue trailer setup.

Note: The system only supports conventional trailers.

2. Trailer length measurement. The trailer length is the distance between the trailer hitch ball and the rear of the trailer. The maximum length the system can support is 10.1 m.
3. Trailer width measurement. Measure the width at the front of the trailer. It is not measured at the widest point of the trailer. The maximum width at the front of the trailer the system can support is 2.4 m.

Note: If the trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with electrical lighting, enter a length of around 1 m. Cross traffic alert remains on for trailers with a length of 1 m or less.

Note: The system requires proper measurement and measure entry to properly function.

SELECTING A TRAILER

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the trailer set up menu appears in the touchscreen. This menu allows you to set up a new trailer or choose from a previously set up trailer. A warning message appears and the system turns off if you do not choose or add a new trailer.

Note: The warning message may not appear until your vehicle reaches 35 km/h.

Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the blind spot information system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side from which the vehicle is approaching. If you switch the turn signal on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.



When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice. A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when the blind spot information system is switched off in the settings menu.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



If the system detects a fault, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Blind Spot System fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Blind Spot not available Sensor blocked See manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.
Blind Spot Alert deactivated Trailer attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to your vehicle under any of the following conditions: - Your vehicle does not have blind spot information system with trailer coverage. - You switch the blind spot information system off through the touchscreen. - Your trailer exceeds the limits for the system. See Setting a Trailer Length (page 373). Only appears if your vehicle has blind spot information system with trailer coverage.

Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

Note: *When connecting a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and turn the system OFF. If the system does not automatically turn OFF, manually switch the blind spot information system OFF. If your vehicle has the blind spot information system with trailer coverage, the system prompts you to set up a trailer that allows the feature to function, if your trailer meets the requirements of the system.*

Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

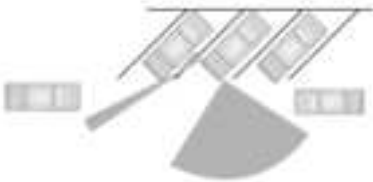
The system alerts you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross traffic alert detects vehicles that approach at a speed between 6–60 km/h. Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

Note: *Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 6 km/h or greater than 60 km/h.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h.
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

Cross Traffic Alert Limitations with a Trailer Attached

The system remains on when you attach a trailer to vehicles with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a trailer.
- The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m.
- You set the trailer length to 1 m in the instrument cluster display.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by the manufacturer, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cross Traffic Alert. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 632).
2. Switch Cross Traffic Alert on or off.

When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

Switching Cross Traffic Braking On and Off

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Cross Traffic Braking. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 632).
2. Switch Cross Traffic Braking on and off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: If your vehicle does not have a cross traffic braking menu item, this functionality is included in reverse brake assist. See **Reverse Brake Assist** (page 300).

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



The sensors are inside the brake lamp on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

If something is blocking the sensors, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: DRIVER ASSISTANCE TECHNOLOGY (DAT) BAR



The sensors are found on either side of the rear of the chassis.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

If something is blocking the sensors, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display when you shift into reverse (R).

Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS

When the cross traffic alert detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a warning lamp illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the touchscreen to show from which side the vehicle is approaching.

If the system malfunctions, a warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: In some conditions, the system could alert you, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – WARNING LAMPS



If the system malfunctions, it illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Cross-Traffic Alert Press OK to close	Displays instead of indicator arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic. Only available in vehicles with 8 inch displays.
Cross-Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Indicates blocked cross traffic alert system sensors. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross-Traffic System fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross-Traffic Alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.

Note: When connecting a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and turn the system off. If the system does not automatically turn off, manually switch the cross traffic alert system off. See **Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off** (page 377).

Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. The system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision if your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian or cyclist within your driving path.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching potential hazards the system provides the following levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake support.
3. Automatic emergency braking.



Alert: When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

Brake Support: The system helps reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system may apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

Automatic Emergency Braking:

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent.

Note: If the pre-collision assist alerts are too frequent or disturbing, you can reduce the alert sensitivity. Setting the low sensitivity results in fewer and later warnings of a potential forward collision. The manufacturer recommends using the high sensitivity setting where possible.

Note: Automatic emergency braking performance is not affected by the sensitivity setting.

Each system has various levels of detection capabilities. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 381).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system only provides limited braking. Your vehicle may not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary.



WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

Pre-Collision Assist



WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.



WARNING: Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.



WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.



WARNING: Take additional care if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. These conditions could result in reduced performance of this system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Automatic emergency braking may activate when a collision is imminent. The system cannot prevent all crashes, but may reduce crash severity. Do not test automatic emergency braking or forward collision warning. Testing this system must only be conducted by authorized test facilities using specialized equipment. Do not use automatic emergency braking to replace normal braking for any reason. Relying on automatic emergency braking to stop your vehicle may cause an unexpected accident which could lead to serious injury or death.*

Note: *The system does not detect animals.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and sensors. Any obstructions or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning. See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 383).

The system is active at 5 km/h and above.

Note: *The pre-collision assist system automatically disables when you manually disable Advance Trac™, 4X4 low, and Rock Crawl (if available).*

Note: *Brake support and automatic emergency braking are active up to the maximum speed of the vehicle.*

Pre-Collision Assist

Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h.

Pedestrian detection operates optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

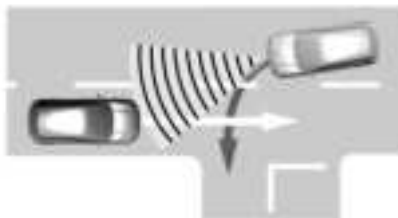
Cyclist Detection Limitations

Cyclist detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h.

Cyclist detection functions optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where cyclists are fast-moving, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

Intersection Assist

The pre-collision assist system may operate in a scenario where you are turning across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or with crossing pedestrians. Detection of vehicles driving in an oncoming direction is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 30 km/h. Detection of crossing pedestrians at an intersection is active if your vehicle is driving at speeds up to 30 km/h.



SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

You cannot switch the system off.

Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

You can adjust additional feature settings by using the touchscreen controls in the pre-collision assist menu.

Note: *Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist automatically turn on every time you start your vehicle.*

Note: *If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist switches off.*

Pre-Collision Assist

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor (if equipped).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the instrument cluster, something is obstructing the radar signals or camera images. The radar sensor is located behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. If a sensor or camera is blocked, the system may not function, or performance may reduce. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages** (page 386).

Note: Proper system operation requires the camera have a clear view of the road. If there is damage to the area around the camera's field of view, replace the windshield with one approved by us.

Note: If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Note: If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message could display in the instrument cluster indicating the sensor is temporarily unavailable. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor recalibrates successfully.

DISTANCE INDICATION

WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.

Note: The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h.	Normal.	Blue.	Greater than 25 m.	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m.	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m.	Less than 0.6 seconds.

Pre-Collision Assist

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

1. From the Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 632).
2. Press Distance Indication.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

The indicator displays the time gap between your vehicle and vehicles traveling in the same direction ahead of you.



DISTANCE ALERT

WHAT IS DISTANCE ALERT

The system alerts you with a warning lamp if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

Note: The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF DISTANCE ALERT

1. From the Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 632).
2. Press Alert Sensitivity.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help to reduce impact damage or completely avoid the crash.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. From the Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 632).
2. Press Auto Emergency Braking.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: A telltale remains illuminated in the instrument cluster when automatic emergency braking is switched off using the settings menu.

Note: Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

Pre-Collision Assist

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 380).

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. From Driver Assistance menu, press Pre-Collision Assist. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 632).
2. Press Evasive Steering Assist.
3. Switch the feature on or off.

Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you start your vehicle.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



A telltale illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

Note: If the telltale illuminates without a corresponding information message, make sure the setting for automatic emergency braking is switched on. See **Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off** (page 384). No action is needed unless an information message appears. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 380).

Pre-Collision Assist

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-Collision Assist not available Sensor blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-Collision Assist not available	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Camera Troubleshooting

What should I do if the windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed?

- Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

What if the windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display?

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)

What should I do if the surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed?

- Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

What if the surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display?

- Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

Can weather or road conditions interfere with the radar signals?

- Yes, weather such as heavy rain, spray or fog as well as water, snow or ice on the surface of the road can interfere with the radar signals. In these situations, the system temporarily disables this feature. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

What if the radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact?

- Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Speed Sign Recognition

WHAT IS SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION

Speed sign recognition detects speed limit signs to inform you of the current speed limit. Detected speed signs appear in the instrument cluster display.

HOW DOES SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Speed sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect speed signs.

If your vehicle has speed sign recognition with navigation, stored speed sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.
- Stop Signs (If applicable).
- Yield Signs (If applicable).

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: Do not perform windshield repairs around the rear-view mirror. Failure to follow this instruction could limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.



WARNING: Not all traffic signs can be recognized by the system and displayed correctly.

Note: Use original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

Speed sign recognition may not detect the correct speed due to:

- Construction zones.
- Outdated map data.

Speed Sign Recognition

- Incorrect recognition of speed limits by the sensor of signs on parallel roads or exit ramps.
- Missed recognition of faded, dirty, or distorted signs.

Note: The system may not detect all speed signs and may incorrectly read signs.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS



When the system detects a speed limit sign, it appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: Sign indicator image may vary based on your vehicle's display type.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

1. From the settings menu, press driver assistance.
2. Press Speed Limit Assist.

You can adjust the following settings:

- Switch the speed warning on or off.
- Set the speed limit tolerance (if equipped).



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – TROUBLESHOOTING

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Traffic Sign Reduced Performance See Manual	The traffic sign data provided by the Map Data is unavailable due to weak or no signal. Wait for a short period of time for the signal to improve. If the message continues to appear, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Speed Sign Recognition

SPEED SIGN RECOGNITION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the speed limit change without any sign on the road?

- The speed limit changes due to the speed limit data stored in the map data.

Why does speed sign recognition show a wrong speed limit?

- The system shows a wrong speed limit due to incorrect and outdated map data or due to incorrect recognition of the speed limits by the camera.

Driver Alert (If Equipped)

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

Driver alert alerts you if it determines that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

Driver alert uses a front camera sensor located behind the interior mirror to calculate your alertness level based on your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.



DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: The system may not function properly if your vehicle is fitted with a replacement windshield not approved by us.

Note: If something is blocking the camera or damaged the windshield, Driver Alert may not function.

DRIVER ALERT LIMITATIONS

Driver alert may not function correctly if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- Your vehicle's speed is less than the required activation speed.

Driver Alert (If Equipped)

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF - EXCLUDING: SUPER DUTY

1. From the driver assistance menu, press Driver Alert. See **Driver Assistance Menu** (page 632).
2. Switch the feature on or off.

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver Alert Rest now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Rest suggested	Take a rest soon.

Load Carrying

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and Gross Axle Weight Rating limitations.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Load carrying can also impact other systems present in your vehicle. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 349). See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 341).

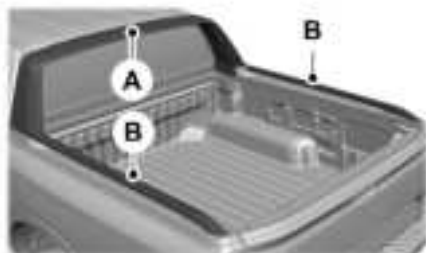
Load Carrying

Note: If your vehicle comes with bed rails, we recommend that you evenly distribute the load and do not exceed the total maximum load and maximum load capacity of 40 kg.

LOAD RETAINING FIXTURES AND CAPACITIES

Note: Overloading the load retaining fixture could damage it.

Note: Make sure you properly balance and secure the cargo load. Failure to follow this can cause cargo instability and damage to the fixtures.



- A Sports hoop.
- B Box rails.

Use the box rails to attach crossbars or secondary accessories. The maximum load on the box rails, including the crossbars or secondary accessories, is 40 kg.

Note: Do not sit or stand on the sports hoop.

Box Rail Tie-Down Points (Double Cab)

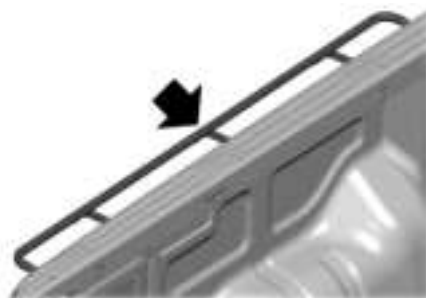


Use the lashing points toward the front and rear of the box rails.

Note: Do not lash at the center point of the box rails.

Note: Maximum load per lashing point is 150 kg.

External Tie Down Rails (If Equipped)



Use the external tie down rails to secure loads. The maximum load is 150 kg per rail.

Load Carrying

Load Rest (If Equipped)



Note: Secure luggage or cargo placed on the load rest with the load rest stoppers.

Load Box



Note: The loadbox upper plastic capping is not designed to bear significant load. Do not clamp directly to this surface. Clamp only to the mounting points.

Power Roller Shutter Rails (If Equipped)



Use the roller shutter rails to attach crossbars or secondary accessories. The maximum load on the roller shutter rails, including the crossbars or secondary accessories, is 35 kg.

ROOF RACK (IF EQUIPPED)

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Load Carrying



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE ROOF RACK

Removing the Roof Rack



1. Remove the roof rack bolt covers by inserting two narrow trim removal tools simultaneously.



2. Using a Torx T40 tool, remove the front roof rack fasteners. Repeat the process for removing the rear roof rack fasteners.

Note: If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

Note: Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.

Place loads on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails or alternative load carrying Ford rooftop accessory. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Load Carrying



3. Loosen the roof rack by sliding the inner support brackets toward the center of the rail.



6. Remove the supports and gaskets from the vehicle to expose the accessory mounting plate.
7. Place the trim cover over the mounting plate.

Note: The mounting plate trim cover needs to be purchased separately. The trim cover is installed when you remove the roof rack.

Installing the Roof Rack



4. Remove the roof rack from the vehicle.

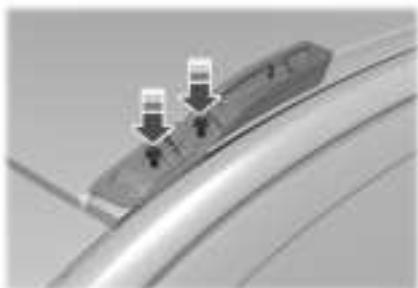


5. Remove the bolts securing the front and rear support assembly.



1. Using a trim removal tool, disengage the clip and remove the trim.
2. Store the trim cover components.

Load Carrying



3. Place the roof rack support assembly over the mounting holes.
4. Hand start the front roof rack fasteners.
5. Using a M6 wrench, tighten the front roof rack fasteners. Torque bolts to 10.5 Nm.
6. Repeat the steps for the rear roof rack support assembly.

12. Install the supplied M8 Torx bolts using a Torx T40 tool. Torque the bolts to 16 Nm.



13. Install the roof rack fastener cover, ensuring it clicks into place.
14. Repeat steps 9 through 11 for the rear roof rack fastener.



7. Insert sliding brackets into the front end of the roof rack.
8. Hold the bracket in place by placing your finger into the roof rack hole and align the roof rack to the support assembly.
9. Secure by sliding the bracket forward into the retention slot.
10. Repeat the steps for the rear of the roof rack.
11. Align the center of the bracket hole to the bolt hole in the support.

ADJUSTING A ROOF RACK CROSSBAR



WARNING: Do not attach anything to the crossbars when they are in the folded position.



WARNING: When folding the crossbars down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

Load Carrying

Using a Roof Rack integrated Crossbar (If Equipped)



Pull the clip to unlock and lift the crossbar.

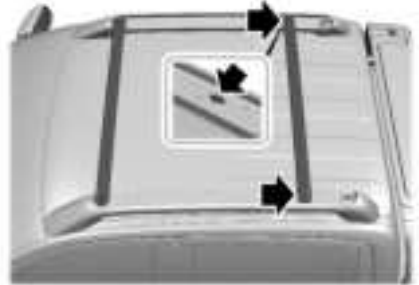


Move the crossbar to the new position.



Fit the crossbars at the given location.

Note: Secure the plug at the given secondary mounting point when the mounting point is not in use.



Note: The crossbar can be moved forward to use with shorter fitments. Secure the plug in the glove compartment when using the crossbar in the secondary mounting point.

1. Using the M8 wrench in the glove compartment, remove the fastener at the fixed end of the crossbar.
2. To install, place the crossbar over the secondary mounting hole.
3. Hand start the crossbar fastener.
4. Using the M8 wrench, tighten the fastener to 10 Nm.

Note: Install the crossbar at the original rear mounting point to be folded back into the side rail.

Note: After using the crossbar, reinstall the plug in the secondary mounting point to prevent debris from entering the hole, making it difficult to secure the crossbar for later use.

Load Carrying

Using a Sports Hoop integrated Crossbar (If Equipped)



The sports hoop can slide freely across the load box while pressing the integrated lever.

Note: A red flag is visible on either side when the sports hoop is in the unlocked position.



1. Pull the lever to unlock and lift the pop-up crossbar.
2. Pull the lever again to unlock and push the crossbar to its original position.

Note: Use one lever at a time only on either side, to deploy the pop up crossbar on the sports hoop.

Note: The maximum load on the crossbars is 80 kg.

Note: Make sure the crossbars are in the folded position before entering a car wash.

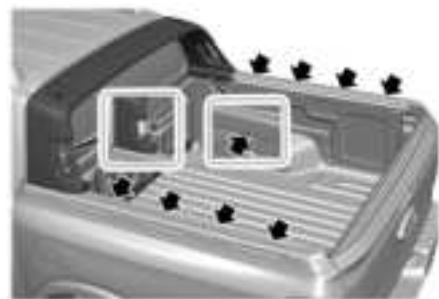
Note: When loading longer and wider loads on top of the roof racks and adjustable sports hoop crossbar, allow adequate clearance to the roof antenna.

Note: Stow away crossbars when not in use.

Note: Do not drive on rough surfaces when carrying long rigid loads across roof racks and flexible rack system.

Note: When carrying load across crossbars, it is recommended that a protective material is placed in between to avoid scratching/damage of surface.

Note: If pop-up crossbar squeaks during usage, clean the spring mechanism with a degreaser and add lithium grease. For additional information and assistance, contact an authorized dealer.



The sports hoop can lock when the integrated lever is released at four different positions.

Note: Make sure the red flag is not visible on both sides. This means the sports hoop is locked on both sides.

Load Carrying

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES

Maximum Recommended Load Amounts

Description	Maximum Recommended Load	
	Ranger Raptor	Ranger Series
When in motion	80 kg	85 kg
When stationary	350 kg	350 kg

Description	Roof Rack system weights
Double Cab Wildtrak	5 kg
RAP Cab Wildtrak	3.2 kg

Note: The maximum recommended load is based on the load being evenly distributed on the crossbars.

Note: Include the weight of the roof rack with any fitted accessories when calculating maximum payload. Read and follow manufacturer instructions when fitting rooftop accessories.

Pickup Bed

PICKUP BED PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not allow people or animals in truck beds that have modifications, such as bed covers or slide-in campers, when the engine is running. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Do not use the load retaining fixtures for towing. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Check the load retaining fixtures for damage before using them. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINTS

PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

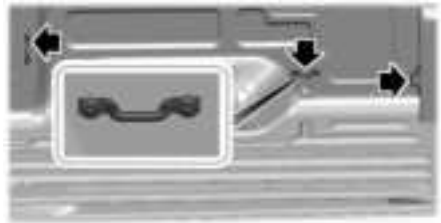


WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached

LOCATING THE PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINTS

Pickup Bed Anchor Points

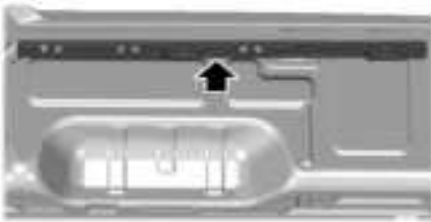
The pickup bed anchor points are in each corner of the pickup bed.



Adjustable Bed Rail (If Equipped)

Sliding cleat tie-downs are on each side of the pickup bed.

Pickup Bed



Adjusting the Sliding Cleat Tie-downs



1. Pull the release button on the cleat to release the cleat.
2. Move the cleat to desired position.
3. Lock the cleat to the locking positions on the sliding rails. Locking positions can be identified as holes on the rails.

Note: The release button returns to the lock position only when the cleat is locked correctly.

Note: Do not load the cleat unless it is properly locked onto the rail.

PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES



A	B
Maximum force between directly opposed anchor points 125 kg.	Maximum force between diagonally opposed anchor points 272 kg.

Note: You could damage the pickup bed walls if you overload the tie-downs.

Note: Make sure that you properly balance and secure the cargo load. Failure to do this can cause cargo instability and damage to the box.

Note: Do not secure cargo with tie downs connected from the tie-down brackets to the pickup box tie-downs. This could cause the tailgate to detach.

Adjustable Sliding Cleat Tie-Down Load Capacities

The sliding cleats can be used to secure loads. The maximum recommended load is 250 kg per cleat.

Pickup Bed

PICKUP BED SLOTS

LOCATING THE PICKUP BED SLOTS

Slots in the pickup bed provide location points for timber to support various loads.

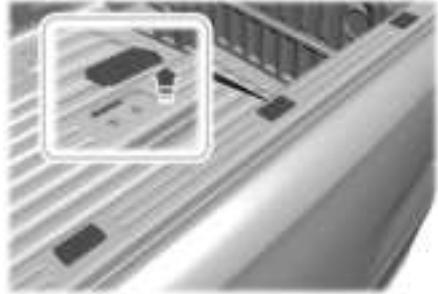


PICKUP BED ACCESS CAPS

WHAT ARE PICKUP BED ACCESS CAPS

The pickup bed has removable access caps that expose structural attachment points used to fit aftermarket accessories.

LOCATING THE PICKUP BED ACCESS CAPS



Access caps are located on the sides of the pickup bed. Remove the caps to access the attachment points.

Note: Replace the access caps when the structural attachment points are no longer being used.

ROLLER SHUTTER (IF EQUIPPED)

ROLLER SHUTTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not allow people or animals in truck beds that have modifications, such as bed covers or slide-in campers, when the engine is running. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

Note: To service the roller shutter, see an authorized dealer. See **Cleaning the Roller Shutter** (page 561).

Pickup Bed

Note: Secure the loads carried in the pickup bed.

Note: Roller shutter may not open or close when the seals are frozen.

Note: Make sure the roller shutter is free of any obstruction before you open or close it. For example, snow or ice.

Note: Water and dust could enter the pickup bed with the roller shutter closed.

Note: To prevent damage due to overheating, the system could become inoperable for a short period if you repeatedly operate the roller shutter in a short period of time.

ROLLER SHUTTER LIMITATIONS

The roller shutter does not function when:

- The vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h.
- When the transmission selector is not in the park (P) position, on automatic transmission vehicles.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE ROLLER SHUTTER

With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within a few seconds.

Note: If the roller shutter operates only using the pickup bed button and not the remote control, reset the roller shutter bounce-back. This can occur after a battery disconnect or a software update.

From the Pickup Bed

Unlock your vehicle, then press the button mounted in the pickup bed to open or close the roller shutter.

The power roller shutter switch is on the power panel or the side of bed liner.

On the Power Panel



On the Side of Bed Liner



One-Touch Open and Close

Press and release the power roller shutter button. Press again to stop the roller shutter.

Resetting One-Touch

See **Resetting Roller Shutter Bounce-Back** (page 407).

Pickup Bed

From Inside Your Vehicle



Press the button on the instrument panel.

STOPPING THE ROLLER SHUTTER

- Press the power roller shutter button on the remote control twice within a few seconds. Wait a few seconds to perform another remote control operation to avoid functionality delays.
- Press the power roller shutter button on the instrument panel.
- Use the power roller shutter button in the pickup bed.

Note: If you stop the roller shutter using any button, the direction of travel reverses on the next activation of the power roller shutter.

WHAT IS ROLLER SHUTTER BOUNCE-BACK

The roller shutter stops automatically while opening and closing if it comes into contact with an object. It reverses some distance, allowing you to remove the trapped object.

Note: If the roller shutter stops through bounce back, it continues in the same direction of travel when you press any of the power roller shutter buttons.

OVERRIDING ROLLER SHUTTER BOUNCE-BACK

If the roller shutter is blocked with debris or seizes at low temperatures due to ice, the bounce back function prevents the roller shutter from closing or opening. You may temporarily override the bounce back function by following the below steps.

1. Press and hold the button on the instrument panel or in the pickup bed, for a minimum of three seconds.
2. To reverse the direction of travel of the roller shutter, release then press and hold the button continuously for a minimum of three seconds.
3. While holding the button, move the roller shutter cover to the desired position.
4. After releasing the button, the system returns the roller shutter to normal mode and the bounce back function reactivates.

Clean the roller shutter if it does not move after completing the steps. When the roller shutter is heavily iced, use a scraper to break the ice between the curtain and the seals to free the roller shutter.

Consult your authorized dealer for further assistance.

RESETTING ROLLER SHUTTER BOUNCE-BACK

If the battery becomes discharged or disconnected from the vehicle or after a software update, reset the roller shutter memory as follows.

1. With the roller shutter fully open, press and hold the button until the roller shutter reaches half open.
2. Press and hold the button until the roller shutter reaches fully open. Continue pressing the button for at least four seconds.
3. Release the button.
4. Within ten seconds of releasing the button, press and hold the button until the roller shutter fully closes. Continue to press the button for at least four seconds.
5. If the roller shutter does not open when you press the button, repeat the procedure.

Note: *The bounce back function deactivates until you reset the memory.*

Note: *You can only perform the reset procedure using the button in the pickup bed or on the instrument panel.*

Note: *The roller shutter speed reduces to prevent risk of damage or injury until the memory resets.*

Connecting a Trailer

CONNECTING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.

See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.

Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

Account for the trailer coupler weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Do not exceed the load limits.

Note: Your vehicle is designed to be used without a weight distributing hitch.

TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



WARNING: Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: We recommend only using a tow hitch approved by Ford. Using another type can damage the tow bar and chassis frame and such damage is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

ATTACHING THE TOW BALL ARM - EXCLUDING: SUPER DUTY

Type 1



1. Insert the tow ball arm into the tow bar.
2. Insert the pin.
3. Secure the pin with the clip.

Type 2



1. Insert the tow ball arm into the tow bar.

Connecting a Trailer

2. Insert the pin.
3. Secure the pin with the clip.
4. Tighten the bolts to 161 lb.ft (218 Nm).

Note: Take special care when fitting the tow ball arm as the safety of the vehicle and trailer depends on this.

Note: Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

Note: Your vehicle may not come with a tow ball assembly.

Driving with a Trailer

Note: If your vehicle cannot meet any of the following conditions, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: Never unlock the tow ball arm with the trailer attached.

Before operating your vehicle:

- Confirm that the tow ball arm is correctly engaged and locked in place.
- Install the plug into its seat, if applicable.

Anti-Rattle Pinch Bolt Removal (If

Equipped)



1. Loosen the pinch bolt locknut.
2. Remove the tow coupling anti-rattle pinch bolt.

Note: When towing, remove the tow coupling anti-rattle pinch bolt from the tow bar.

Note: When not towing, install the anti-rattle pinch bolt, and tighten the locknut. The tightening torque must not exceed 47 Nm.

Driving Without a Trailer

Remove the tow ball arm from the vehicle and keep it securely fastened inside the luggage compartment.

Note: Remove the tow ball arm from the vehicle when not in use.

Note: Remove adapters from the tow bar electrical socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the socket.

Maintenance

- Keep the system clean.
- Regularly clean the tow bar electrical socket.
- Periodically lubricate the tow ball mechanism with resin-free grease or oil and the lock with graphite.

Connecting a Trailer

ATTACHING THE TOW BALL ARM - SUPER DUTY



Note: Use only the tow ball arm shown in the image above when towing weights over 3,500 kg.

1. Insert the tow ball arm into the tow bar.
2. Insert the pin.
3. Secure the pin with the clip.

Note: Take special care when fitting the tow ball arm as the safety of the vehicle and trailer depends on this.

Note: Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

Note: Your vehicle may not come with a tow ball assembly.

Driving with a Trailer

Note: If your vehicle cannot meet any of the following conditions, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: Never unlock the tow ball arm with the trailer attached.

Before operating your vehicle:

- Confirm that the tow ball arm is correctly engaged and locked in place.
- Install the plug into its seat, if applicable.

Anti-Rattle Pinch Bolt Removal (If Equipped)



1. Loosen the pinch bolt locknut.
2. Remove the tow coupling anti-rattle pinch bolt.

Note: When towing, remove the tow coupling anti-rattle pinch bolt from the tow bar.

Note: When not towing, install the anti-rattle pinch bolt, and tighten the locknut. The tightening torque must not exceed 47 Nm.

Driving Without a Trailer

Remove the tow ball arm from the vehicle and keep it securely fastened inside the luggage compartment.

Note: Remove the tow ball arm from the vehicle when not in use.

Note: Remove adapters from the tow bar electrical socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the socket.

Connecting a Trailer

Maintenance

- Keep the system clean.
- Regularly clean the tow bar electrical socket.
- Periodically lubricate the tow ball mechanism with resin-free grease or oil and the lock with graphite.

CONNECTING A TRAILER

Recognizing a Trailer

1. Attach the trailer and wiring connector to your vehicle.
2. Switch on your vehicle.
3. Set up a profile for the trailer using the touchscreen.

Note: If your vehicle does not recognize the trailer, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.

Note: Trailer profiles store trailer types, dimensions, preferences, trailer specific mileage and fuel economy.

Note: Disabling the trailer detection notification makes the default trailer profile active when a connection is detected.



When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

Safety Chains

Install trailer safety chains to the trailer hitch as recommended by the manufacturer. Cross the chains under the trailer coupler and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Note: Do not attach safety chains to the bumper. Always connect the safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of your trailer hitch.

Trailer Connection Checklist

1. Open the towing app using the app launcher. See **Status Bar** (page 630).
2. Open the towing settings.
3. Press **Connection Checklist**.

TRAILER LIGHTING CHECK



WARNING: Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Perform a trailer light illumination sequence to confirm that all lights are functioning by using the FordPass app or the vehicle's touchscreen.

Note: The FordPass app allows one person to confirm that all lights are functioning.

Connecting a Trailer

Performing the Trailer Lighting Check Using the Touchscreen

- 1. Open the towing app using the app launcher. See **Status Bar** (page 630).
- 2. Open the towing settings.
- 3. Press **Trailer Light Check**.
- 4. Press **Start**.

TRAILER BATTERY CHARGE/ TRAILER POWER FEED

This feature allows the trailer's battery to charge under the following situations:

- Your vehicle is in the accessory or engine run position.
- If the vehicle's battery voltage is in optimum condition, above 12.5 volts, and the trailer's battery can still hold a charge, or is not too old.

The trailer power feed feature allows for a 12 volt power output on a 12-pin connector when the system detects a trailer.

Note: *Trailer power feed can provide a maximum output rate of 15 amps.*

Note: *Never place more demand than 15 amps of power on the trailer power feed, this may damage the trailer lighting.*

CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Trailer Disconnected	The system senses a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer Wiring Fault	There are certain faults in your vehicle wiring and trailer wiring or brake system.
Trailer Battery Not Charging. See Manual	The vehicle battery voltage is low, there is a fault with your trailer battery or your trailer battery voltage is below 8V.

Towing a Trailer

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross combination mass stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.



WARNING: Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.



WARNING: Do not use the lane centering system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Towing a trailer also depends on additional systems present in your vehicle. See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 349).

When towing a trailer:

- Use four-wheel drive auto (4A) if equipped, for optimum performance when towing.
- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h even if a country allows higher speeds.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. For the best stability of the trailer in an unloaded vehicle, place the load in the trailer toward the nose within the maximum nose load.
- Reduce the maximum permitted gross combination weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m in high altitude regions above 1,000 m.
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill slope.
- Do not use four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) while towing for extended periods of time on dry surfaces. See **Four-Wheel Drive Limitations** (page 253).

Towing a Trailer

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination depends on the quality of the trailer.

TRAILER BRAKE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.



WARNING: Do not tow a trailer fitted with electric trailer brakes unless your vehicle is fitted with a compatible electronic trailer brake controller. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

Certain states require functioning trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight.

Ford Motor Company recommends separate functioning brake systems for trailers weighing more than 750 kg when loaded.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

Your vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

Towing a trailer also requires your understanding of how and when to use or not use additional systems present in your vehicle. The following systems referenced are to be used as a guide and are not a complete list. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 341). See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 349).

Note: *Your vehicle could have reduced performance when operating at high altitudes and when heavily loaded or towing a trailer. When driving at elevation, to match driving performance as perceived at sea level, reduce gross vehicle weight and gross combination weight by 2% per 300 m elevation.*

LAUNCHING OR RETRIEVING A BOAT OR PERSONAL WATERCRAFT

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 15 cm above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding 15 cm could allow water to enter vehicle components, causing internal damage to the components and affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Note: *Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water.*

Towing a Trailer

Note: Disconnect the trailer wiring connector before backing the trailer into the water.

Note: Reconnect the trailer wiring connector after removing the trailer from the water.

Note: Do not exceed the vehicle configuration weights listed in the following tables.

Note: There are legal limits for maximum towing weights. This may vary according to the region in which your vehicle is operated. Check the local laws and regulations before towing a trailer.

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Towing a Trailer

Engine	Transmission	Driveline	Final Drive Ratio	Gross Combination Mass Rating	Max Towing
2.0L 170psV	6-Speed Automatic Transmission	All	3.73	6,200 kg	3,500 kg
2.3L PHEV	10-Speed Modular Hybrid Transmission	All	3.73	6,580 kg	3,500 kg
2.0L 213ps	10-Speed Automatic Transmission	2WD	3.55	6,250 kg	3,500 kg
	10-Speed Automatic Transmission	4WD	3.55	6,350 kg	3,500 kg
3.0L Lion	10-Speed Automatic Transmission	All	3.55	6,400 kg	3,500 kg

Trailer Nose Weight

Variant	Minimum Nose Weight	Maximum Nose Weight
All	10% of the towed weight	350 kg

Towing a Trailer

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - RAPTOR



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your

vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: Do not exceed the vehicle configuration weights listed in the following tables.

Note: There are legal limits for maximum towing weights. This may vary according to the region in which your vehicle is operated. Check the local laws and regulations before towing a trailer.

Engine	Transmission	Driveline	Final Drive Ratio	Gross Combination Mass Rating	Max Towing
2.0L 213ps	10-Speed Automatic Transmission	4 Wheel Drive	3.73	5,410 kg	2,500 kg
3.0L	10-Speed Automatic Transmission	4 Wheel Drive	4.27	5,370 kg	2,500 kg

Trailer Nose Weight

Variant	Minimum Nose Weight	Maximum Nose Weight
2.0L 213ps	6% of the towed weight	250 kg
3.0L	10% of the towed weight	250 kg

Towing a Trailer

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - SUPER DUTY



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your

vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: Do not exceed the vehicle configuration weights listed in the following tables.

Note: There are legal limits for maximum towing weights. This may vary according to the region in which you operate your vehicle. Check the local laws and regulations before towing a trailer.

Engine	Transmission	Driveline	Final Drive Ratio	Gross Combination Mass Rating	Max Towing
3.0L Lion	10-Speed Automatic Transmission	4WD	3.73	8,060 kg	4,500 kg

Trailer Nose Weight

Variant	Minimum Nose Weight	Maximum Nose Weight
All	10% of the towed weight	450 kg

TOWING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

TOWING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trailer Battery Not Charging See Manual	The vehicle battery voltage is low, there is a fault with your trailer battery or your trailer battery voltage is below 8V.
Trailer Lighting Module Fault See Manual	The system detects a short created by the trailer lamps. Inspect and repair the trailer wiring, or have the system checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Sway Reduce Speed	The trailer sway control detects trailer sway. Reduce the vehicle's speed.

Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER

The trailer brake controller assists in smooth and effective trailer braking based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use the integrated trailer brake controller to properly adjust the trailer brakes and check all connections before towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

- Only use the manual control lever for proper adjustment of the gain during trailer setup. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer or tow vehicle.
- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The trailer brake controller does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of trailer and tow vehicle.
- The trailer brake controller is only a factory-installed item. Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the controller due to misuse or customer installation.

Note: Do not attempt removal of the trailer brake controller without consulting the Workshop Manual. Damage to the unit may result.

Note: Make sure to set the integrated trailer brake controller gain to 0 if you are using an aftermarket trailer brake controller.

USING THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.

Note: An authorized dealer can diagnose the trailer brake controller to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred. Your vehicle warranty does not cover issues with your trailer.

2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.

Note: Select default mode if the trailer has surge brakes, or no brakes at all. The system has no effect on the braking performance of the trailer in either of these cases.

Note: If a trailer is connected by a four-pin connector, the trailer braking function will not be supported.

Note: If you push the gain button in case of a trailer with mechanical brakes the instrument cluster will display, Trailer Brakes-No Trailer warning as the system does not work with those trailers.

3. When you plug in a trailer with electric or electric-over-hydraulic brakes, a message confirming connection appears in the information display.
4. Use the gain adjustment to find the desired starting point. A gain setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.

Note: Use the following steps to adjust the gain setting whenever road, weather and trailer, or vehicle loading conditions, change from when you initially set the gain.

5. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface and squeeze the manual control lever completely.

Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

6. If the trailer wheels lock up, indicated by squealing tires, reduce the gain setting. If the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the gain setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the gain setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lock-up may not be attainable even with the maximum gain setting of 10.

Note: Only perform this procedure at speeds of approximately 30–40 km/h.

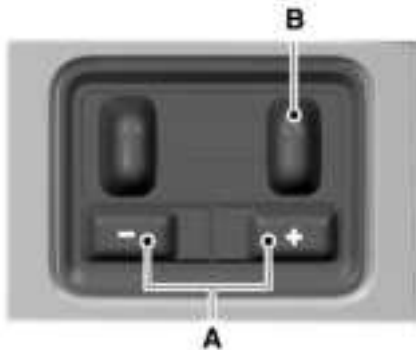
Note: The trailer brake controller reduces output at vehicle speeds below 18 km/h so that trailer and vehicle braking is not jerky or harsh. This feature is only available when applying the brakes using your vehicle's brake pedal, not the controller.

Note: Your vehicle's brake system and the trailer brake system work independently of each other. Changing the gain setting on the controller does not affect the operation of your vehicle's brakes whether you attach a trailer or not.

Note: With the proper electrical connection, pressing your vehicle brake pedal or using the manual control lever illuminates both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

Note: When you switch the engine off, the controller output is disabled and the display and module shut down. The controller module and display turn on when you switch the ignition on.

Adjusting the Trailer Brake Gain



A Increase or decrease the amount of gain in set increments.

B Slide the control to engage the trailer brakes.

Note: Adjust the gain setting before using the trailer brake controller for the first time.

Note: The gain should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while making sure the trailer wheels do not lock when using the brakes. Locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

Note: Setting adjustments are saved when a trailer profile is selected.

ADJUSTING THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER MODE

Select the correct integrated trailer brake controller mode option using the touchscreen.

Note: Trailer brake gain settings are saved to the active trailer profile.

Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

Selecting the Trailer Brake Type

1. Press **Default** for trailers with electromagnetic drum brake systems or press **Electric over Hydraulic** for trailers with electrically actuated hydraulic brake systems.
2. Press **Save**.

Selecting the Trailer Brake Effort

1. Select a setting for your trailer.

Note: The default value is **Low** and is the recommended setting for most trailers. Select a different setting if your trailer's brakes require more initial voltage, or you prefer more aggressive trailer braking.

2. Press **Save**.

INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trailer disconnected	The system detects the trailer wiring connection is disconnected, during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer wiring fault	The system detects an electrical fault in the trailer brake circuit. If this message appears without a trailer attached, see your authorized dealer. If a trailer is attached, inspect and repair the trailer wiring.
Trailer Battery Not Charging. See Manual	The vehicle battery voltage is low, there is a fault with your trailer battery, your trailer battery voltage is below 8V or your trailer battery is connected in reverse polarity.
Trailer brake Gain: {##.##}	Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake.
Trailer brake Gain: {##.##} No trailer	Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake when you do not have a trailer connected and also when you have a trailer connected with mechanical brakes.

Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

How do I determine if there is an issue with the wiring on my vehicle?

A message displays accompanied by a single tone when no trailer is connected. This indicates the issue is between the trailer brake controller and the 12-pin connector at the bumper.

How do I determine if there is an issue with the wiring on my trailer?

A message only displays when a trailer is connected. Consult your trailer dealer for assistance.

Trailer Sway Control

HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer Sway Reduce Speed** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Note: *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

SWITCHING TRAILER SWAY CONTROL ON AND OFF

1.  Open the towing app using the app launcher.
2. Open the towing settings.
3. Switch **Trailer Sway Control** on or off.

The system turns on each time you start your vehicle.

Smart Hitch (If Equipped)

Smart hitch indicates if the trailer's load is within the recommended range based on the weight on the trailer and its cargo.

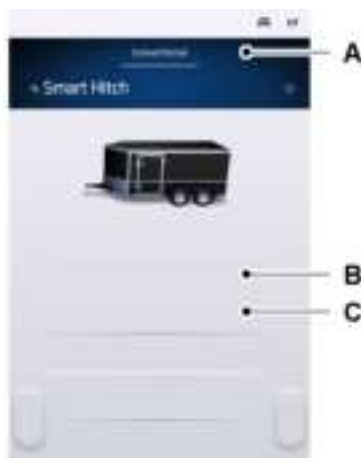
Smart hitch uses sensors mounted to the suspension to calculate the connected trailer's tongue load.

You cannot use the system if any of the following occur:

- The wheels do not point straight ahead.
- Your vehicle is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle is not on a level surface.
- The tire pressures are below the recommended levels.
- Your vehicle is off.

Using Smart Hitch

1. Press Vehicle Drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press Smart Hitch application.



- A. Hitch type selection.
- B. Quick setup.
- C. Connection Checklist.

Hitch Type Selection (If Equipped)

Press to change the hitch type.

Quick Setup

Press to skip the trailer setup guide and adjust the load in the trailer to a balanced range.

Connection Checklist

Press to go through the trailer setup guide and adjust the load in the trailer to a balanced range.

Reset Hitch Weight

Press to reset the weight on the hitch to zero.

Smart Hitch (If Equipped)

Loaded Trailer Weight

Press to set the total weight of the loaded trailer.

Note: *The vehicle's tongue weight is not available until you attach a trailer.*

Note: *Make sure you include both the trailer weight and the trailer cargo in your calculation for total weight of the loaded trailer.*

Unknown Trailer Weight

Press to declare the trailer weight as unknown. The system provides the hitch tongue load estimation without providing a recommended range.

Note: *The value at the top of the graph indicates the maximum percentage of the vehicle's hitch tongue load capacity. The middle value represents the current estimation of the hitch tongue load.*

Measurement Units

To change the measurement units between pounds and kilograms, navigate to weight units in general settings .

Note: *Smart Hitch is not intended for trade measurement usage. Be aware of the additional weight of passengers outside of the vehicle while loading.*

Note: *Vehicle Payload and hitch load measurements that display on the screen are estimated values and subject to a tolerance of +/- 100kgs of the actual weight.*

Note: *Adding, removing, and modifying OE parts impacts the Smart Hitch feature.*

Note: *Do not exceed vehicle and tow bar loads. Use OEM equipment for better results with smart hitch. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 413).*

Note: *Smart Hitch supports conventional trailer types only.*

Onboard Scales (If Equipped)

Onboard scales provide the estimated payload of your vehicle and warns when your vehicle may be overloaded.

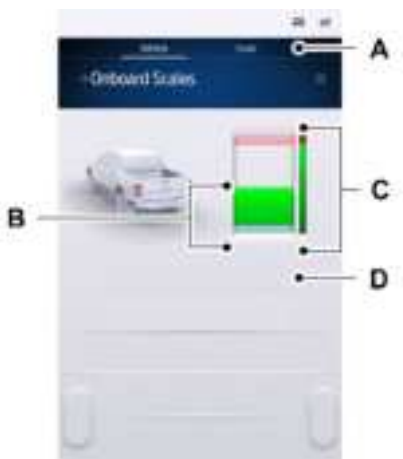
Onboard scales use sensors mounted to the suspension to calculate the estimated vehicle payload.

You cannot use the system if any of the following occur:

- The wheels are not pointed straight ahead.
- Your vehicle is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle is not on a level surface.
- The tire pressures are below the recommended levels.
- Your vehicle is off.

Using Onboard Scales

1. Press Vehicle Drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press Onboard Scales.



- A. Select between Vehicle/Scale Mode.
- B. Estimated payload.

- C. Vehicle capacity range.
- D. Passenger and cargo load reminder on and off.

Onboard Scales Settings

Onboard scales indicates the current estimated payload, including passengers, and warns when you have exceeded the payload limit.

Vehicle Mode

Press to see the current estimated payload including passengers.

Scale Mode

Press to see the weight added to the vehicle's current payload and to reset the scale to zero.

Note: *The scale settings remain between key cycles.*

Passenger and Cargo Load Reminder

Press to switch the load reminder on or off.

Set Passenger and Cargo Load Reminder

Press to set the estimated passengers and cargo load that are not in the vehicle when you use the onboard scales.

The default and minimum value is 75 kg.

The maximum value is 700 kg.

Press confirm to use current measurement to store the current number of occupants and payload of the vehicle.

Measurement Units

Press to change measurement units between pounds and kilograms.

Onboard Scales (If Equipped)

Note: *Onboard scales is not intended for trade measurement usage. Be aware of the additional weight of passengers outside of the vehicle while loading.*

Note: *The vehicle payload and hitch load measurements that display on the screen are estimated values and subject to a tolerance of +/-100 kg of the actual weight.*

Note: *Adding, removing, and modifying original parts impacts the onboard scales feature.*

Note: *We recommend that you do not attach a trailer while using the onboard scales feature.*

Note: *When the onboard scales vehicle mode bar graph and the scale in scale mode turn red, this indicates the vehicle exceeded the max payload capacity.*

Note: *If any onboard scale limitations occur, the scale resets to zero in scale mode.*

Note: *Do not exceed Vehicle GVWR and maximum front & rear axle loads for your vehicle.*

Note: *The onboard scales system considers added weight from parts or accessories as payload.*

Note: *We recommend you drive a short distance after removing the load from the vehicle to allow the suspension to settle for the next loading process.*

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty

WHAT IS TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE

Trailer backup assistance utilizes the control knob on the center console to help you steer a trailer. Turn the control knob in the direction you want the trailer to go and the system steers the vehicle.

HOW DOES TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE WORK

Trailer backup assistance uses a sticker attached to the trailer to detect the trailer angle relative to the towing vehicle and provides instructions, graphics and camera views on the touchscreen.

Note: Trailer backup assistance only works with conventional trailers, couplers and hitch balls.

TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. If you do not apply the brakes when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

Note: The system restricts your vehicle speed to 5 km/h during operation when backing up in a straight line. The speed is reduced when backing in a curve (left or right turn).

Note: The system is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always be aware of your vehicle and trailer combination, and the surrounding environment.

Note: The system does not detect or prevent your vehicle or trailer from making contact with obstacles in the surrounding environment.

Note: The front end of your vehicle swings out when changing the direction of the trailer.

Note: In certain conditions, the trailer could turn faster or the trailer angle could increase more than anticipated. Always monitor the clearance between the trailer and vehicle and the surroundings.

Note: The installation or use of an aftermarket tow hitch may effect system performance, such as reduced accuracy in trailer tracking and angle detection.

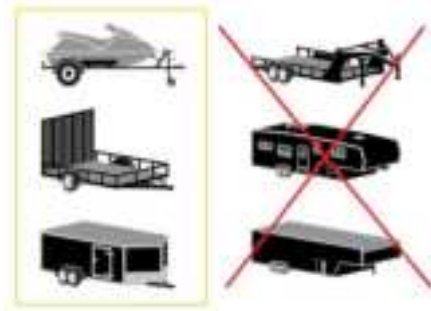
Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty

SETTING UP THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE FOR A CONVENTIONAL TRAILER

CONFIGURING THE TRAILER

You must configure a trailer in the system to use trailer backup assistance. This is a one-time setup process and the trailer information is saved in the system for the next time you use that trailer.

The following illustration shows examples of conventional trailers. Fifth wheel and gooseneck trailers are not supported.



Park your vehicle and hitched trailer on a level surface.

For best results, make sure that your trailer rides level with the ground when you hitch your vehicle. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 408).



Make sure that the trailer and your vehicle are in line with each other. You can do this by putting the transmission in drive (D) and pulling straight forward.

Positioning the Trailer

Hitch the trailer to your vehicle and connect the electrical wiring harness. Check to make sure that the wiring is working. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 408).

Note: Trailer Backup Assistance continues to work if the trailer wiring harness is disconnected (for example prior to backing down a boat ramp). Reconnect the wiring as soon as possible.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty

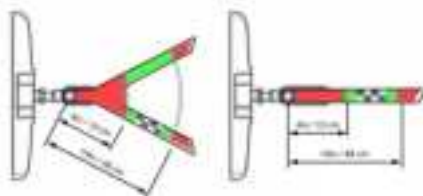
Configuring the Trailer in the Touchscreen



1. Press the button to switch the system on.
2. Press Add Trailer on the touchscreen.
3. Follow the directions on the touchscreen to enter the trailer name and trailer type, then proceed to the sticker setup.

APPLYING THE TRAILER REVERSING AID STICKER

Place the sticker in an area visible by the rear view camera. The entire sticker must be within 10–48 cm from the center of the hitch ball, as shown in the following illustration.



Use the supplied sticker placement card, a tape measure and pen to carefully mark the area to attach the sticker. Make sure the entire sticker is within the green zone between the two arcs or distance markers on the diagram, and is also visible in the rear view camera display.

Once you have found the correct location, place the sticker.

Note: Make sure nothing obstructs the rear view camera's view of the sticker such as a jack handle or wiring.

Note: Position the sticker on a flat, dry and clean horizontal surface. For best results, apply the sticker when temperatures are above 0°C.

Note: Do not move stickers after placing them. Do not reuse any stickers if removed.

Note: You can purchase additional stickers through your authorized dealer.

CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM

Calibrating the system requires driving forward and turning left or right. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to complete the calibration process.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty



Note: To calibrate the system, you need an area where you can safely drive forward and turn left or right. An open parking lot is an ideal place to perform the calibration.

Note: You need to complete at least a 90° turn, and longer trailers could require a 180° turn. Camera trailer tracking requires the system to locate the hitch ball as well as determine the trailer length. Some trailers could require you to drive straight then turn multiple times before calibration completes. The touchscreen provides instructions and notifies you when calibration completes. Making tighter turns (when requested) helps the calibration process.

Note: Keep the steering wheel straight when instructed by the touchscreen. If the steering wheel is in a turned position during this instruction, the calibration pauses.

Note: During calibration, the system determines the trailer length. The system supports trailer lengths of 1.83–6.1 m distance from the hitch point to the center of the axle or axles. The system is designed to work with drawbars (tow ball mounts) that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 26–43 cm when installed. Do not use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function.

Note: The touchscreen shows if you are going too slow or fast. Calibration pauses if the speed is outside the required range of 4–15 km/h.

Note: Do not calibrate the system at night. The calibration process may not be completed, or the system may not work as expected.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty

SWITCHING TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE ON AND OFF



Press the button and use the touchscreen to select the connected trailer.

Note: A trailer must be configured to use trailer backup assistance. See **Configuring the Trailer** (page 429).

Note: If you use the steering wheel when using trailer backup assistance, the system turns off and a message displays in the touchscreen.

Note: If the trailer was connected just prior to turning the system on, you may need to drive forward to initialize the system. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to activate the system.

USING THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE CONTROLLER

Use the control knob to steer the trailer. Take your hands off the steering wheel and turn the control knob instead. The control knob acts as the steering control for the trailer.



Turn and hold counterclockwise to make the trailer go left.



Turn and hold clockwise to make the trailer go right.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty



Release the knob when the trailer is moving in the direction you want.

Note: *The more you turn the knob, the sharper the trailer turns.*

Note: *Quickly turning and releasing the knob results in a jerky movement of the vehicle.*

Note: *You may have to use the knob to correct the trailer direction when attempting to move the trailer straight back under some conditions.*

USING THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE VIEWS

Up to six camera views could be available when using trailer backup assistance. Use the view that helps you the most when reversing your vehicle and trailer.

Note: *The rear view camera view is available on all vehicles with the trailer backup assist feature. Additional views are available on vehicles equipped with the trailer reverse guidance feature.*



360° camera view. Shows a 360° view on the right-hand side of the touchscreen with a rear camera view on the left-hand side of the touchscreen.



Rear view camera view. Shows your trailer hitch or what is directly behind your vehicle.



Trailer AUX camera view (if equipped). Shows a rear view camera image of what is behind your trailer.

Note: *This view also provides a picture-in-picture view.*



Trailer reverse guidance view. Shows you a view of the sides of your truck and the trailer. In auto mode, this view moves as the trailer moves so that you do not have to adjust the camera as you turn. Left and right arrows let you see other camera views.



Picture-in-picture view (if equipped). Shows a main view and a secondary view when in trailer AUX camera view.

Note: *Picture-in-picture is on by default and cannot be switched off.*



Swap. Press to swap between picture-in-picture views.



Auto. Press to return to auto view.

Note: *Auto mode is the default setting.*

Hitch Angle Graphic

The hitch angle graphic shows a small representation of your truck and trailer with visual feedback to help you monitor the trailer. The graphic shows two different colored lines for the trailer hitch angle. A black line shows you where your trailer is in relation to your vehicle. The white line represents the amount the trailer can turn based on knob input.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty

The graphic shows a yellow and red zone for the hitch angle to warn you of a high angle condition that could require you to pull forward to reduce the hitch angle. The angle limits for each zone vary based on the trailer length.

The yellow zone indicates you are approaching the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. When the trailer enters this zone, it is more difficult to reduce the trailer turn when backing up. It may be necessary to put your vehicle into drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back in line.

The red zone indicates you have exceeded the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Immediately stop reversing. Put your vehicle into drive (D) and pull forward until the trailer is no longer in the red zone.

Setting the Trailer Angle Limit

1. From the Apps menu, press the Towing button.
2. Press the saved trailer you want to change.
3. Press Pro Trailer Backup Assist.
4. Press Trailer Angle Limit.
5. Press a setting.

Normal Control Angle

Default setting. This provides a balanced limit that returns from a turn to straight backing with minimal change to the trailer direction.

Max Control Angle

Increases the trailer angle limit close to the maximum controllable angle to allow sharper turns but also causes more change in the trailer direction when straightening out from a turn.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty

TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Detecting trailer Please wait...	Displays when the system turns on and is initializing.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist System is not available	A condition exists that prevents the system from turning on. If the message continues to display, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist Driving required to initialize steering Press knob to exit	The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully enable the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 40 km/h for approximately 5 minutes.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist Stop now Maximum trailer angle Press knob to exit	Displays when you reach the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.
Stop now. Deactivated by trailer angle.	Displays when you exceed the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get your vehicle and trailer back to an in-line position, then activate the system by selecting the connected trailer and following the instructions on the touchscreen. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist Stop now Take control of steering wheel	Displays when the system can no longer steer the vehicle and you must take over steering.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty

Message	Description
Pro Trailer Backup Assist Trailer not detected Shift to Park Press knob to exit	These messages display when the system does not detect the trailer.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist Trailer not detected Refer to Owner's Manual Press knob to exit	Make sure the rear camera is clean, and the sticker is clearly visible in the camera image. You can also move the trailer forward or backward to change the trailer position and lighting conditions. If these messages continue to display, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist Trailer not detected Drive forward to initialize Press knob to exit	This message displays when the camera system cannot detect the trailer and requires trailer movement to enable trailer detection. Drive forward above 3 km/h to initialize the system.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist Stop now System not active Press knob to exit	Displays when your vehicle is backing up but the system is not activated. Select the connected trailer on the touchscreen and follow the instructions to activate the system. This message also displays when you back up during the calibration process.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist Back up slowly Turn knob to steer Press knob to exit	Displays when the system turns on and is available to use.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty

TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the trailer not reverse straight?

- Factors such as the hitch connection, road camber, road slope and trailer suspension could influence how straight the system can reverse the trailer when the control knob is not turned. You can compensate for the trailer drifting to the right or left by slowly turning the knob until the trailer is following your desired path and then holding the knob in that position.

What does it mean if the system remains on one message for an extended time during calibration when setting up the system with the sticker?

- The camera could need to be cleaned, the sticker could be blocked, the drawbar could be outside the allowed range of 10–48 cm or you could need to move to a different area to change the lighting and background. Verify the sticker is in the proper location. See **Applying the Trailer Reversing Aid Sticker** (page 430). You can move to a different area or change the direction you are driving or setup the system at a different time of day. Some trailers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

What does it mean if the system pauses during calibration?

- There could be steering input or trailer movement during the straight drive portion of the calibration process.

What does it mean if the system displays hold steering steady during turn?

- Part of the calibration process for the sticker setup requires a steady turn. If you are continually moving the steering wheel during the turn, this delays the calibration process. To enable the calibration process, hold the steering wheel at the same position when turning.

What does it mean if the system displays that it is not available?

- There could be a sub-system that the system uses that is not correctly operating or there could be a battery voltage issue. If the system continues to display it is not available, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.

What does it mean if the system displays that driving is required to initialize steering?

- The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully turn on the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 40 km/h for approximately 5 minutes. This could also occur when your vehicle is new, there is a battery voltage issue or if the steering system has been serviced.

What does it mean if the system requires you to pull forward to initialize?

- This occurs when the vehicle has not moved during the current key cycle after you connect and select the trailer in the touchscreen or you operate the system at speeds below 1 km/h for an extended period of time. Drive forward above 3 km/h and the system indicates when it initializes.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Excluding: Super Duty

What does it mean if the trailer is at its maximum angle or the system deactivated by trailer angle?

- You are at the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position. If this message consistently displays, this could indicate the sticker is incorrectly placed, the trailer needs to be recalibrated or the drawbar or the trailer dimensions are outside of the supported range. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 26–43 cm when installed. The system is designed to work with trailers that have a hitch point to center of the axle or axles measurement of 1.83–6.1 m. Do not use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function. Check that the correct trailer is selected in the touchscreen. Verify the sticker is placed according to the instructions. Then, delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup process to calibrate the trailer.

What does it mean when the system tells you to take control of the steering wheel?

- The system is no longer steering the vehicle and you must take over steering. There are four reasons the system could display this message:
1. You have touched the steering wheel when the system is steering. Avoid touching the wheel during system operation.

2. You have exceeded the maximum forward speed of 40 km/h for the feature to re-activate when you shift to Reverse.
3. The system no longer detects the trailer.
4. An internal condition for system operation is not met that requires your vehicle to return to manual control of the steering.

What does it mean if the system does not detect a trailer that is setup with a sticker?

- The system requires a clear view of the sticker placed on the trailer. You must keep the camera lens and sticker clean for the system to correctly operate. If the system cannot initially detect the trailer, it could be necessary for you to change the lighting conditions by moving your vehicle and trailer or waiting until the conditions change. See **Applying the Trailer Reversing Aid Sticker** (page 430). Some trailers and couplers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

Note: *The system is designed to be used with the same trailer connection every time you choose the trailer from the touchscreen. When using a different drawbar (tow ball mount) or a different pin hole on drawbars with more than one, connecting the drawbar to your vehicle affects the trailer position and you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration process.*

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

WHAT IS TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE

Trailer backup assistance utilizes the control knob on the center console to help you steer a trailer. Turn the control knob in the direction you want the trailer to go and the system steers the vehicle.

HOW DOES TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE WORK

Trailer backup assistance uses a sensor attached to the trailer to detect the trailer angle relative to the towing vehicle and provides instructions, graphics and camera views on the touchscreen.

Note: Trailer backup assistance only works with conventional trailers, couplers and hitch balls.

TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. If you do not apply the brakes when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

Note: The system restricts your vehicle speed to 5 km/h during operation when backing up in a straight line. The speed is reduced when backing in a curve (left or right turn).

Note: The system is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always be aware of your vehicle and trailer combination, and the surrounding environment.

Note: The system does not detect or prevent your vehicle or trailer from making contact with obstacles in the surrounding environment.

Note: The front end of your vehicle swings out when changing the direction of the trailer.

Note: In certain conditions, the trailer could turn faster or the trailer angle could increase more than anticipated. Always monitor the clearance between the trailer and vehicle and the surroundings.

Note: The installation or use of an aftermarket tow hitch may effect system performance, such as reduced accuracy in trailer tracking and angle detection.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

SETTING UP THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE FOR A CONVENTIONAL TRAILER

CONFIGURING THE TRAILER

You must configure a trailer in the system to use trailer backup assistance. This is a one-time setup process and the trailer information is saved in the system for the next time you use that trailer.

The following illustration shows examples of conventional trailers. Fifth wheel and gooseneck trailers are not supported.

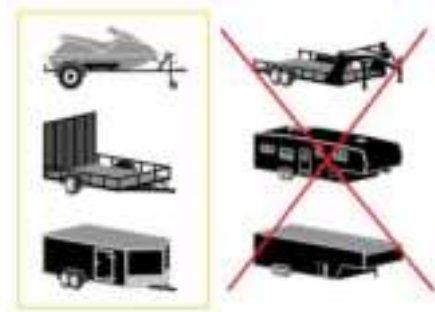


Park your vehicle and hitched trailer on a level surface.

For best results, make sure that your trailer rides level with the ground when you hitch your vehicle. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 408).



Make sure that the trailer and your vehicle are in line with each other. You can do this by putting the transmission in drive (D) and pulling straight forward.



Positioning the Trailer

Hitch the trailer to your vehicle and connect the electrical wiring harness. Check to make sure that the wiring is working. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 408).

Note: Trailer Backup Assistance continues to work if the trailer wiring harness is disconnected (for example prior to backing down a boat ramp). Reconnect the wiring as soon as possible.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

Configuring the Trailer in the Touchscreen



1. Press the button to switch the system on.
2. Press Add Trailer on the touchscreen.
3. Follow the directions on the touchscreen to enter the trailer name and trailer type, then proceed to the sensor setup.

TRAILER SENSOR INSTALLATION



A trailer sensor kit is provided with applicable vehicles. If you require additional trailer sensor kits, see your authorized dealer.

Refer to the instructions included with your trailer sensor for detailed information regarding installation.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

Note: Make sure the arrows on the sensor housing are facing up. Mount the sensor to a vertical part of the trailer that pivots when you turn your vehicle. Do not mount to a stationary surface such as the truck side of the trailer hitch.

Note: To set up a trailer with a sensor, install the sensor on the trailer and plug the connector into the socket on your bumper prior to configuring the trailer. Trailers that were set up with a sensor still require the sensor to function.

CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM

Calibrating the system requires driving forward and turning left or right. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to complete the calibration process.



Note: To calibrate the system, you need an area where you can safely drive forward and turn left or right. An open parking lot is an ideal place to perform the calibration.

Note: You need to complete at least a 90° turn, and longer trailers could require a 180° turn. Camera trailer tracking requires the system to locate the hitch ball as well as determine the trailer length. Some trailers could require you to drive straight then turn multiple times before calibration completes. The touchscreen provides instructions and notifies you when calibration completes. Making tighter turns (when requested) helps the calibration process.

Note: Keep the steering wheel straight when instructed by the touchscreen. If the steering wheel is in a turned position during this instruction, the calibration pauses.

Note: During calibration, the system determines the trailer length. The system supports trailer lengths of 1.83–6.1 m distance from the hitch point to the center of the axle or axles. The system is designed to work with drawbars (tow ball mounts) that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 26–43 cm when installed. Do not use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function.

Note: The touchscreen shows if you are going too slow or fast. Calibration pauses if the speed is outside the required range of 4–15 km/h.

Note: Do not calibrate the system at night. The calibration process may not be completed, or the system may not work as expected.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

SWITCHING TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE ON AND OFF



Press the button and use the touchscreen to select the connected trailer.

Note: A trailer must be configured to use trailer backup assistance. See **Configuring the Trailer** (page 429).

Note: If you use the steering wheel when using trailer backup assistance, the system turns off and a message displays in the touchscreen.

Note: If the trailer was connected just prior to turning the system on, you may need to drive forward to initialize the system. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to activate the system.

USING THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE CONTROLLER

Use the control knob to steer the trailer. Take your hands off the steering wheel and turn the control knob instead. The control knob acts as the steering control for the trailer.



Turn and hold counterclockwise to make the trailer go left.



Turn and hold clockwise to make the trailer go right.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty



Release the knob when the trailer is moving in the direction you want.

Note: The more you turn the knob, the sharper the trailer turns.

Note: Quickly turning and releasing the knob results in a jerky movement of the vehicle.

Note: You may have to use the knob to correct the trailer direction when attempting to move the trailer straight back under some conditions.

USING THE TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE VIEWS

Up to six camera views could be available when using trailer backup assistance. Use the view that helps you the most when reversing your vehicle and trailer.

Note: The rear view camera view is available on all vehicles with the trailer backup assist feature. Additional views are available on vehicles equipped with the trailer reverse guidance feature.



360° camera view. Shows a 360° view on the right-hand side of the touchscreen with a rear camera view on the left-hand side of the touchscreen.



Rear view camera view. Shows your trailer hitch or what is directly behind your vehicle.



Trailer AUX camera view (if equipped). Shows a rear view camera image of what is behind your trailer.

Note: This view also provides a picture-in-picture view.



Trailer reverse guidance view. Shows you a view of the sides of your truck and the trailer. In auto mode, this view moves as the trailer moves so that you do not have to adjust the camera as you turn. Left and right arrows let you see other camera views.



Picture-in-picture view (if equipped). Shows a main view and a secondary view when in trailer AUX camera view.

Note: Picture-in-picture is on by default and cannot be switched off.



Swap. Press to swap between picture-in-picture views.



Auto. Press to return to auto view.

Note: Auto mode is the default setting.

Hitch Angle Graphic

The hitch angle graphic shows a small representation of your truck and trailer with visual feedback to help you monitor the trailer. The graphic shows two different colored lines for the trailer hitch angle. A black line shows you where your trailer is in relation to your vehicle. The white line represents the amount the trailer can turn based on knob input.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

The graphic shows a yellow and red zone for the hitch angle to warn you of a high angle condition that could require you to pull forward to reduce the hitch angle. The angle limits for each zone vary based on the trailer length.

The yellow zone indicates you are approaching the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. When the trailer enters this zone, it is more difficult to reduce the trailer turn when backing up. It may be necessary to put your vehicle into drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back in line.

The red zone indicates you have exceeded the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Immediately stop reversing. Put your vehicle into drive (D) and pull forward until the trailer is no longer in the red zone.

Setting the Trailer Angle Limit

1. From the Apps menu, press the Towing button.
2. Press the saved trailer you want to change.
3. Press Pro Trailer Backup Assist.
4. Press Trailer Angle Limit.
5. Press a setting.

Normal Control Angle

Default setting. This provides a balanced limit that returns from a turn to straight backing with minimal change to the trailer direction.

Max Control Angle

Increases the trailer angle limit close to the maximum controllable angle to allow sharper turns but also causes more change in the trailer direction when straightening out from a turn.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Detecting Trailer Please Wait...	Displays when the system turns on and is initializing.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ System is Not Available	A condition exists that prevents the system from turning on. If the message continues to display have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Driving Required to Initialize Steering Press Knob to Exit	The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully enable the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 40 km/h for approximately 5 minutes.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Stop now Maximum trailer angle Press Knob to Exit	Displays when you reach the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.
Stop now. Deactivated by trailer angle.	Displays when you exceed the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get your vehicle and trailer back to an in-line position, then activate the system by selecting the connected trailer and following the instructions on the touchscreen. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Stop Now Take Control of Steering Wheel	Displays when the system can no longer steer the vehicle and you must take over steering.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

Message	Description
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Sensor Not Detected Refer to Owner's Manual Press Knob to Exit	Displays when the system does not detect the sensor. Check the sensor connection, check that there is no damaged wiring between the connector and sensor and check that there is only one sensor connected.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Trailer Not Detected. Shift to Park Press Knob to Exit	These messages display when the system does not detect the trailer. Check that the sensor is correctly installed and the trailer length is within the allowed range. If these messages continue to display, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Trailer Not Detected. Refer to Owner's Manual. Press Knob to Exit	
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Trailer Not Detected Pull Forward to Initialize Press Knob to Exit	This message displays when your vehicle has not moved after the trailer sensor is connected or extended operation below 1 km/h. Drive forward above 3 km/h to initialize the system.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Stop Now System Not Active Press Knob to Exit	Displays when your vehicle is backing up but the system is not activated. Select the connected trailer on the touchscreen and follow the instructions to activate the system. This message also displays when you back up during the calibration process.
Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ Backup Slowly Turn Knob to Steer Press Knob to Exit	Displays when the system turns on and is available to use.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

TRAILER BACKUP ASSISTANCE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the trailer not reverse straight?

- The road conditions, such as road camber and road slope, could affect how straight the system can reverse. You can compensate for the trailer drifting to the right or left by slowly turning the knob until the trailer is following your desired path and then holding the knob in that position.
- Other factors, such as the hitch connection or trailer suspension, could affect how straight the system can reverse the trailer. You can compensate for the trailer drifting to the right or left by slowly turning the knob until the trailer is following your desired path and then holding the knob in that position.
- The sensor could be incorrectly installed. Make sure the sensor is correctly installed.

What does it mean if the system pauses during calibration?

- There could be steering input or trailer movement during the straight drive portion of the calibration process.

What does it mean if the system displays that it is not available?

- There could be a subsystem that the system uses that is not correctly operating. If the system continues to display it is not available, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- There could be a battery voltage issue. Make sure the battery is correctly charged. If the system continues to display it is not available, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

What does it mean if the system displays that driving is required to initialize steering?

- The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully turn on the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 40 km/h for approximately 5 minutes.
- Your vehicle is new, there is a battery voltage issue or you have serviced the steering system.

What does it mean if the system requires you to pull forward to initialize?

- This occurs when the vehicle has not moved during the current key cycle after you connect and select the trailer in the touchscreen, or you operate the system at speeds below 1 km/h for an extended period of time. Drive forward above 3 km/h and the system indicates when it initializes.

What does it mean if the trailer is at its maximum angle or the system deactivated by trailer angle?

- You are at the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position.
- The trailer could need to be recalibrated. Check that the correct trailer is selected in the touchscreen. Verify the sensor is installed according to the instructions included in the sensor kit and check that the drawbar and the trailer dimensions are within the allowed range. Then, delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup process to calibrate the trailer.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

- The drawbar or the trailer dimensions are outside of the supported range. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 23–46 cm when installed. The system is designed to work with trailers that have a hitch point to the center of the axle or axles measurement of 1.85–10.05 m. Do not attempt to use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function.
- The sensor could be incorrectly installed. Make sure the sensor is correctly installed.

What does it mean when the system tells you to take control of the steering wheel?

- You have touched the steering wheel when the system is steering. Avoid touching the wheel during system operation.
- You have exceeded the maximum speed for the feature. The system is no longer steering the vehicle and you must take over steering.
- The system does not detect the trailer. The system is no longer steering the vehicle and you must take over steering.
- An internal condition for system operation is not met that requires your vehicle to return to manual control of the steering.

Why does the system not detect a sensor?

- There could be an issue with the connection. Make sure that the 12-way connector is fully inserted into the 12-way socket, that the red rubber seal is not visible when the connector is fully inserted and that the wiring harness sensor connection is fully inserted at the trailer sensor.
- The wiring harness could be damaged. Check for damaged wiring between the 12-way connector and the trailer sensor.
- There could be multiple sensors connected to your vehicle. Make sure only one sensor is connected at a time.
- The sensor could be incorrectly installed. Make sure the sensor is installed on a vertical surface with the arrows pointing straight up.

What does it mean if the system remains on one message for an extended time during calibration when setting up the system with the sensor?

- The trailer length could be outside the allowed range. The system is designed to work with trailers that have a hitch point to the center of the axle or axles measurement of 1.85–10.05 m.
- The road surface could be too rough or bumpy. Try calibrating the system on a smoother road surface, such as an open parking lot.
- The sensor could be incorrectly installed. Make sure the sensor is installed on a vertical surface with the arrows pointing straight up.

Trailer Backup Assistance - Super Duty

What does it mean if the system does not detect a trailer when configured with a sensor?

- Verify that you properly connected the sensor. See **Trailer Sensor Installation** (page 441). Repeat calibration on a different route if you have verified sensor installation.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Excluding: Super Duty

WHAT IS TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE

Trailer reverse guidance provides views and graphics on the touchscreen to help you steer your vehicle when you backup a trailer.

HOW DOES TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE WORK

Trailer reverse guidance uses a sticker attached to the trailer to detect the trailer angle relative to the towing vehicle and provides instructions, graphics and camera views on the touchscreen.

Note: Trailer reverse guidance only works with conventional trailers and couplers and on cars with a 360 degree camera system.

TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. If you do not apply the brakes when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

Note: The system is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always be aware of your vehicle and trailer combination, and the surrounding environment.

Note: The system does not detect or prevent your vehicle or trailer from making contact with obstacles in the surrounding environment.

Note: The front end of your vehicle swings out when changing the direction of the trailer.

Note: In certain conditions, the trailer could turn faster or the trailer angle could increase more than anticipated. Always monitor the clearance between the trailer and vehicle and the surroundings.

SETTING UP TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE FOR A CONVENTIONAL TRAILER

CONFIGURING THE TRAILER

You must configure a trailer in the system to use trailer reverse guidance. This is a one-time setup process and the trailer information is saved in the system for the next time you use that trailer.

The system only works with conventional trailers. It does not work with other types including fifth-wheel and gooseneck. The following illustration shows examples of conventional trailers on the left-hand side.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Excluding: Super Duty

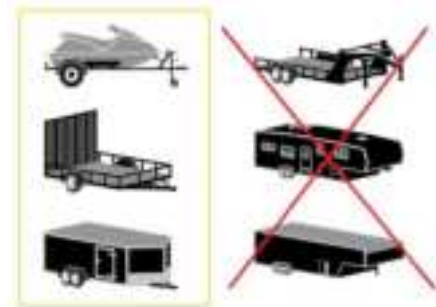
Note: Trailer reverse guidance camera views are available with no trailer setup. However, complete functionality including graphics and automatic view switching is enabled by setup. Setup is required to enable trailer backup assistance.



Make sure that the trailer and your vehicle are in line with each other. You can do this by putting the transmission in drive (D) and pulling straight forward.

Configuring the Trailer in the Touchscreen

1. Shift to reverse (R).
2. Press the camera menu view button.
3. Press the trailer view icon.
4. Press Add Trailer.
5. Follow the directions on the touchscreen to enter the trailer name and trailer type, then proceed to the sticker setup.



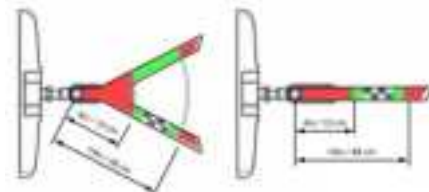
Positioning the Trailer

Hitch the trailer to your vehicle and connect the electrical wiring harness. Check to make sure that the wiring is working. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 408).



Park your vehicle and hitched trailer on a level surface.

For best results, make sure that your trailer rides level with the ground when you hitch your vehicle. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 408).



APPLYING THE TRAILER REVERSE AID STICKER

Place the sticker in an area visible by the rear view camera. The entire sticker must be within 10–48 cm from the center of the hitch ball, as shown in the following illustration.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Excluding: Super Duty

Use the supplied sticker placement card, a tape measure and pen to carefully mark the area to attach the sticker. Make sure the entire sticker is within the green zone between the two arcs or distance markers on the diagram, and is also visible in the rear view camera display.

Once you have found the correct location, place the sticker.

Note: Make sure nothing can obstruct the rear view camera's view of the sticker such as a jack handle or wiring.

Note: Position the sticker on a flat, dry and clean horizontal surface. For best results, apply the sticker when temperatures are above 0°C.

Note: Do not move stickers after placing them. Do not re-use any stickers if removed.

Note: You can purchase additional stickers through your authorized dealer.

CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM

Calibrating the system requires driving forward and turning left or right. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to complete the calibration process.



Note: To calibrate the system, you need an area where you can safely drive forward and turn left or right. An open parking lot is an ideal place to perform the calibration.

Note: Keep the steering wheel straight when instructed to by the touchscreen. If the steering wheel is in a turned position during this instruction, the calibration pauses.

Note: During calibration, the system determines the trailer length. The system supports trailer lengths of 1.83–6.1 m distance from the hitch point to the center of the axle or axles. The system is designed to work with drawbars (tow ball mounts) that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 26–43 cm when installed. Do not use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function.

Note: The touchscreen shows if you are going too slow or fast. Calibration pauses if the speed is outside the required range of 4–15 km/h.

Note: You need to complete at least a 90° turn, and longer trailers could require a 180° turn. Camera trailer tracking requires the system to locate the hitch ball as well as determine the trailer length. Some trailers could require you to drive straight then turn multiple times before calibration completes. The touchscreen provides instructions and notifies you when calibration completes.

Note: Do not calibrate the system at night. The calibration process may not be completed, or the system may not work as expected.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Excluding: Super Duty

SWITCHING TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE ON AND OFF

Shift into reverse (R), press the rear camera menu view button to expand the menu, press the trailer icon and use the touchscreen to select the connected trailer.

Note: If the trailer was connected just prior to turning the system on, you may need to drive forward to initialize the system. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to activate the system.

USING TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE VIEWS

Up to six camera views could be available when using trailer reverse guidance. Use the view that helps you the most when reversing your vehicle and trailer.



360° camera view. Shows a 360° view on the right-hand side of the touchscreen with a rear camera view on the left-hand side of the touchscreen.



Rear view camera view. Shows your trailer hitch or what is directly behind your vehicle.



Trailer AUX camera view. Shows a rear view camera image of what is behind your trailer.

Note: This view also provides a picture-in-picture view.



Trailer reverse guidance view. Shows you a view of the sides of your truck and the trailer. In auto mode, this view moves as the trailer moves so that you do not have to adjust the camera as you turn. Left and right arrows let you see other camera views.



Straight backup mode. Shows which way to turn your steering wheel to keep the trailer straight.

Use this view when you want to keep your trailer completely in line with your truck.

Note: This view also provides a picture-in-picture view.

Note: It may be necessary to shift your vehicle into drive (D), pull forward and straighten out the vehicle and trailer before engaging straight backup mode.



Picture-in-picture view. Shows a main view and a secondary view when in trailer AUX camera view.

view.

Note: Picture-in-picture is on by default and cannot be switched off.



Swap. Press to swap between picture-in-picture views.



This takes you back to the 360° camera system and out of the trailer reverse guidance feature.



Auto. Press to return to auto view.

Note: Auto mode is the default setting.

Hitch Angle Graphic

The hitch angle graphic shows a small representation of your truck and trailer with visual feedback to help you monitor the trailer. The graphic shows two different colored lines for the trailer hitch angle. A black line shows you where your trailer is in relation to your vehicle. The white line represents the amount the trailer can turn based on steering wheel position.

The graphic shows a yellow and red zone for the hitch angle to warn you of a high angle condition that could require you to pull forward to reduce the hitch angle. The angle limits for each zone vary based on the trailer length.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Excluding: Super Duty

The yellow zone indicates you are approaching the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. When the trailer enters this zone, it is more difficult to reduce the trailer turn when backing up. It may be necessary to put your vehicle back into drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line

position.

The red zone indicates you have exceeded the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Immediately stop reversing. Put your vehicle into drive (D) and pull forward until the trailer is no longer in the red zone.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Excluding: Super Duty

TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Detecting trailer Please wait...	Displays when the system turns on and is initializing.
Trailer Reverse Guidance System is not available	A condition exists that prevents the system from turning on. If the message continues to display, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Reverse Guidance Driving required to initialize steering Press OK to exit	The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully enable the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 40 km/h for approximately 5 minutes.
Stop now. Deactivated by trailer angle.	Displays when you exceed the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get your vehicle and trailer back to an in-line position, then activate the system by selecting the connected trailer and following the instructions on the touchscreen. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.
Trailer Reverse Guidance Trailer not detected Refer to Owner's Manual Press OK to exit	Displays when the system does not detect the trailer. Make sure the rear camera is clean, and the sticker is clearly visible in the camera image. You can also move the trailer forward or backward to change the trailer position and lighting conditions. If this message continues to display, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Reverse Guidance Trailer not detected Drive forward to initialize Press OK to exit	This message displays when the camera system cannot detect the trailer and requires trailer movement to enable trailer detection. Drive forward above 3 km/h to initialize the system.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Excluding: Super Duty

TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What does it mean if the same message displays for an extended time during calibration when setting up the system with the sticker?

The camera could need to be cleaned, the sticker could be blocked, the drawbar could be outside the allowed range of 10–48 cm or you could need to move to a different area to change the lighting and background. Verify the sticker is in the proper location. See **Applying the Trailer Reverse Aid Sticker** (page 452). You can move to a different area or change the direction you are driving or set up the system at a different time of day. Some trailers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

What does it mean if the system pauses during calibration?

There could be steering input or trailer movement during the straight drive portion of the calibration process.

What does it mean if the system displays hold steering steady during turn?

Part of the calibration process for the sticker setup requires a steady turn. If you are continually moving the steering wheel during the turn, this delays the calibration process. To enable the calibration process, hold the steering wheel at the same position when turning.

What does it mean if the system displays that it is not available?

There could be a sub-system that the system uses that is not correctly operating or there could be a battery voltage issue. If the system continues to display it is not available, visit your authorized dealer to have your vehicle checked.

What does it mean if the system displays that driving is required to initialize steering?

The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully turn on the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 40 km/h for approximately 5 minutes. This could also occur when your vehicle is new, there is a battery voltage issue or if the steering system has been serviced.

What does it mean if the system requires you to pull forward to initialize?

This occurs when the vehicle has not moved during the current key cycle after you connect and select the trailer in the touchscreen or you operate the system at speeds below 1 km/h for an extended period of time. Drive forward above 3 km/h and the system indicates when it initializes.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Excluding: Super Duty

What does it mean if the trailer is at its maximum angle or the system deactivated by trailer angle?

You are at the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position. If this message consistently displays, this could indicate the sticker is incorrectly placed, the trailer needs to be recalibrated or the drawbar or the trailer dimensions are outside of the supported range. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 26–43 cm when installed. The system is designed to work with trailers that have a hitch point to center of the axle or axles measurement of 1.83–6.1 m. Do not use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function. Check that the correct trailer is selected in the touchscreen. Verify the sticker is placed according to the instructions. Then, delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup process to calibrate the trailer.

What does it mean if the system does not detect a trailer that is setup with a sticker?

The system requires a clear view of the sticker placed on the trailer. You must keep the camera lens and sticker clean for the system to correctly operate. If the system cannot initially detect the trailer, it could be necessary for you to change the lighting conditions by moving your vehicle and trailer or waiting until the conditions change. See **Applying the Trailer Reverse Aid Sticker** (page 452). Some trailers are not compatible with the sticker and camera system.

Note: *The system is designed to be used with the same trailer connection every time you choose the trailer from the touchscreen. When using a different drawbar (tow ball mount) or a different pin hole on drawbars with more than one, connecting the drawbar to your vehicle affects the trailer position and you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration process.*

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Super Duty

WHAT IS TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE

Trailer reverse guidance provides views and graphics on the touchscreen to help you steer your vehicle when you backup a trailer.

HOW DOES TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE WORK

Trailer reverse guidance uses a sensor attached to the trailer to detect the trailer angle relative to the towing vehicle and provides instructions, graphics and camera views on the touchscreen.

Note: Trailer reverse guidance only works with conventional trailers and couplers and on cars with a 360 degree camera system.

TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: This system does not automatically brake your vehicle. This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. If you do not apply the brakes when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle or other objects.

Note: The system is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always be aware of your vehicle and trailer combination, and the surrounding environment.

Note: The system does not detect or prevent your vehicle or trailer from making contact with obstacles in the surrounding environment.

Note: The front end of your vehicle swings out when changing the direction of the trailer.

Note: In certain conditions, the trailer could turn faster or the trailer angle could increase more than anticipated. Always monitor the clearance between the trailer and vehicle and the surroundings.

SETTING UP TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE FOR A CONVENTIONAL TRAILER

CONFIGURING THE TRAILER

You must configure a trailer in the system to use trailer reverse guidance. This is a one-time setup process and the trailer information is saved in the system for the next time you use that trailer.

The system only works with conventional trailers. It does not work with other types including fifth-wheel and gooseneck. The following illustration shows examples of conventional trailers on the left-hand side.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Super Duty

Note: Trailer reverse guidance camera views are available with no trailer setup. However, complete functionality including graphics and automatic view switching is enabled by setup. Setup is required to enable trailer backup assistance.

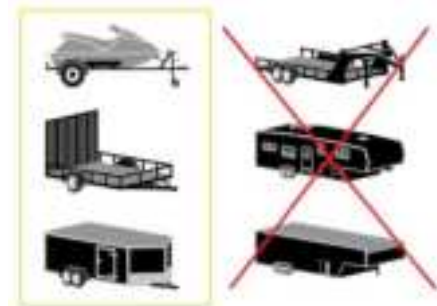


Make sure that the trailer and your vehicle are in line with each other. You can do this by putting the transmission in drive (D) and pulling straight forward.

Configuring the Trailer in the Touchscreen

1. Shift to reverse (R).
2. Press the camera menu view button.
3. Press the trailer view icon.
4. Press Add Trailer.
5. Follow the directions on the touchscreen to enter the trailer name and trailer type, then proceed to the sensor setup.

TRAILER SENSOR INSTALLATION



Positioning the Trailer

Hitch the trailer to your vehicle and connect the electrical wiring harness. Check to make sure that the wiring is working. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 408).



Park your vehicle and hitched trailer on a level surface.

For best results, make sure that your trailer rides level with the ground when you hitch your vehicle. See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 408).

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Super Duty



A trailer sensor kit is provided with applicable vehicles. If you require additional trailer sensor kits, see your authorized dealer.

Refer to the instructions included with your trailer sensor for detailed information regarding installation.

Note: Make sure the arrows on the sensor housing are facing up. Mount the sensor to a vertical part of the trailer that pivots when you turn your vehicle. Do not mount to a stationary surface such as the truck side of the trailer hitch.

Note: To set up a trailer with a sensor, install the sensor on the trailer and plug the connector into the socket on your bumper prior to configuring the trailer. Trailers that were set up with a sensor still require the sensor to function.

CALIBRATING THE SYSTEM

Calibrating the system requires driving forward and turning left or right. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to complete the calibration process.



Note: To calibrate the system, you need an area where you can safely drive forward and turn left or right. An open parking lot is an ideal place to perform the calibration.

Note: Keep the steering wheel straight when instructed to by the touchscreen. If the steering wheel is in a turned position during this instruction, the calibration pauses.

Note: During calibration, the system determines the trailer length. The system supports trailer lengths of 1.83–6.1 m distance from the hitch point to the center of the axle or axles. The system is designed to work with drawbars (tow ball mounts) that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 26–43 cm when installed. Do not use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function.

Note: The touchscreen shows if you are going too slow or fast. Calibration pauses if the speed is outside the required range of 4–15 km/h.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Super Duty

Note: You need to complete at least a 90° turn, and longer trailers could require a 180° turn. Camera trailer tracking requires the system to locate the hitch ball as well as determine the trailer length. Some trailers could require you to drive straight then turn multiple times before calibration completes. The touchscreen provides instructions and notifies you when calibration completes.

Note: Do not calibrate the system at night. The calibration process may not be completed, or the system may not work as expected.

SWITCHING TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE ON AND OFF

Shift into reverse (R), press the rear camera menu view button to expand the menu, press the trailer icon and use the touchscreen to select the connected trailer.

Note: If the trailer was connected just prior to turning the system on, you may need to drive forward to initialize the system. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to activate the system.

USING TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE VIEWS

Up to six camera views could be available when using trailer reverse guidance. Use the view that helps you the most when reversing your vehicle and trailer.



360° camera view. Shows a 360° view on the right-hand side of the touchscreen with a rear camera view on the left-hand side of the touchscreen.



Rear view camera view. Shows your trailer hitch or what is directly behind your vehicle.



Trailer AUX camera view. Shows a rear view camera image of what is behind your trailer.

Note: This view also provides a picture-in-picture view.



Trailer reverse guidance view. Shows you a view of the sides of your truck and the trailer. In auto mode, this view moves as the trailer moves so that you do not have to adjust the camera as you turn. Left and right arrows let you see other camera views.



Straight backup mode. Shows which way to turn your steering wheel to keep the trailer straight.

Use this view when you want to keep your trailer completely in line with your truck.

Note: This view also provides a picture-in-picture view.

Note: It may be necessary to shift your vehicle into drive (D), pull forward and straighten out the vehicle and trailer before engaging straight backup mode.



Picture-in-picture view. Shows a main view and a secondary view when in trailer AUX camera view.

Note: Picture-in-picture is on by default and cannot be switched off.



Swap. Press to swap between picture-in-picture views.



This takes you back to the 360° camera system and out of the trailer reverse guidance feature.



Auto. Press to return to auto view.

Note: Auto mode is the default setting.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Super Duty

Hitch Angle Graphic

The hitch angle graphic shows a small representation of your truck and trailer with visual feedback to help you monitor the trailer. The graphic shows two different colored lines for the trailer hitch angle. A black line shows you where your trailer is in relation to your vehicle. The white line represents the amount the trailer can turn based on steering wheel position.

The graphic shows a yellow and red zone for the hitch angle to warn you of a high angle condition that could require you to pull forward to reduce the hitch angle. The angle limits for each zone vary based on the trailer length.

The yellow zone indicates you are approaching the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. When the trailer enters this zone, it is more difficult to reduce the trailer turn when backing up. It may be necessary to put your vehicle back into drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position.

The red zone indicates you have exceeded the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Immediately stop reversing. Put your vehicle into drive (D) and pull forward until the trailer is no longer in the red zone.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Super Duty

TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Detecting trailer Please wait...	Displays when the system turns on and is initializing.
Trailer Reverse Guidance System is not available	A condition exists that prevents the system from turning on. If the message continues to display, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer Reverse Guidance Driving required to initialize steering Press OK to exit	The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully enable the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 40 km/h for approximately 5 minutes.
Stop now. Deactivated by trailer angle.	Displays when you exceed the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get your vehicle and trailer back to an in-line position, then activate the system by selecting the connected trailer and following the instructions on the touchscreen. If this message consistently displays, you may need to repeat the trailer setup and calibration. Delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup and calibration process.
Trailer Reverse Guidance Trailer not detected Refer to Owner's Manual Press OK to exit	Displays when the system does not detect the sensor. Check the sensor connection, check that there is no damaged wiring between the connector and sensor and check that there is only one sensor connected.
Trailer Reverse Guidance Trailer not detected Drive forward to initialize Press OK to exit	Displays when your vehicle has not moved after the trailer sensor is connected or extended operation below 1 km/h. Drive forward above 3 km/h to initialize the system.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Super Duty

TRAILER REVERSE GUIDANCE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the trailer not reverse straight?

- The road conditions, such as road camber and road slope, could affect how straight the system can reverse. You can compensate for the trailer drifting to the right or left by slowly turning the knob until the trailer is following your desired path and then holding the knob in that position.
- Other factors, such as the hitch connection or trailer suspension, could affect how straight the system can reverse the trailer. You can compensate for the trailer drifting to the right or left by slowly turning the knob until the trailer is following your desired path and then holding the knob in that position.
- The sensor could be incorrectly installed. Make sure the sensor is correctly installed.

What does it mean if the system pauses during calibration?

- There could be steering input or trailer movement during the straight drive portion of the calibration process.

What does it mean if the system displays that it is not available?

- There could be a subsystem that the system uses that is not correctly operating. If the system continues to display it is not available, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- There could be a battery voltage issue. Make sure the battery is correctly charged. If the system continues to display it is not available, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

What does it mean if the system displays that driving is required to initialize steering?

- The steering system needs to learn internal parameters to fully turn on the feature. Drive your vehicle straight forward above 40 km/h for approximately 5 minutes.
- Your vehicle is new, there is a battery voltage issue or you have serviced the steering system.

What does it mean if the system requires you to pull forward to initialize?

- This occurs when the vehicle has not moved during the current key cycle after you connect and select the trailer in the touchscreen, or you operate the system at speeds below 1 km/h for an extended period of time. Drive forward above 3 km/h and the system indicates when it initializes.

What does it mean if the trailer is at its maximum angle or the system deactivated by trailer angle?

- You are at the maximum controllable trailer angle for the system. Place your vehicle in drive (D) and pull forward to get the truck and trailer back to an in-line position.
- The trailer could need to be recalibrated. Check that the correct trailer is selected in the touchscreen. Verify the sensor is installed according to the instructions included in the sensor kit and check that the drawbar and the trailer dimensions are within the allowed range. Then, delete the trailer from the system and repeat the setup process to calibrate the trailer.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Super Duty

- The drawbar or the trailer dimensions are outside of the supported range. The system is designed to work with drawbars that have a license plate to hitch ball center measurement of 23–46 cm when installed. The system is designed to work with trailers that have a hitch point to the center of the axle or axles measurement of 1.85–10.05 m. Do not attempt to use drawbars or trailers that have a length outside of this range as the system performance degrades and could cause improper system function.
- The sensor could be incorrectly installed. Make sure the sensor is correctly installed.

What does it mean when the system tells you to take control of the steering wheel?

- You have touched the steering wheel when the system is steering. Avoid touching the wheel during system operation.
- You have exceeded the maximum speed for the feature. The system is no longer steering the vehicle and you must take over steering.
- The system does not detect the trailer. The system is no longer steering the vehicle and you must take over steering.
- An internal condition for system operation is not met that requires your vehicle to return to manual control of the steering.

Why does the system not detect a sensor?

- There could be an issue with the connection. Make sure that the 12-way connector is fully inserted into the 12-way socket, that the red rubber seal is not visible when the connector is fully inserted and that the wiring harness sensor connection is fully inserted at the trailer sensor.
- The wiring harness could be damaged. Check for damaged wiring between the 12-way connector and the trailer sensor.
- There could be multiple sensors connected to your vehicle. Make sure only one sensor is connected at a time.
- The sensor could be incorrectly installed. Make sure the sensor is installed on a vertical surface with the arrows pointing straight up.

What does it mean if the system remains on one message for an extended time during calibration when setting up the system with the sensor?

- The trailer length could be outside the allowed range. The system is designed to work with trailers that have a hitch point to the center of the axle or axles measurement of 1.85–10.05 m.
- The road surface could be too rough or bumpy. Try calibrating the system on a smoother road surface, such as an open parking lot.
- The sensor could be incorrectly installed. Make sure the sensor is installed on a vertical surface with the arrows pointing straight up.

Trailer Reverse Guidance - Super Duty

What does it mean if the system does not detect a trailer when configured with a sensor?

- Verify that you properly connected the sensor. See **Trailer Sensor Installation** (page 441). Repeat calibration on a different route if you have verified sensor installation.

Off-Road Driving

BASIC OFF-ROAD DRIVING TECHNIQUES

Off-road Driving Hints

Before taking your vehicle off-roading, perform a basic inspection to make sure your vehicle is in good working condition.

We recommend that you always use at least two vehicles while off-roading. The buddy system helps make sure that help is close at hand should a vehicle become stuck or damaged. It is also wise to take supplies such as a first aid kit, water, tow strap, cell phone with you.

The following are hints for safe off-road driving:

- Steer, brake and accelerate in a smooth controlled manner. Avoid jerky, unsteady movements.
- Look ahead on your route noting upcoming obstacles, or any other factors that may indicate a change in available traction and adjust the vehicle speed and route accordingly.
- If the front or rear suspension is bottoming out, or you encounter excessive contact with the skid-plates, reduce the vehicle speed to avoid potential damage to your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use vehicle communication, such as, turn signals, brake lights, and hazard flashers to alert other drivers of what you intend to do next, and of obstacles that could cause potential vehicle damage.

- Always keep available ground clearance in mind and pick a route that minimizes the risk of catching the underside of the vehicle on an obstacle.
- When negotiating low speed obstacles, applying light brake pressure in conjunction with the throttle helps prevent your vehicle from jerking and allows you to negotiate the obstacle in a more controlled manner. Using four-wheel drive low (4L) will also help with this.

Crossing Obstacles

- Review the path ahead before attempting to cross an obstacle. It is best if you view the obstacle from outside your vehicle so that you have a good understanding of terrain conditions both in front of and behind the obstacle.
- Approach obstacles slowly.
- If you cannot avoid a large obstacle such as a rock, choose a path that places the rock directly under the tire rather than the undercarriage of your vehicle. This helps prevent damage to your vehicle.
- Cross ditches and washouts at a 45° angle, allowing each wheel to independently cross the obstacle.

Climbing A Hill



WARNING: Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

Off-Road Driving

- Always attempt to climb a steep hill along the fall line of the slope and not diagonally.
- If the vehicle is unable to make it up the hill, DO NOT attempt to turn back down the slope. Place the vehicle in low range and slowly back down in reverse.
- When descending a steep slope, select low gear and engage hill descent control. Use the accelerator and brake pedals to control your descent speed.

Note: Hill descent control is functional in reverse and should be used in this situation.

Note: Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. You could lose traction, slip sideways or a possible vehicle roll over.

Driving Over Rocks and Gravel

Never attempt to straddle a rock that is large enough to strike your axles or undercarriage. Leave a generous gap between your vehicle and other vehicles to minimize the risk of damage. Avoid dust clouds as they reduce visibility.

DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE AT HIGH SPEEDS - RAPTOR

If you plan on using your vehicle for severe, high speed off-road use, we recommend the following:

- Equipping your vehicle with the safety equipment appropriate for off-road recovery.
- Using personal safety equipment, including a certified helmet and approved neck restraint device.
- Doing a low speed observance run in unfamiliar areas to become aware of any obstacles that you could encounter.

The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused by driving your vehicle beyond its capabilities, or in extreme off-road conditions. Damage can include but is not limited to the following: skid plates, shock guards, running boards and exterior finishes, as well as a bent, cracked or broken body, frame and chassis components.

Note: Driving your vehicle off-road at high speeds will require an alternative maintenance schedule.

OFF-ROAD DRIVING AIDS - RAPTOR

Selecting an Off-Road Drive Mode

Using the appropriate drive mode increases your vehicle's control. See **Drive Mode Control** (page 284).

Using Four-Wheel Drive

Your vehicle has a four-wheel drive system that offers various modes to help you optimize traction on any off-road surface. See **Four-Wheel Drive** (page 252).

Using the Cameras Off-Road

Use the 360 degree camera to enhance your off-road experience. See **360 Degree Camera** (page 335).

Using the Rear Differential Lock

When engaged, the rear differential lock provides additional traction to your vehicle by forcing the two rear wheels to turn at the same speed.

Note: Rear differential lock is only available when the vehicle is in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L). See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 269).

Off-Road Driving

Using Trail Control

Trail Control provides you the ability to maneuver the vehicle without using the throttle and brake pedals.

The system controls acceleration and braking in difficult off-road environments, which allows you to focus on steering. See **Trail Control** (page 313).

Trail Control Performance:

- Manages wheel slip to maximize traction.
- Provides braking to maximize traction in descents.

Using Trail One Pedal Drive (if Equipped)

Trail one pedal drive allows you to accelerate and brake using only the accelerator pedal.

Use this when driving over large obstacles, such as rocks or logs, to help maintain a constant vehicle speed.

In four-wheel drive high (4H), the system offers lift pedal braking and auto hill hold functionality.

Note: *Trail one pedal drive is only available when the vehicle is in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L).*

AFTER DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE OFF-ROAD



WARNING: After off-road use, before returning to the road, check the wheels and tires for damage. Off-road use may cause damage to your wheels and tires that can lead to tire failure, loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: Always re-inflate tires to recommended tire pressures before the vehicle is operated on-road. The recommended pressure is located on the tire label or safety certification label, located on the B-pillar, inside the driver's door.

After driving off-road check for damage to your vehicle and, if necessary, have your vehicle fixed as soon as possible. Inspect the underbody of your vehicle by checking tires, body structure, steering, suspension, and exhaust system for damage.

Check the radiator for mud and debris and clean as needed.

Remove accumulations of plants or brush. These things could be a fire hazard or hide damage to the fuel lines, brake hoses, and propeller shafts.

With the vehicle off, use a low pressure hose to wash away mud and fine debris. You may need to reach past the active grille shutters to remove larger debris.

If you experience unusual vibration after driving in mud, slush or similar conditions, check the wheels for impacted material. Impacted material can cause vibrations while driving and wheel imbalance. Remove the material to resolve the problem.

OFF-ROAD SCREEN (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN

The off-road screen displays information related to the vehicle's position and performance. It is designed to help you get the most out of your vehicle's off-road driving capabilities.

Off-Road Driving

HOW DOES THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN WORK

The off-road screen assists you by:

- Using the cameras to display what is directly in front of and behind your vehicle to help you avoid obstacles.
- Displaying information related to tire pressure if the vehicle is equipped with the tire pressure monitoring system.
- Displaying information related to drivetrain status.
- Allowing you to enable or disable a variety of on-demand features.

SWITCHING THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN ON AND OFF



Press and release the off-road switch to enable. Press and release again to disable.

The off-road screen can also be enabled and disabled through the touchscreen:

1. From the settings menu, press Controls. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Off-Road.

USING THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN - VEHICLES WITH: 360 DEGREE CAMERA, EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

The buttons on the side of the off-road screen allow you to turn the different features on and off.



- A Off-road camera views.
- B Exit off-road screen.
- C Information menu.
- D Off-road feature buttons.
- E Active guidelines.

Off-Road Feature Buttons

These buttons activate various off-road features. The features available depend on your vehicle's equipment.



Hill descent control. See **Hill Descent Control** (page 318).

Off-Road Driving



Trail control. See **Trail Control** (page 313).



Rear differential lock. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 269).



Trail turn assist. See **Trail Turn Assist** (page 316).



Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 322).



Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 322).

Off-Road Information On-Demand



Off-road status.



Pitch and roll.



Parking aid indicators. See **Parking Aid Indicators** (page 326).

Off-Road Camera (If Equipped)

The off-road camera provides a video image of the area in the front or rear of your vehicle. For available camera views, See **Switching the 360 Degree Camera View** (page 340).

Note: The camera feed may not automatically launch with the off-road screen. If this occurs, use the camera button to re-launch the camera feed. See **Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off** (page 339).

USING THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN - VEHICLES WITH: ANALOG REAR VIEW CAMERA/DIGITAL REAR VIEW CAMERA, EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

The buttons on the side of the off-road screen allow you to turn the different features on and off.



- A Exit off-road screen.
- B Off-road feature buttons.

Off-Road Feature Buttons

These buttons activate various off-road features. The features available depend on your vehicle's equipment.



Hill descent control. See **Hill Descent Control** (page 318).



Trail control. See **Trail Control** (page 313).

Off-Road Driving



Rear differential lock. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 269).



Trail turn assist. See **Trail Turn Assist** (page 316).



Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 322).



Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 322).

USING THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN - RAPTOR, VEHICLES WITH: 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The buttons on the side of the off-road screen allow you to turn the different features on and off.



- A Off-Road camera views.
- B Exit off-road screen.

- C Information menu.
- D Off-road feature buttons.
- E Active guidelines.

Off-Road Feature Buttons

These buttons activate various off-road features. The features available depend on your vehicle's equipment.



Trail control. See **Trail Control** (page 313).



Front differential lock. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 269).



Rear differential lock. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 269).



Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 322).



Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 322).

Off-Road Information On-Demand



Off-road status.



Pitch and roll.



Parking aid indicators. See **Parking Aid Indicators** (page 326).

Off-Road Camera (If Equipped)

The off-road camera provides a video image of the area in the front or rear of your vehicle. For available camera views, See **Switching the 360 Degree Camera View** (page 340).

Off-Road Driving

Note: The camera feed may not automatically launch with the off-road screen. If this occurs, use the camera button to re-launch the camera feed. See **Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off** (page 339).

USING THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN - SUPER DUTY, VEHICLES WITH: 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The buttons on the side of the off-road screen allow you to turn the different features on and off.



- A Off-road camera views.
- B Exit off-road screen.
- C Information menu.
- D Off-road feature buttons.
- E Active guidelines.

Off-Road Feature Buttons

These buttons activate various off-road features. The features available depend on your vehicle's equipment.



Front differential lock. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 269).



Hill descent control. See **Hill Descent Control** (page 318).



Trail control. See **Trail Control** (page 313).



Rear differential lock. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 269).



Trail turn assist. See **Trail Turn Assist** (page 316).



Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 322).



Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 322).

Off-Road Information On-Demand



Off-road status.



Pitch and roll.



Parking aid indicators. See **Parking Aid Indicators** (page 326).

Off-Road Camera (If Equipped)

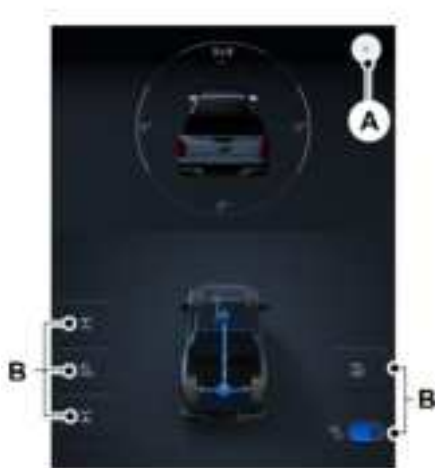
The off-road camera provides a video image of the area in the front or rear of your vehicle. For available camera views, See **Switching the 360 Degree Camera View** (page 340).

Off-Road Driving

Note: The camera feed may not automatically launch with the off-road screen. If this occurs, use the camera button to re-launch the camera feed. See **Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off** (page 339).

USING THE OFF-ROAD SCREEN - SUPER DUTY, VEHICLES WITH: ANALOG REAR VIEW CAMERA/ DIGITAL REAR VIEW CAMERA

The buttons on the side of the off-road screen allow you to turn the different features on and off.



- A Exit off-road screen.
- B Off-road feature buttons.

Off-Road Feature Buttons

These buttons activate various off-road features. The features available depend on your vehicle's equipment.



Front differential lock. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 269).



Hill descent control. See **Hill Descent Control** (page 318).



Trail control. See **Trail Control** (page 313).



Rear differential lock. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 269).



Trail turn assist. See **Trail Turn Assist** (page 316).



Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 322).



Parking aids. See **Parking Aids** (page 322).

Driving Hints

BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km. During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,600 km. Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Do not tow during the first 1,600 km.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.

- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

DRIVING IN COLD WEATHER

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C.

Driving on Snow and Ice



WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 292).

In snow and ice, all-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles but can still skid. When driving on snowy or icy roads, should you start to slide, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Driving Hints

On snow and ice, avoid suddenly applying power and avoid quick change of direction. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a stop.

Avoid sudden braking. An all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice. However, an all-wheel drive vehicle will not stop any faster, as braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident to road conditions.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep, fast flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Take extra care crossing any type of water. Do not drive into water unless necessary.

Maximum Wading Capability

The listed maximum wading capabilities are for standing water only. For flowing water, do not attempt to cross flowing water that is deeper than your vehicle's ground clearance.

When driving through deep water, do not exceed 7 km/h.

Note: Failure to follow the recommended speeds can result in vehicle damage.

Model	Maximum Wading Capability
4x2 Low Ride	600 mm
All Other Models	800 mm
Raptor	850 mm

Before Driving Through Water

- Determine the water depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the maximum wading capability.
- Determine if the water is flowing or not.
- Consider the bottom of the water's condition. On soft bottoms, the vehicle sinks in, effectively increasing the water level on the vehicle. Make sure to consider this when determining the depth of water. Be aware that obstacles and debris may be beneath the water's surface.
- Determine exit points that are downstream of your entry point to allow for drifting. If there are other vehicles ahead, wait until they have left the water. Unsettled water can make a safe passage more challenging.

When driving too fast in water or through deep water, the engine, transmission, transfer case, axles, electrical components or vehicle interior could ingest water. Muddy waters can reduce the cooling system effectiveness by depositing debris into the radiator. The vehicle warranty does not cover water damage.

Driving Through Standing Water

Note: Keep the doors fully closed during the water crossing.

1. Start very slowly when entering, then build momentum. Avoid splashing water any more than is necessary.
2. Proceed with a constant slow speed lightly pressing on the accelerator.

Note: As the water depth increases, reduce your vehicle speed to avoid potential vehicle damage.

3. Ease off the accelerator as you reach the other side to diminish the front wave.

Driving Hints

4. Apply the accelerator slowly and as necessary to climb out of the other side

Note: *Tread lightly and avoid damage to the environment.*

Never stop or shut a vehicle off when crossing deep water unless your vehicle ingested water into the engine air intake. If the engine stalls, do not attempt to restart it.

Driving Through Flowing Water

Note: *Keep the doors fully closed during the water crossing.*

High currents even in shallow water can wash the dirt out from around your tires or push your vehicle across slippery rocks or surfaces. Never attempt to cross flowing water that is deeper than your vehicle's ground clearance. Even in low currents your vehicle's body surface area can be pushed downstream and out of control. Do not cross any body of water that is fast flowing and rising, wait for the flow rate to reduce.

1. Start very slowly when entering, then build momentum.

Note: *Cross flowing water at an angle heading slightly upstream.*

2. Proceed with a constant slow speed lightly pressing on the accelerator.

Note: *As the water depth increases, reduce your vehicle speed to avoid potential vehicle damage.*

3. Ease off the accelerator as you reach the other side to diminish the front wave.
4. Apply the accelerator slowly and as necessary to climb out of the other side

Note: *Tread lightly and avoid damage to the environment.*

Driving Through Mud



WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 55 km/h. The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

After Driving Through Water

As soon as it is safe to do so, check the brakes, horn, lights, and steering wheel to confirm those systems are properly functioning.

Vehicles used to cross water regularly should be periodically inspected for signs of water ingestion in all of the vehicle's fluids. If water is found inside your vehicle fluids, service your vehicle or see an authorized dealer.

FLOOR MATS



WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Driving Hints



WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

If the driver side floor mat is not securely fastened, remove it, and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Do not drive with a loose floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*



Crash and Breakdown Information

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 5 m away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. Never attempt to extinguish an electric vehicle fire or move a vehicle that is on fire.
4. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries.



WARNING: All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery



WARNING: Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of approximately 0°C (+32°F).



WARNING: The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.



WARNING: A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.



WARNING: Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.

Crash and Breakdown Information



WARNING: Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.



WARNING: Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.



WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

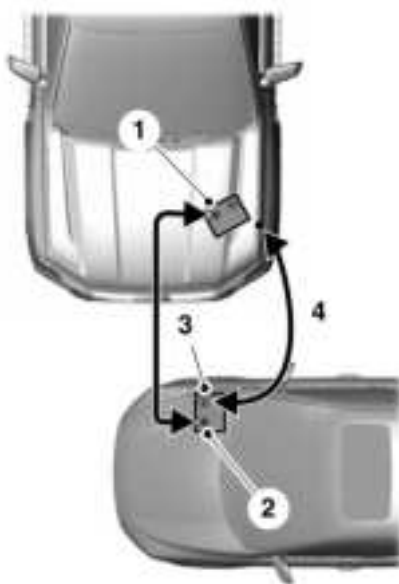
JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

Connecting the Jumper Cables



WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

Note: If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.



1. Unlatch the red cover to access the positive (+) terminal. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.

Crash and Breakdown Information

Note: Do not use the hood latch as a negative (-) connection point. This could cause springs in the latch to burn and prevent the hood from operating correctly.



Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 RPM and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, or the unlock button on the remote control, or the panic button on the remote control or turn your vehicle off and on twice to switch the system off.

Note: The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

Crash and Breakdown Information

POST IMPACT BRAKING

HOW DOES POST IMPACT BRAKING WORK

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

POST IMPACT BRAKING LIMITATIONS

Post impact braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

OVERRIDING POST IMPACT BRAKING

You can override post impact braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

POST IMPACT BRAKING INDICATORS



It flashes when a post impact braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT - EXCLUDING: FX4+ / WILDTRAK



WARNING: Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.



WARNING: Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.

Crash and Breakdown Information



WARNING: Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.



A. Front recovery hooks.

Note: Your vehicle's front towing point configuration may be slightly different.

Note: Do not apply a load to the recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.

Before using recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.
- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

Crash and Breakdown Information

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT - FX4+ /WILDTRAK



WARNING: Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.



WARNING: Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.



WARNING: Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.



Note: Your vehicle's front towing point configuration may be slightly different.

Note: Do not apply a load to the recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.

Before using recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.



A. Front recovery hooks.

Use the provided under-seat tool to remove the recovery hook covers:

Crash and Breakdown Information

- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT - RAPTOR



WARNING: Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.



WARNING: Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.



WARNING: Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.



A. Front recovery hooks.

Use the provided under-seat tool to remove the recovery hook covers:



Note: Your vehicle's front towing point configuration may be slightly different.

Note: Do not apply a load to the recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.

Before using recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.

Crash and Breakdown Information

- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.
- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.



WARNING: Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.



A. Rear recovery hooks.

Note: Do not apply a load to the recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.

Before using recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT - RAPTOR



WARNING: Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.



WARNING: Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.

Crash and Breakdown Information

- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.
- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT - SUPER DUTY



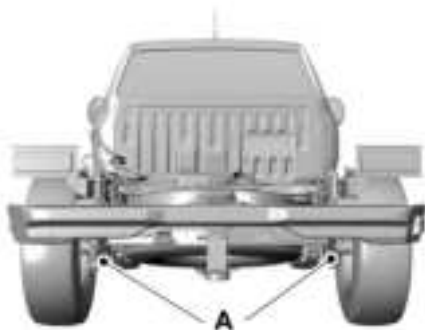
WARNING: Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.



WARNING: Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.



WARNING: Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.



A. Rear recovery hooks.

Note: Do not apply a load to the recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.

Before using recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.

Crash and Breakdown Information

- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Vehicle damage could occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Front-wheel and rear-wheel drive vehicles must have their designated drive wheels off the ground regardless of towing direction. Use tow dollies to prevent damage to the transmission.

All-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicles require that all wheels be off the ground using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission and drive system.

Note: You need to switch on the ignition to unlock the steering.

Note: Make sure you check the steering column before towing. It could lock if the battery is dead.

FAIL-SAFE COOLING

WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

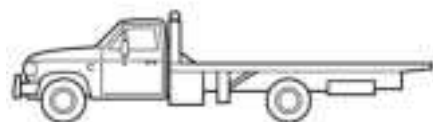
The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.



If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

Crash and Breakdown Information

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

Note: *Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.*

DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED



WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Towing Your Vehicle

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.

Note: If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.

Only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Note: If you need to exceed a speed of 20 km/h and a distance of 20 km while towing, you must lift the drive wheels clear of the ground.

Note: It is recommended you do not tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 20 km/h or farther than 20 km.

EMERGENCY TOWING



WARNING: When towing your vehicle you must select neutral (N).

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Use the manual park release procedure. Failure to do so may result in damage to the transmission.
- Maximum speed is 56 km/h.
- Maximum distance is 80 km.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission, do not use individual axle carriers. All wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

Do not tow the vehicle with all wheels on the ground while in 4WD mode. Tow your vehicle with all wheels off the ground or all wheels on the ground while the vehicle is in 2WD mode in an event of a breakdown or mechanical failure of the transmission.

Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.



WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

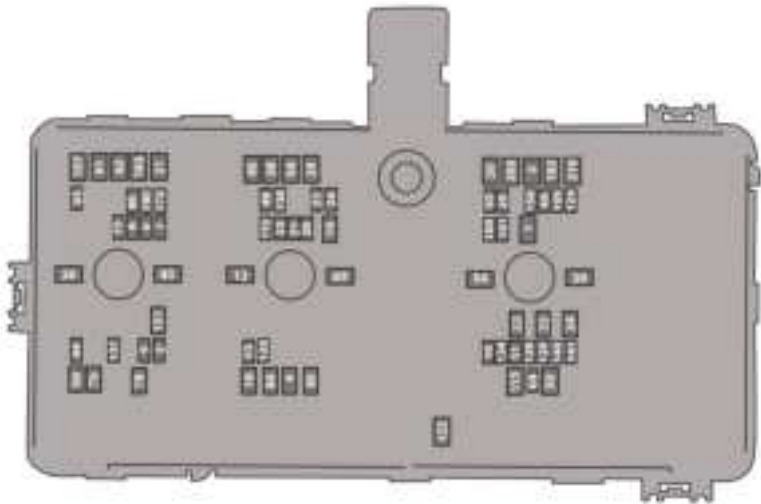


ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	30 A	Body control module 1.
2	20 A	Crankcase ventilation heater (2.0L, 3.0L diesel).
3	30 A	Body control module 2.
4	30 A	Fuel pump.
5	—	Not used.
6	25 A	Powertrain control module power.
7	30 A	Exhaust gas recirculation bypass valve (3.0L diesel). Variable camshaft timing (3.0L gas). Camshaft position sensor (3.0L gas).

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
		Vacuum solenoid valve (2.0L).
8	20 A	Heater positive crankcase ventilation valve (3.0L diesel). Variable oil pump (3.0L diesel). Coolant pump (3.0L gas). Turbocharger bypass valve (3.0L gas). Auxiliary coolant pump motor (2.0L, 3.0L). Active grille shutter motor. Cooling fan relays. A/C clutch solenoid. Auxiliary water pump. Aspirate valve control.
9	20 A	Ignition coils (3.0L gas) Glow plug control module (diesel). Particulate matter sensor (diesel). Nitrous oxide sensor (diesel). 4x4 relay coil.
10	20 A	Fuel volume control valve (3.0L diesel). Transmission control module.
11	—	Not used.
12	—	Not used.
13	40 A	Front blower motor.
14	20 A	Automatic transmission fluid pump (diesel).
15	—	Not used.
16	—	Not used .
17	—	Not used.
18	30 A	Starter motor.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
19	—	Not used.
20	—	Not used.
21	10 A	Automatic headlamp leveling.
22	10 A	Not used (spare).
23	10 A	Anti-lock brake system module.
24	10 A	Powertrain control module. Glow plug control module (2.0L , 3.0L diesel) Electronic power steering assist.
25	20 A	Driveline control module. Rear camera.
26	15 A	Transmission control module. Transmission oil pump. Automatic transmission fluid pump (diesel).
27	—	Not used.
28	60 A	Anti-lock brake system valves.
29	60 A	Anti-lock brake system pump.
30	40 A	Left-hand power seat.
31	40 A	Right-hand power seat.
32	20 A	Power point - first row.
33	20 A	Power point - rear console.
34	20 A	Rear cargo power outlet - bedliner power point.
35	—	Not used.
36	60 A	Not used (spare).
37	—	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
38	40 A	Heated seats control module.
39	15 A	Vehicle dynamics module (3.0L gas).
40	30 A	Not used (spare).
41	—	Not used.
42	30 A	Trailer tow brake module.
43	—	Not used.
44	10 A	Brake switch.
45	—	Not used.
46	—	Not used.
47	—	Not used.
48	30 A	Rear heated seat module - right.
49	—	Not used.
50	40 A	Heated backlite.
51	15 A	Not used (spare).
52	—	Not used.
53	15 A	Rear electronic differential lock.
54	40 A	Driveline control module.
55	30 A	Trailer tow park lamp.
57	—	Not used.
58	15 A	Trailer tow backup lamp.
59	—	Not used.
60	—	Not used.
61	—	Not used.
62	—	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
63	—	Not used.
64	—	Not used.
65	—	Not used.
66	10 A	Not used (spare).
67	—	Not used.
68	20 A	Steering column lock.
69	30 A	Wiper motor.
70	—	Not used.
71	—	Not used.
72	—	Not used.
73	—	Not used.
74	—	Not used.
75	—	Not used.
76	—	Not used.
77	—	Not used.
78	50 A	Front windscreen defrost left-hand.
79	50 A	Front windscreen defrost right-hand.
80	—	Not used.
81	—	Not used.
82	—	Not used.
83	50 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater 1 (3.0L diesel).
84	50 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater 2 (3.0L diesel).
85	50 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater 3 (3.0L diesel).

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
86	15 A	Selective catalytic reduction system heater 2 (2.0L, 3.0L diesel).
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.
89	—	Not used.
90	—	Not used.
91	40 A	Trailer tow module.
92	10 A	Accessory.
93	5 A	Not used (spare).
94	20 A	Not used (spare).
95	—	Not used.
96	—	Not used.
97	—	Not used.
98	—	Not used.
99	—	Not used.
100	20 A	Left-hand headlamps.
101	20 A	Right-hand headlamps.
102	—	Not used.
103	—	Not used.
104	—	Not used.
105	—	Not used.
106	—	Not used.
107	30 A	Trailer tow module - battery charger.
108	—	Not used.
109	20 A	Amplifier.
110	30 A	Trailer tow auxiliary.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
111	—	Not used.
112	—	Not used.
113	—	Not used.
114	—	Not used.
115	30 A	Power roller shutter.
116	—	Not used.
117	—	Not used.
118	—	Not used.
119	—	Not used.
120	10 A	Water in fuel heater relay coils (diesel).
121	40 A	Water in fuel heater (diesel).
122	30 A	Transfer case control module.
123	—	Not used.
124	5 A	Rain sensor.
125	10 A	Not used (spare).
126	—	Not used.
127	—	Not used.
128	—	Not used.
129	—	Not used.
130	—	Not used.
131	—	Not used.
132	—	Not used.
133	—	Not used.
134	25 A	Not used (spare).
135	—	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
136	30 A	Rear heated seat module - left.
137	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system.
138	—	Not used.
139	5 A	Not used (spare).
140	5 A	USB smart charge port - rear console.
141	5 A	USB smart charge port - top.
142	—	Not used.
143	—	Not used.
145	—	Not used.
146	—	Not used.
147	—	Not used.
148	—	Not used.
149	—	Not used.
150	—	Not used.
151	—	Not used.
152	—	Not used.
153	—	Not used.
154	—	Not used.
155	—	Not used.
156	—	Not used.
157	—	Not used.
158	10 A	Not used (spare).
159	—	Not used.
160	—	Not used.
161	—	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
162	—	Not used.
163	—	Not used.
164	—	Not used.
165	—	Not used.
166	—	Not used.
167	—	Not used.
168	—	Not used.
169	—	Not used.
170	—	Not used.
171	—	Not used.
172	—	Not used.
173	—	Not used.
174	—	Not used.
175	—	Not used.
176	—	Not used.
177	—	Not used.
178	—	Not used.
179	15 A	Selective catalytic reduction system heater 1 (diesel).
180	10 A	Selective catalytic reduction system heater 3 (diesel).
181	—	Not used.
182	60 A	Drive door module.
183	60 A	Passenger door module.
192	—	Not used.
202	60 A	Body control module B+.
210	30 A	Body control module start-stop.

Fuses

BATTERY FUSE BOX

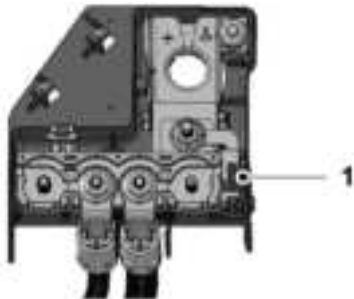
LOCATING THE BATTERY FUSE BOX



ACCESSING THE BATTERY FUSE BOX

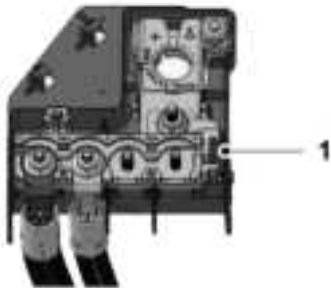


IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BATTERY FUSE BOX - 3.0L ECOBOOST™, 2.0L DIESEL



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	3 A	Battery Monitoring System.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BATTERY FUSE BOX - 3.0L DIESEL



Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	3 A	Battery Monitoring System.

BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	10 A	Inverter. Door lock switch. Power window switch.
3	7.5 A	Wireless accessory charging module.
4	—	Not used.
5	—	Not used.
6	10 A	Alarm horn. Battery backup sounder.
7	10 A	Not used (spare).
8	5 A	Telematics modem.
9	5 A	Combined sensor module.
10	—	Not used.
11	—	Not used.

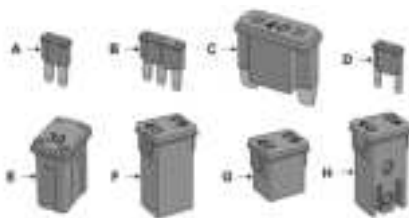
Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
12	7.5 A	Climate control module. Gear shift module. Enhanced central gateway module.
13	7.5 A	Steering column control module. Instrument panel.
14	15 A	Not used.
15	15 A	On board diagnostic connector. SYNC.
16	—	Not used.
17	7.5 A	Trailer brake switch. Adaptive front lighting module.
18	7.5 A	Auxiliary switch. Tachograph.
19	5 A	Headlamp switch pack.
20	5 A	Ignition switch. Push button switch.
21	5 A	Not used (spare).
22	5 A	Not used (spare).
23	30 A	Not used (spare).
24	30 A	Not used (spare).
25	20 A	Not used (spare).
26	30 A	Not used (spare).
27	30 A	Not used (spare).
28	30 A	Not used (spare).
29	15 A	Display. Tachograph.
30	5 A	Brake switch.
31	10 A	Terrain management switch.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
		Integrated control module. Driver status monitor module. Radio frequency receiver module.
32	20 A	Audio control module.
33	—	Not used.
34	30 A	Run/start relay.
35	5 A	Not used (spare).
36	15 A	Parking aid module. Rear seat module.
37	20 A	Electrochromatic mirror. Heated steering wheel control module.
38	30 A	Power window switch.

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.

G J Case Low Profile.

H Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

- If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

- If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

- You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Vehicle Inspection Guide

BRAKE SYSTEM INSPECTION

Disc brake pads should be checked to confirm that each disc brake pad lining has a suitable amount of friction material for safe use.

Inspection and Verification

Note: *Disc brake pads must be replaced as an axle set. Do not replace an individual disc brake pad or disc brake pads on one brake assembly only.*

1. Using a suitable tool, such as an inspection mirror, look into the inspection hole on the back of each disc brake caliper.
2. Inspect the inner and outer disc brake pads to confirm each disc brake pad lining measures 1.5 mm thick or more.

Note: *See your authorized dealer if any disc brake pad lining is under 1.5 mm thickness.*

Inspect each brake caliper and anchor bracket for corrosion, wear, or damage.

Wear Adjustment

Automatic adjustment of disc brake friction material during brake application occurs as follows:

- The piston slides within its bore to a new position, taking up the brake pad wear.
- The brake caliper moves on its guide pins, taking up the brake pad wear.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.



WARNING: Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



WARNING: Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



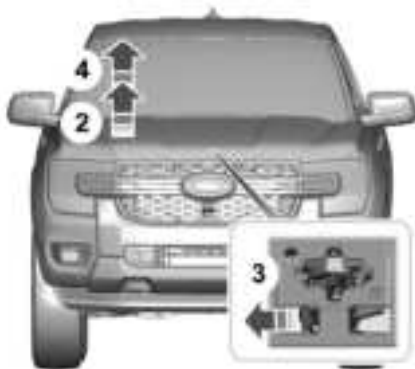
WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood

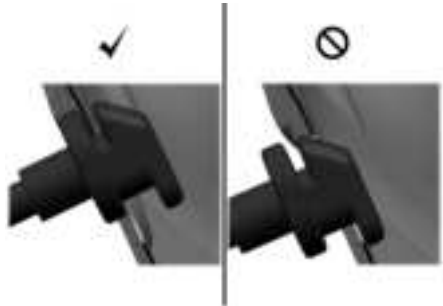


1. Pull the hood release lever.



2. Slightly lift the hood.
3. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.

Maintenance



4. Open the hood and support it with the prop rod.

5. Make sure you fully engage the prop rod end cap with the hood.

Closing the Hood



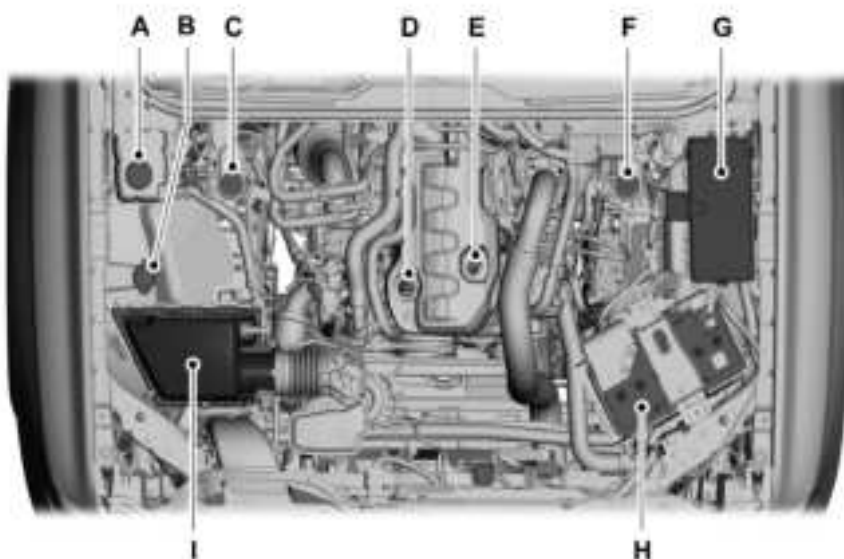
WARNING: Make sure that you fully latch the hood before driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Fully stow the prop rod prior to lowering the hood.
2. To close, lower the hood and make sure that it fully latches.

Note: *Make sure the hood is closed completely.*

Maintenance

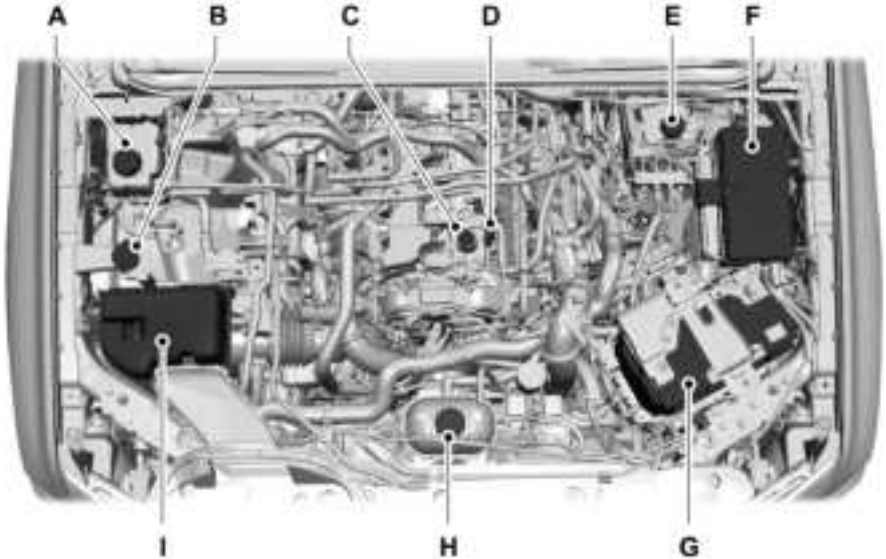
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L DIESEL



- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 525).
- B Windshield washer fluid. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 91).
- C Brake fluid reservoir - Right-hand drive. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 292).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 516).
- E Engine oil dipstick. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 515).
- F Brake fluid reservoir - Left-hand drive. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 292).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 494).
- H Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 534).
- I Air filter. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 523).

Maintenance

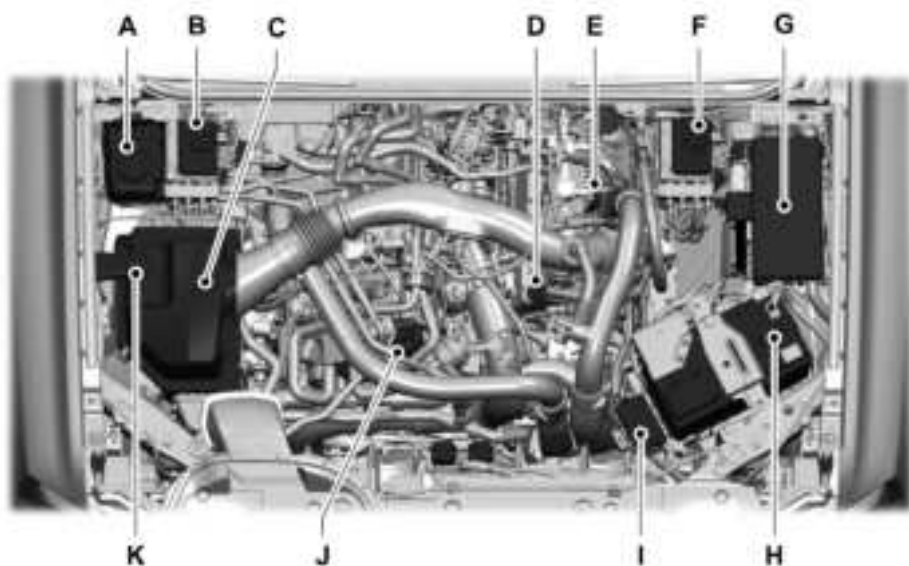
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.3L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 525).
- B Washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 91).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 516).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 515).
- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 292).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 494).
- G Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 534).
- H Secondary coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 525).
- I Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 523).

Maintenance

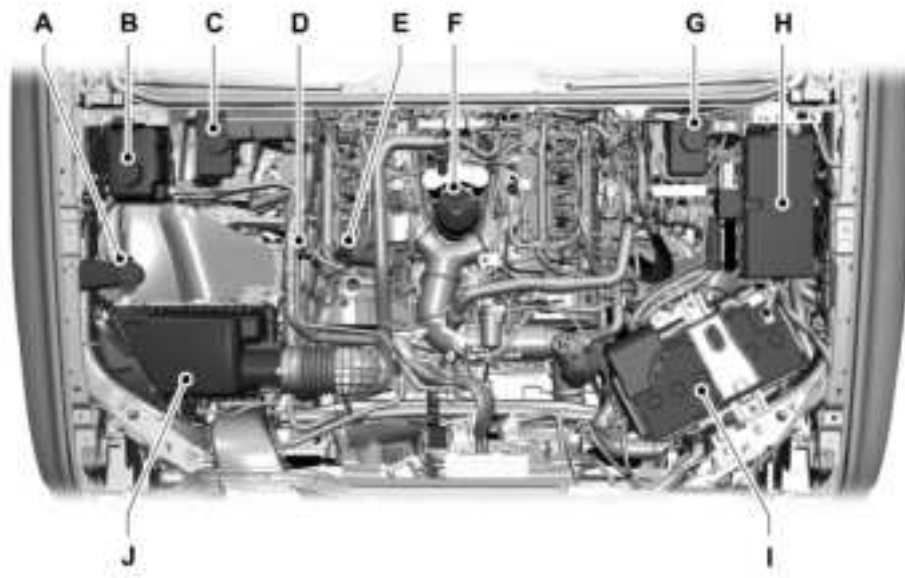
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.0L ECOBOOST™



- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 525).
- B Brake fluid reservoir - Right-hand drive. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 292).
- C Air filter. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 523).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 516).
- E Engine oil dipstick. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 515).
- F Brake fluid reservoir - Left-hand drive. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 292).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 493).
- H Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 534).
- I Engine compartment accessory fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 493).
- J Oil filter.
- K Windshield washer fluid. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 91).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 3.0L DIESEL



- A Windshield washer fluid. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 91).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 525).
- C Brake fluid reservoir - Right-hand drive. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 292).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 515).
- E Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 516).
- F Oil Filter.
- G Brake fluid reservoir - Left-hand drive. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 292).
- H Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 493).
- I Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 534).
- J Air filter. See **Engine Air Filter** (page 522).

Maintenance

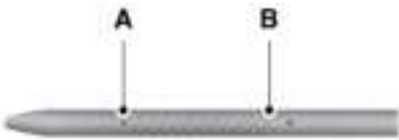
ENGINE OIL

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 2.0L DIESEL



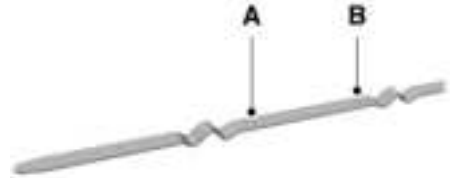
- A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™/3.0L ECOBOOST™



- A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - 3.0L DIESEL



- A Minimum.
B Maximum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.

Note: If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.

Maintenance

7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km.

Note: Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.

Note: If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADDING ENGINE OIL



WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Engine Oil** (page 516).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Under certain conditions the vehicle's intelligent oil life monitor may determine your oil requires replacement prior to your general service. Should this occur it is recommended you replace your oil within two weeks or 800 km of being alerted.

Your authorized dealer will be able to advise you whether only an engine oil and filter change is recommended or whether you should complete your general service inclusive of oil and oil filter.

RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR - GASOLINE

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select Vehicle Maintenance.
3. Select Oil Life.
4. Press and hold the OK button until the system reset conformation appears.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L DIESEL

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.

Maintenance

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oil of the recommended viscosity grade that meet the requirements for ACEA A5/B5.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	8.1 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-D, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-30 engine oil defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 1 L of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.



ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Maintenance

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.3 L

Materials

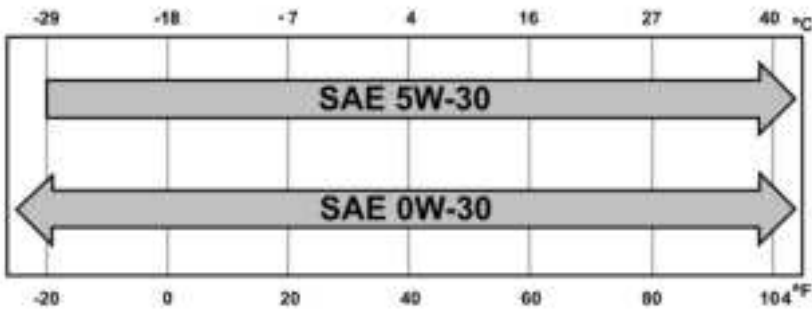
Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30	WSS-M2C971-A1

Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance, we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -30°C or below.

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C973-A1



Maintenance

Note: If you use your vehicle regularly above the altitude of 1,524 m and under the temperature of -20°C, it is recommended to use the alternative engine oil.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 3.0L ECOBOOST™

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.62 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30	WSS-M2C961-A1

Maintenance

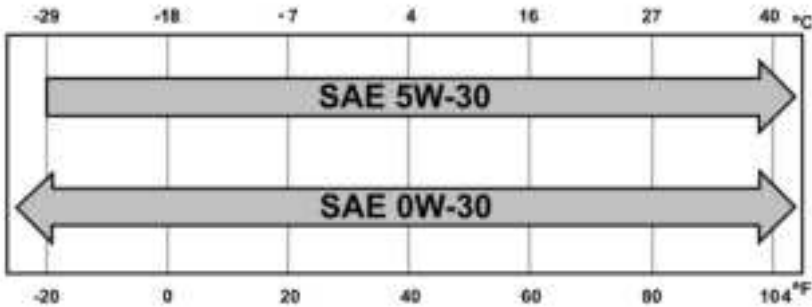
Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance,

we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches -30°C or below.

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C963-A1



Note: If you use your vehicle regularly above the altitude of 1,524 m and under the temperature of -20°C, it is recommended to use the alternative engine oil.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 3.0L DIESEL

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.

- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oil of the recommended viscosity grade that meet the requirements for ACEA A5/B5.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Maintenance

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	7,9 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-D, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-30 engine oil defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 1 L of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

ENGINE OIL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Change Engine Oil Soon.	Displays when the engine oil life is becoming depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Oil Change Required.	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted. Have the engine oil changed as soon as possible.
Oil Level Low Add Oil.	Displays when the engine oil level is too low. Add engine oil as soon as possible. See Adding Engine Oil (page 516).

Maintenance

ENGINE AIR FILTER

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.3L ECOBOOST™, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)



WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Change the air filter element at the correct service interval.

Use the correct specification air filter element.

Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle warranty.



1. Remove the fastener and the air intake duct.
2. Remove the screws from the air filter housing cover.
3. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover. Take care to avoid other surrounding components while lifting.
4. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
5. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and that you have a good seal.

Maintenance

6. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover.
7. Install the air filter housing cover.
8. Tighten the fasteners to 2.8 Nm.
9. Install the air intake duct, tighten the fastener to 11 Nm.

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 3.0L ECOBOOST™



WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Change the air filter element at the proper intervals.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed.

Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element could result in severe engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

Note: When servicing the air filter, do not allow foreign material to enter the air induction system. The engine is susceptible to damage from even small particles.



1. Release the two clips securing the air filter housing cover to the housing.
2. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - DIESEL



WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Change the air filter element at the correct service interval.

Use the correct specification air filter element.

Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Maintenance



1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter cover to the housing.
2. Unclip the wiring loom from the air-cleaner lid.
3. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover. Take care to avoid other surrounding components while lifting.



4. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
5. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and that you have a good seal.

6. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover.
7. Install the air filter housing cover.
8. Refit the wiring loom clip to the air filter housing.
9. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.

DRAINING THE FUEL FILTER WATER TRAP - DIESEL



WARNING: Do not drain the water-in-fuel separator while the engine is running. Failure to follow this warning may result in fire, serious injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Your vehicle's fuel system has a fuel filter and water separator to remove water from the fuel.

If the water in fuel indicator illuminates when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, shut off the engine, then drain the fuel and water separator.

Note: *Allowing water to stay in the fuel system after the water in fuel indicator illuminates could result in extensive damage or failure of the fuel injection system.*

The fuel water trap is beneath the frame rail under the driver side of the vehicle.

Make sure the ignition is off before performing the following steps.

Maintenance



A Front of Vehicle.

1. Loosen the drain plug approximately one and a half turns.
2. Allow the water to drain.
3. Tighten the drain plug until you feel a strong resistance.
4. Switch the ignition on for 30 seconds, then switch the ignition off. Repeat twice.
5. Start the engine.
6. Check for leaks.

Note: The water in fuel warning lamp turns off after approximately two seconds with the engine running.

Note: The in-tank pump will turn off automatically after approximately 30 seconds.

COOLANT

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C and -37°C. Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Maintenance

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Coolant** (page 528). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Coolant** (page 528). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Coolant** (page 528).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.

Maintenance

5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 490).

Maintenance

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.

3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L DIESEL

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could reduce vehicle performance or cause component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Bi-turbo vehicles without engine heater.	9 L
Single turbo automatic transmission vehicles without engine heater.	8.4 L
Single turbo manual transmission vehicles without engine heater.	8 L
Vehicles with engine heater.	9.6 L
Vehicles with fuel operated heater.	9.7 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

Note: Yellow coolant may become darker over time. This is normal.

Maintenance

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	9.9 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

Note: Yellow coolant may become darker over time. This is normal.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 3.0L DIESEL

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Vehicles with engine heater.	10 L
Vehicles with fuel operated heater.	10.1 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

Note: Yellow coolant may become darker over time. This is normal.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Maintenance

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 3.0L, GASOLINE

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could reduce vehicle performance or cause component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	10.7 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

Note: Yellow coolant may become darker over time. This is normal.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

CHANGING THE FUEL FILTER - DIESEL

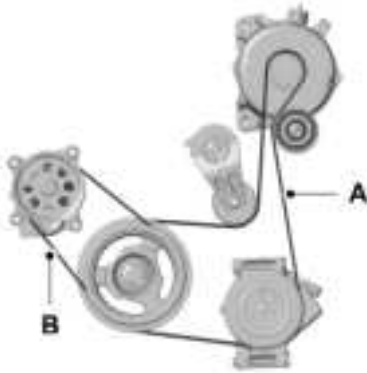
Your fuel filters must be changed at the correct service interval or when you see the low fuel pressure message appear. Refer to scheduled maintenance for the correct service interval.

CHANGING THE FUEL FILTER - GASOLINE

Replace the fuel filter on your vehicle at the specified service interval. Refer to your scheduled maintenance information.

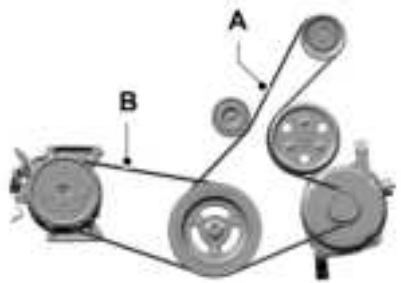
Maintenance

DRIVE BELT ROUTING OVERVIEW - 2.0L DIESEL



- A. Long drive belt is on the first pulley groove closest to the engine.
- B. Short drive belt is on the second pulley groove farthest from the engine.

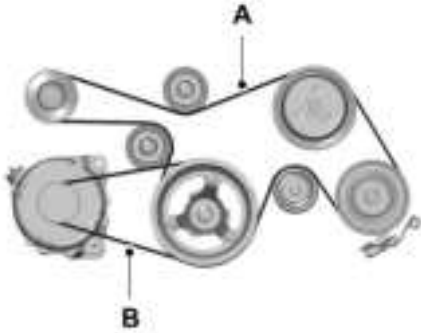
DRIVE BELT ROUTING OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST™



- A. Long drive belt is on the first pulley groove closest to engine.
- B. Short drive belt is on the second pulley groove farthest from engine.

Maintenance

DRIVE BELT ROUTING OVERVIEW - 3.0L ECOBOOST™



- A. Long drive belt is on the first pulley groove closest to engine.
- B. Short drive belt is on the second pulley groove farthest from engine.

DRIVE BELT ROUTING OVERVIEW - 3.0L DIESEL



12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**

Maintenance



WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.



WARNING: For vehicles equipped with a 12V battery vent tube, always properly reconnect the vent tube to the battery after disconnecting. Failure to follow this instruction could allow harmful gasses to enter the vehicle cabin, which could cause personal injury or death.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.

- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

Maintenance

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - EXCLUDING: PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 509).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

Note: *There may be additional components that need to be removed or disconnected before you can safely remove the battery from your vehicle. For specific guidance on which components may need to be addressed, it is best to contact your dealer for detailed information.*

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This allows the system to store diagnostic and adaptive tables. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.

Note: *Before removing batteries with a vent tube, disconnect and secure the tube.*

6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 108).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that you correctly install the battery cable terminals, battery terminal covers, battery vent tube, battery securing clamp and battery cover.*

Maintenance

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

The main battery is located in the engine compartment, while the auxiliary battery is typically found under the left front seat or in the rear, depending on the vehicle model.

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

Note: *There may be additional components that you need to be remove or disconnect before you can safely remove the battery from your vehicle. For specific guidance on which components you may need to address, it is best to contact your dealer for detailed information.*

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the tops of both the main and auxiliary batteries clean and dry, and check to make sure the battery cables are tightly fastened to the terminals. If any corrosion is present on either battery or their terminals, remove the cables and clean them with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend disconnecting the negative battery cable terminal from the main battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period. Additionally, consider disconnecting the auxiliary battery to prevent any potential drain.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace either battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.



A.	Main Battery.
B.	Auxiliary Battery. Located under the left front seat.

Removing the Main Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect the auxiliary battery along with the main 12V battery under the hood when disconnecting, removing or replacing the main battery.
5. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.

Maintenance

6. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.

Note: *Before removing batteries with a vent tube, disconnect and secure the tube.*

7. Remove the battery securing clamp.
8. Remove the battery.

Removing the Auxiliary Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This allows the system to store diagnostic and adaptive tables.*

Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

4. Disconnect the main battery when disconnecting, removing or replacing the auxiliary battery.
5. Position the left hand front seat to the rear.
6. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
7. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.

Note: *Before removing batteries with a vent tube, disconnect and secure the tube.*

8. Remove the battery securing strap.
9. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 108).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

Replace the battery with one that has the same specifications.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that you correctly install the battery cable terminals, battery terminal covers, battery vent tube, battery securing clamp and battery cover.*

RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

Maintenance

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check the charging system.	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system service soon.	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system service now.	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
Battery state of charge low.	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery.	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical Power Active Some Features Turned Off See Manual.	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

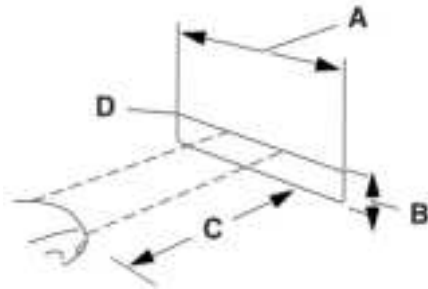
Maintenance

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, contact an authorized dealer to check and realign your headlamps.

Headlamp Aiming Target



- A 15 feet (4.5 m).
- B Center height of lamp to ground (measurement B is relative to vehicle height).
- C 35 feet (10 m).
- D B height minus 100 mm.

1. Park your vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 10 m away.
2. Measure height from the center of the low beam to the ground and, from this measurement, deduct 4 in (10cm) and add a reference line 15 ft (4.5 m) wide on vertical wall or screen at this height. A piece of masking tape works well.

Note: There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp low beam light.

3. Switch on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light hits the wall.



4. On the wall or screen, observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge toward the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, adjust the beam so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a screwdriver to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise or clockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp.
6. Repeat Steps 3 through 7 to adjust the other headlamp.
7. Close the hood and switch off the headlamps.

Maintenance

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is not adjustable.

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and provide quality bulb illumination time.

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Center high mounted cargo lamp. Vehicles with pickup box.	LED	LED
Daytime running lamp (If equipped).	Low Series - W21/5W Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 21W Mid and High Series - LED
Front position lamp.	Low - W21/5W (lamps with DTRL) Low - W5W (lamps without DTRL) Mid and High - LED	Low - 5W Mid and High - LED
Front turn signal.	Low and Mid Series - PY21W High Series - LED	Mid and Low Series - 21W High Series - LED
Front fog lamp (If equipped).	Low Series - H11 Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 55W Mid and High Series - LED
Headlamp low beam.	Low Series - H7 Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 55W Mid and High Series - LED
Headlamp high beam.	Low Series - HB3 Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 65W Mid and High Series - LED
License plate lamp.	Low Series - W5W Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 5W Mid and High Series - LED
Puddle lamp.	LED	LED
Rear cargo box lamp.	LED	LED

Maintenance

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Rear turn signal.	Low and Mid Series - WY21W High Series - LED	Low and Mid Series - 21W High Series - LED
Rear lamp, stop lamp.	Low Series - W21/5W Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 21W Mid and High Series - LED
Rear position lamp.	Low Series - W21/5W Mid and High Series - LED	Low Series - 5W Mid and High Series - LED
Reversing lamp.	Low and Mid Series - W16W High Series - LED	Low and Mid Series - 16W High Series - LED
Rear fog (If equipped).	Low and Mid Series - W21W High Series - LED	Low and Mid Series - 21W High Series - LED

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY

1. Make sure the headlamps and rear lamps are off.
2. Open the tailgate to access the rear lamp assemblies.



3. Remove the two bolts from the tail lamp assembly. Carefully pull the lamp assembly from the tailgate pillar.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A HEADLAMP BULB



WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Accessing and Replacing the Low Beam Headlamp Bulbs

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the scrivet from the modesty panel.

3. Remove the modesty panel section.



4. Remove the scrivet from the front fender and the hardware from the bolster.



5. Using a screwdriver loosen, but do not remove, the three screws by turning them two full turns.

Maintenance



6. Carefully slide the headlamp assembly forward approximately 30 mm, do not remove the headlamp. Be careful of the sharp fender edge, as it could damage the headlamp.



7. Rotate the low beam bulb cap counterclockwise and remove it from the vehicle.



8. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.
9. Place your hand behind the headlamp and push the retainer toward the lamp and down.
10. Move the bulb retainer away from the bulb and remove the bulb.



11. To install the bulb, reverse the removal steps.

Maintenance

Note: Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Handle the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Note: If the bulb is accidentally touched, clean it with rubbing alcohol before installing it.

Accessing and Replacing the High Beam Headlamp Bulbs

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Remove the scrivet from the modesty panel.
3. Remove the modesty panel section.



4. Remove the scrivet from the front fender and the hardware from the bolster.



5. Using a screwdriver loosen, but do not remove, the three screws by turning them two full turns.



6. Carefully slide the headlamp assembly forward approximately 30 mm, do not remove the headlamp. Be careful of the sharp fender edge, as it could damage the headlamp.

Maintenance



7. Reach into the space below the low beam socket.



8. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.
9. Rotate the high beam bulb socket counterclockwise and remove the high beam bulb.



10. To install the bulb, reverse the removal steps.

Note: Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Handle the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Note: If the bulb is accidentally touched, clean it with rubbing alcohol before installing it.

CHANGING A FRONT TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB



WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Changing a Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulb with Halogen Headlamps

1. Make sure the headlamps and the front turn signal lamps are off.
2. Remove the scrivet from the modesty panel.
3. Remove the modesty panel section.

Maintenance



4. Reach behind the headlamp assembly and rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly.
5. Remove the bulb from the socket.



6. To install the bulb, reverse the removal steps.

Changing a Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulb with Mid Level Headlamps

1. Make sure the headlamps and the front turn signal lamps are off.
2. Remove the scrivet from the modesty panel.
3. Remove the modesty panel section.



4. Rotate the low beam bulb cap counterclockwise and remove it from the headlamp assembly.



5. Reach behind the headlamp assembly and rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly.
6. Remove the bulb from the socket.

Maintenance



7. To install the bulb, reverse the removal steps.

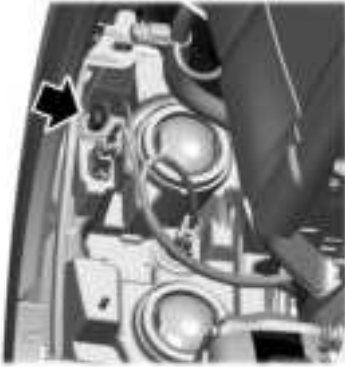
CHANGING A FRONT SIDE MARKER LAMP BULB

1. Rotate the steering wheel to the opposite side of the bulb needing replacement.



2. Remove the screws and push pins from the front of the wheel liner.
3. Pull the wheel liner back toward the tire to gain access to the bulb.

Maintenance



4. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.
5. Disconnect the bulb from the electrical connector.
6. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A FRONT FOG LAMP BULB

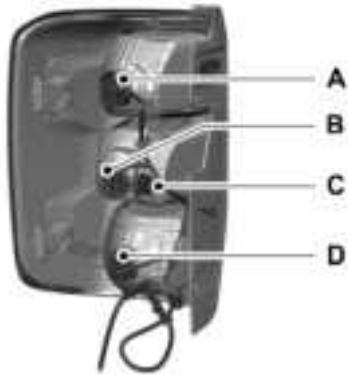


1. Make sure the fog lamps are off.

2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the fog lamp bulb.
3. Turn the bulb counterclockwise and remove it from the fog lamp.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REAR LAMP BULB

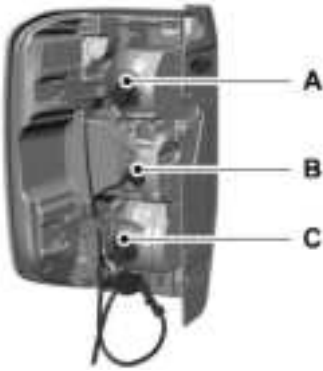
Low Series



A	Tail lamp and stop lamp bulb.
B	Turn signal bulb.
C	Reverse bulb.
D	Rear Fog lamp bulb. (If Equipped)

Maintenance

Mid Series



- A Turn signal bulb.
- B Reverse bulb.
- C Rear Fog lamp bulb. (If Equipped)

1. Remove the rear lamp assembly. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 541).
2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the rear lamp assembly.
3. Remove the bulb from the bulb socket.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Vehicle Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L DIESEL

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio - single turbo.	16.3:1
Compression ratio - Bi turbo.	15.8:1
Displacement.	1.996 L
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Diesel Compression Ignition
Required fuel.	Diesel

Vehicle Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.3L, PLUG-IN HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (PHEV)

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	10.0:1
Displacement.	2,261 cm ³
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.7 mm - 0.8 mm

Vehicle Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 3.0L ECOBOOST™

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	10.5:1
Displacement.	2,956 cm ³
Firing order.	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Required fuel.	Minimum 95 octane
Spark plug gap.	0.7 mm - 0.8 mm

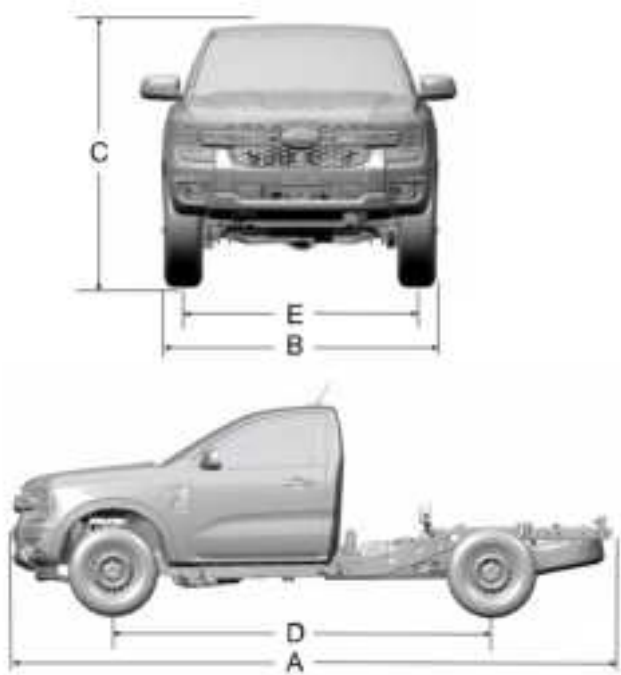
Vehicle Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 3.0L DIESEL

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	16:1
Displacement.	2.99 L
Firing order.	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system.	Diesel Compression Ignition
Required fuel.	Diesel

Vehicle Specifications

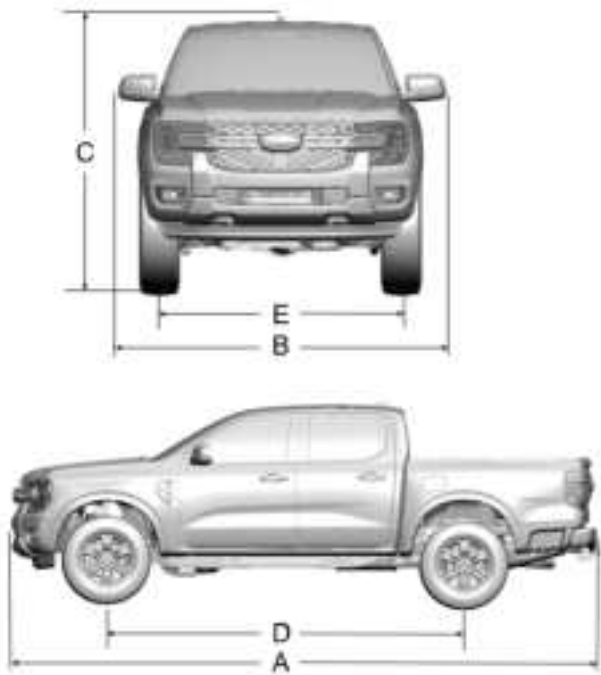
VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - CHASSIS CAB



Callout	Dimension Description	mm
A	Maximum length.	5,225 mm
B	Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,014 mm
C	Overall height.	1,884 mm
D	Wheelbase.	3,270 mm
E	Track width.	1,620 mm

Vehicle Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - DOUBLE CAB



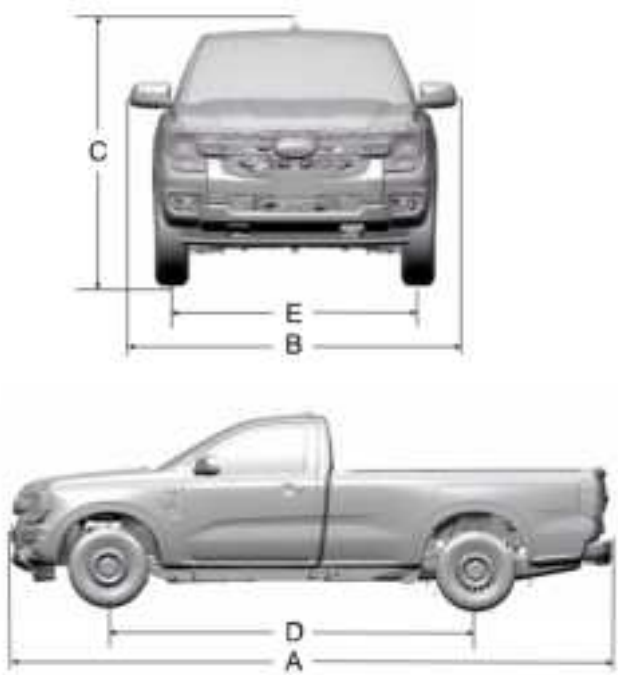
Callout	Dimension Description-base	mm
A	Maximum length.	5,370 mm
B	Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,208 mm
C	Overall height.	1,886 mm
D	Wheelbase.	3,270 mm
E	Track width.	1,620 mm

Vehicle Specifications

Callout	Dimension Description- Wildtrak/Tremor	mm
A	Maximum length.	5,370 mm
B	Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,208 mm
C	Overall height with Rack Pack.	1,932 mm
C	Overall height without Rack Pack.	1,916 mm
D	Wheelbase.	3,270 mm
E	Track width.	1,650 mm

Vehicle Specifications

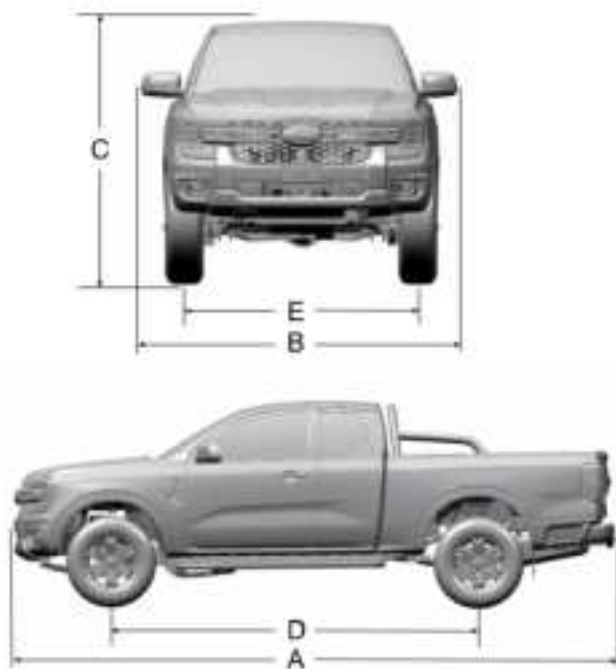
VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - SINGLE CAB



Callout	Dimension Description	mm
A	Maximum length	5,370 mm
B	Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,208 mm
C	Overall height.	1,884 mm
D	Wheelbase.	3,270 mm
E	Track width.	1,620 mm

Vehicle Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - SUPERCAB



Vehicle Specifications

Callout	Dimension Description	mm
A	Maximum length including license plate and bracket.	5,370 mm
B	Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,208 mm
C	Mass in running order overall height.	1,874 mm
D	Wheelbase.	3,270 mm
E	Front track.	1,560 mm

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS - RAPTOR

Do not drive your vehicle through an automatic car wash due to the vehicle's tire width and track. Wash your vehicle by hand or by using a touchless car wash with no mechanical tracks on the floor.

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *Do not use chemicals or corrosive products, as they can compromise surfaces and damage critical systems of your vehicle.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

Vehicle Care

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: Do not apply a cleaning chemical to hot wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.

If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean hot wheel rims, wheel covers and wheel ornaments.

Note: Some car washes could damage wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.

Note: Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh acidic cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.

Note: Failure to properly clean the stainless steel lug nuts may result in a white, hazy finish, pitting, or an orange/brown rust appearance. Such damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below the windshield.

Note: If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

Note: Follow the manufacturer's instructions for using engine shampoo and degreaser.

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

High pressure water can damage stickers.

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa.
- Do not use water hotter than 23°C.

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Vehicle Care

Note: Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep the body and door drain holes free of packed dirt.

Rear suspension components and the complete underbody require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in coastal areas, dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

Note: If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the underbody, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

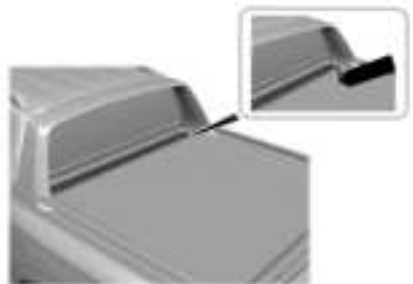
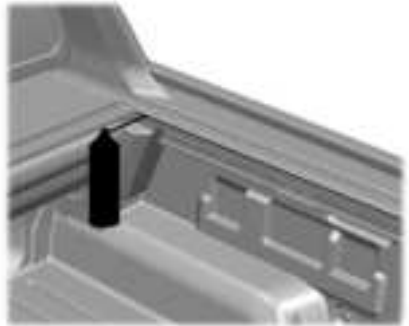
CLEANING THE ROLLER SHUTTER

(If Equipped)

If normal operation slows, becomes noisy or the power roller shutter incorrectly bounces back during travel, follow the outlined maintenance recommendations. Regular maintenance improves the smooth and correct operation of the roller shutter.

We recommend that you clean and lubricate the roller shutter as follows:

- Clean the seals, profiles and side rails using a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap water solution.
- Thoroughly dry the roller shutter prior to application of the lubricant.
- Lubricate the side rails and both canister end panels of the roller shutter regularly with silicone spray for a minimum of 5 seconds using a straw applicator directed into the corners between the top cover and main curtain profiles.



Vehicle Care

Note: Immediately after the lubricant has been applied, cycle the roller shutter open and closed as needed to help the lubricant spread throughout the system.

Note: For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Note: Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING LEATHER



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Rewax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

12 Volt Battery

- When storing your vehicle for longer than 30 days the battery state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend to disconnect the 12v battery to reduce system loads on the battery, or you can use a trickle charger for longer storage periods.
- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Storing Your Vehicle

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.
- To minimize flat spots on the tires, inflate all four tires to the recommended cold pressures listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle. When the vehicle is taken out of storage, reset the tire pressures as necessary to the recommended levels listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label or Tire Label affixed to your vehicle.

Note: *If you store your vehicle in a location with low ambient temperatures, follow the instructions for care of summer tires.*

Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake fully release.

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.

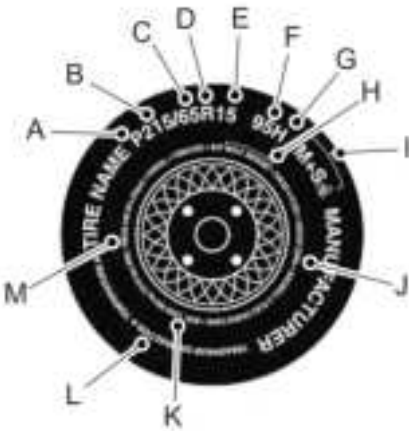
Wheel and Tire Information

LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures.

INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 130 km/h to 300 km/h. These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Wheel and Tire Information

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	130 km/h
N	140 km/h
Q	160 km/h
R	170 km/h
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
U	200 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h
Y	300 km/h

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. Tire Identification Number (TIN): A code which identifies manufacturing location and other information about the tire. It may include the letters "DOT" and be referred to as a DOT code. The last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The letters and numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. M+S or M/S: Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. Tire Ply Composition and Material

Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's

Wheel and Tire Information

recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position). The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. Load Range and Load Inflation

Limits: Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

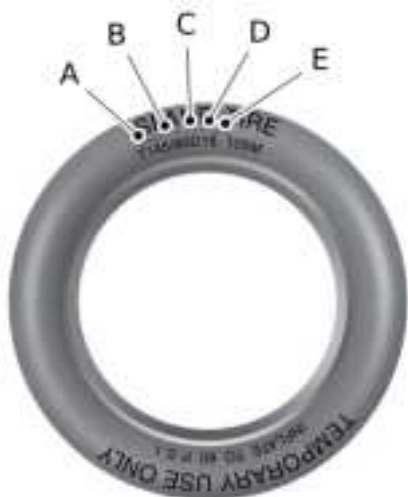
D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

Wheel and Tire Information



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. T: Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. 145: Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. 80: Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. D: Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. 16: Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 2.4 bar and for Metric tires 2.5 bar. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 2.9 bar. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1.6 km.

Wheel and Tire Information

***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position).

***B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

***Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



WARNING: For a mounting pressure more than 1.38 bar greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



WARNING: Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 3.66 m away from the wheel and tire assembly.



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



WARNING: When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 1.38 bar greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 3.66 m away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

Wheel and Tire Information

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Age



WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

USING SNOW CHAINS



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.



WARNING: If you choose to install snow tires on your vehicle, they must be the same size, construction, and load range as the original tires listed on the tire placard, and they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tires of different size or construction on your vehicle can adversely affect your vehicle's handling and braking, and may lead to loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

Wheel and Tire Information

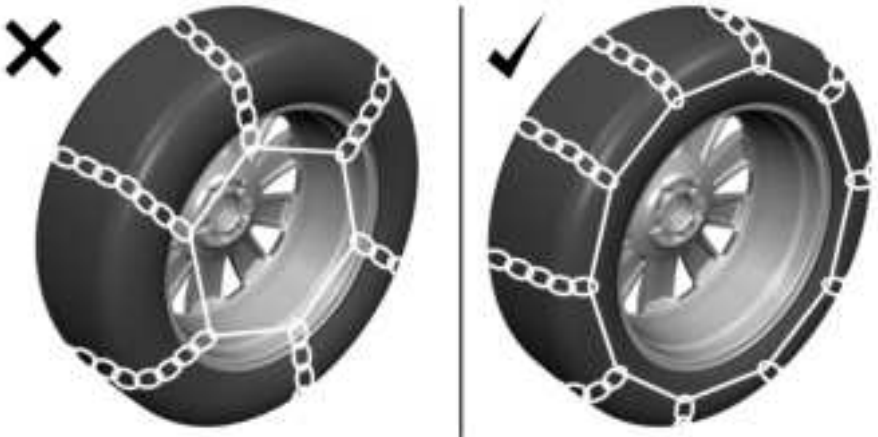
Only use snow chains on rear wheels. Install snow chains in pairs. Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Only use snow chains on tires sizes listed in the tire label/compliance certificate label. Only use S-class snow chains, 15mm chain links.

We recommend you use steel wheels of the same size and specification if snow chains are required because chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Purchase snow chains from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- When driving with snow chains do not exceed 50 km/h or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the snow chains rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and tighten them. If this does not work, remove the snow chains to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the snow chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use snow chains on dry roads.
- If a temporary spare wheel is mounted on your vehicle, do not use snow chains on the axle with the temporary spare wheel.



Use snow chains that fit against the sidewall of the tire to prevent the chains from touching the wheel rims or suspension. Refer to the previous illustration.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains, contact your authorized dealer.

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Check your tire pressure everyday before driving your vehicle.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 574).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven tread wear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door.

The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door latch post, or the door edge that meets the door latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven tread wear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

When temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 6°C or 10°F temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 7 kPa in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressure frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer.

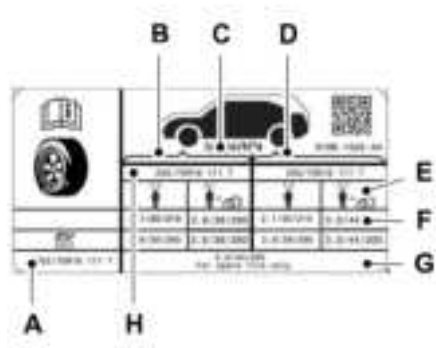
Tire Care

Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are located on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, including the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: Remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.



- A Spare wheel tire size.
- B Front tire pressure.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Tire size.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Eco		Full Load	Full Load
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
215/70R16 C 108/106 T	240	240	260	260	260	370
255/70R16 111 T	210	210	260	260	260	300
255/70R17 112 T	210	210	260	260	260	300
255/65R18 111 T	210	210	260	260	260	300

Tire Care

Tire Size	Normal Load		Eco		Full Load	Full Load
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
255/65R18 111H	210	210	260	260	260	300
255/55R20 110V	240	240	260	260	260	300
LT265/70R17 112/109T	210	210	260	260	260	300
255/65R17 114H	240	240	260	260	260	350
255/65R18 115H	210	210	260	260	260	350

Note: See the tire information label for applicable tire pressure and size.

Eco tire pressures are recommended for optimal fuel consumption.

Snow chains can be fitted on all of the above sizes on the rear axle only.

Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - RAPTOR



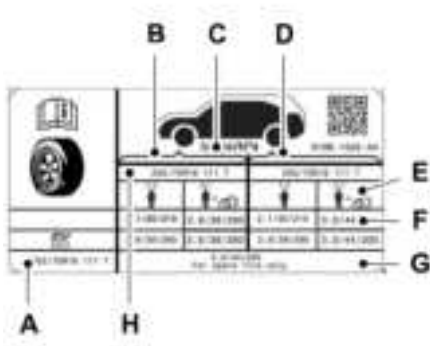
WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are located on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, including the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: Remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.

Tire Care



- A Spare wheel tire size.
- B Front tire pressure.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Tire size.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Eco		Full Load	Full Load
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
LT285/70R17 116/113S	250	250			250	280

Note: See the tire information label for applicable tire pressure and size.

Eco tire pressures are recommended for optimal fuel consumption.

Snow chains can be fitted on all of the above sizes on the rear axle only.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - SUPER DUTY



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame

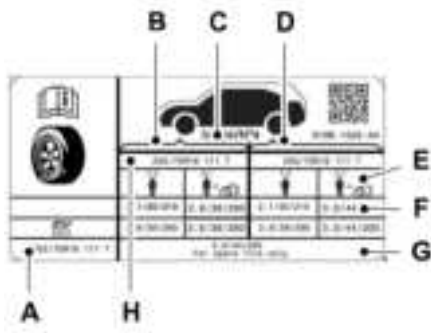
or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are located on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, including the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: Remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel well to check the tire pressure.

Tire Care



- A Spare wheel tire size.
- B Front tire pressure.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Tire size.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	Full Load
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	kPa	kPa	kPa	kPa
LT275/70R18 121/118S	280	280	280	450

Note: See the tire information label for applicable tire pressure and size.

Snow chains can be fitted on all of the above sizes on the rear axle only.

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

**WARNING:** Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire dismounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

Tire Care

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Age



WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.



WARNING: In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.



WARNING: You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

Safety Practices



WARNING: If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 55 km/h. The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you could eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This could further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid tread wear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer.

INSPECTING THE WHEEL VALVE STEMS

Check the valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that could permit air leakage.

TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

Note: *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Tire Rotation Diagram

Follow the diagram indicating the correct tire locations for rotating the tires.



Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

Note: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

Note: Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

Note: After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h for the warning indicator to turn off.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES- VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN



To view the current tire pressures, use the instrument cluster.

1. Using the steering wheel controls navigate to the main screen in the instrument cluster.
2. Select vehicle maintenance.
3. Scroll down to tire pressure to see pressure values.

Note: In some instances the tire pressure values can be seen in the center touchscreen.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES - VEHICLES WITH: 12 INCH SCREEN



To view the current tire pressures, use the instrument cluster.

1. Using the steering wheel controls navigate to the main screen in the instrument cluster.
2. Select vehicle maintenance.
3. Scroll down to tire pressure to see pressure values.

Note: In some instances the tire pressure values can be seen in the center touchscreen.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle may require different tire pressures in the front compared to the rear. In these cases, the system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

If the tires are rotated, you need to reset the system in order to relearn the positions of the tire pressure sensors. The system cannot tell which position a tire pressure sensor is in, and assumes you have set the tire pressures correctly.

Performing the Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Navigate to the tire monitor menu in the information display. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages** (page 584).
3. Press and hold the OK button until a confirmation message appears. If your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until a confirmation message appears.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (If Equipped)

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Tire pressure low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h before the light turns off.
Tire pressure monitor fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire pressure Sensor fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE - EXCLUDING: RAPTOR/SUPER DUTY

If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, firmly hold the steering wheel and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have the flat serviced as soon as possible to prevent damage to the system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions** (page 581). During repairing or replacing the flat tire, have the tire pressure monitoring system sensor inspected for damage.

Note: *The use of tire sealant could damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.*

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h.

If the spare wheel is different from the other fitted road wheels, it may have a warning label with the appropriate maximum speed limit. Drive cautiously when using a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

Full-size Dissimilar Spare Wheel With a Label on the Wheel

The label on the wheel states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only. Drive the shortest distance possible and have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible. If the dissimilar spare wheel or tire is damaged, it must be replaced.

Using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can compromise the effectiveness of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All wheel driving capability.

When driving with this type of a dissimilar spare wheel:

- Do not exceed the maximum speed as shown on the label.
- Do not load your vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the safety compliance label.
- Do not tow a trailer.
- Do not use snow chains on the end of your vehicle with the dissimilar spare.
- Do not use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Do not use a commercial car wash.

Full-size Dissimilar Spare Wheel Without a Label on the Wheel

You can replace the existing road wheel with the spare and continue to drive in the normal manner.

Changing a Road Wheel

Tire Change Procedure



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



WARNING: Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.



WARNING: The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

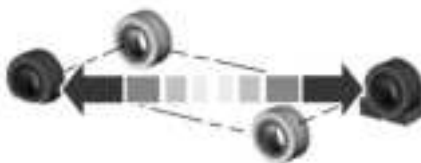


WARNING: If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake, and switch the vehicle off.



WARNING: It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm surface and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P). Set up a warning triangle.



Changing a Road Wheel

3. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

Note: *Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

Removing the Vehicle Jack and Tool Bag

The jack, wheel brace, and jack handle are located in the cab.

Note: *Not all cab configurations are available in all markets.*

Single Cab



1. Fold the left-hand side seatback forward.
2. Remove the locking strap and remove the tools.



1. Fold the right-hand side seatback forward.
2. Loosen the jack, remove the bolt and remove the jack.

Double Cab



1. Lift the release strap.
2. Lower the seatback.
3. Remove the bolt.

Changing a Road Wheel

4. Lift the jack from the foam block and remove the jack from the vehicle.



1. Pull the release strap out.
2. Lift the seat bottom up.
3. Use the tether strap to secure the seat cushion.
4. Locate tool bag and remove the securing straps.

Removing the Spare Tire



WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h.



1. Assemble the handle.

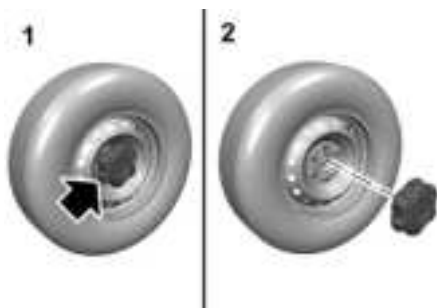


2. Insert the jack handle into the guide hole. Turn counterclockwise until the wheel rests on the ground, and there is slack in the cable.



3. Pass the bracket and cable through the wheel opening.

Changing a Road Wheel



4. Vehicles with steel wheels, remove the center cap by using the tool included. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



5. Vehicles with aluminum wheels, loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

Note: If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, drive the shortest distance possible.

Note: Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

Note: Using a dissimilar spare wheel or tire at any one wheel location can compromise the handling, stability and braking performance, comfort and noise.

Note: Avoid using four-wheel drive with the spare tire unless you are stuck.

Note: The spare wheel is located underneath the rear of the vehicle.

Note: Do not use power tools on the spare wheel winch input drive.

Removing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



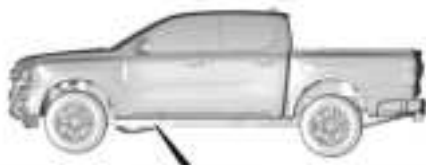
Note: No maintenance or additional lubrication of the jack should be required with normal use over the service life of your vehicle.

Note: Place the jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Note: Only use the jack on the specified jacking points and as close to the affected wheel as possible.

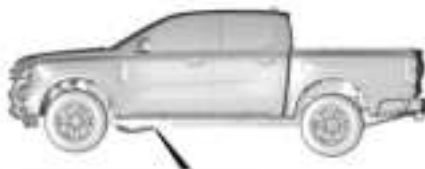
Changing a Road Wheel

Front Jacking Points Without Fuel Filter



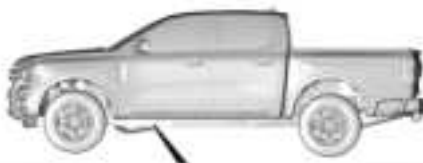
Changing a Road Wheel

Front Jacking Points With Fuel Filter With High-Rider



Changing a Road Wheel

Front Jacking Points With Fuel Filter With Low-Rider



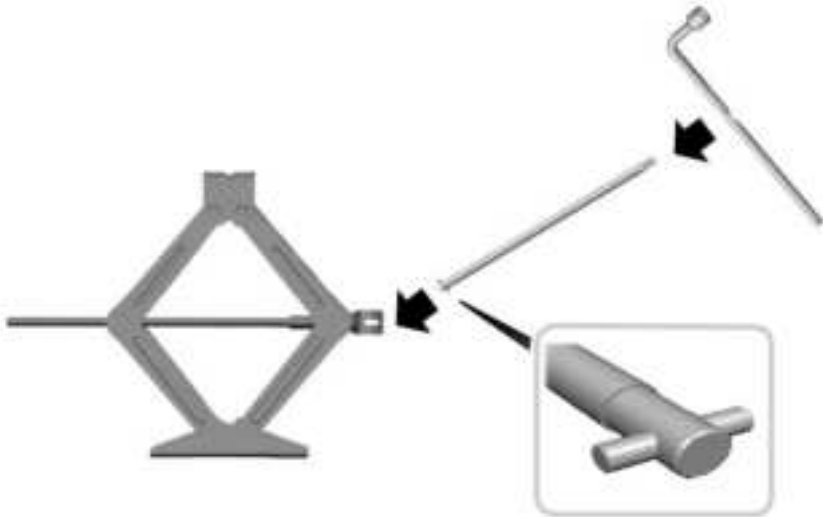
Changing a Road Wheel

Rear Jacking Points



1. Place the vehicle jack at the jacking point next to the tire you are changing.

Changing a Road Wheel

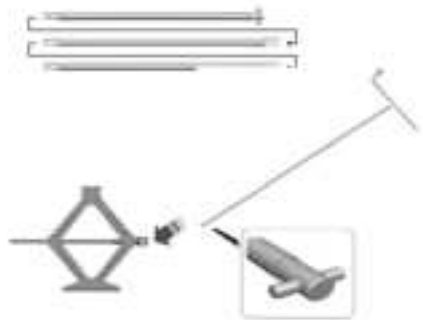


Note: When you are changing the front flat tire, connect the jack handle to the jack. Operate the jack handle with the wheel nut wrench.

2. Assemble the jack handle, including the required extension tubes depending on the position you are jacking, and turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.

Note: When changing a rear flat tire, fully extend the jack handle by connecting all the pieces.

Note: Before raising the vehicle, loosen but do not remove the wheel nuts.



Changing a Road Wheel

3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Use the locking wheel nut key to loosen the locking wheel nut where fitted.
5. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

Installing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. See an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.



WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.



WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

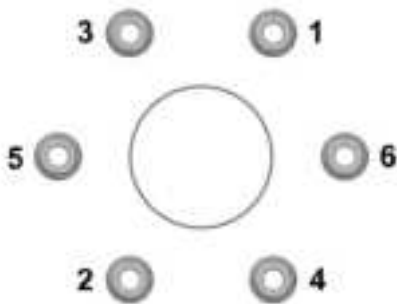


WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Note: Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.

Note: Make sure the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts and finger tighten.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



4. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
5. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheel Nuts** (page 616).

Stowing the Flat or Spare Tire

1. Lay the tire on the ground, near the rear of the vehicle, with the valve stem facing up.
2. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. If equipped, you may have to remove the wheel center cap prior to pushing the retainer through the center of the wheel. To remove the center cap, press it off with the jack tool from the inner side of the wheel. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.
3. Insert the handle into the guide hole and engage the winch.

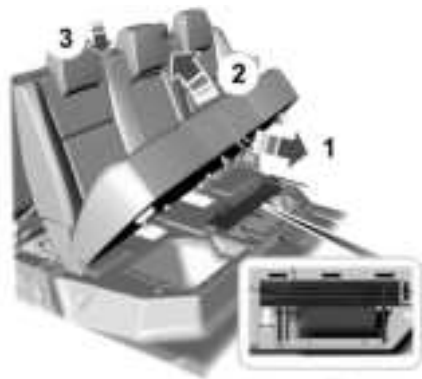
Note: Before stowing the tire in its final position make sure the tether cable is not pinched between the tire and the frame crossmember and it can be moved freely.

Changing a Road Wheel

4. Turn the swivel wrench clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The wrench becomes harder to turn and the spare tire winch ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to its maximum tightness. A clicking sound is heard from the winch indicating the tire is properly stowed.

Note: Tighten until a minimum of three clicks are heard. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame and is secure.

5. Carefully place all tools back in the tool kit bag.
6. Install the jack on the bracket and foam pad and secure the wing nut.
7. Place the tool bag in the original position.



8. Align the tool bag with the markings around the storage compartment then tighten the securing straps by pulling forward.
9. Unblock the wheels. Place the warning triangle back in the vehicle.

Note: Do not use power tools on the spare wheel winch input drive.

Note: Only use the spare tire carrier to stow the tire and wheel combination provided with your vehicle. Other tire and wheel combinations can cause the tire carrier to fail.

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE - SUPER DUTY

If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have the flat serviced by an authorized dealer to prevent damage to the system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions** (page 581). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the system sensor for damage.

Note: The use of tire sealant could damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies.

Note: The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h.

Changing a Road Wheel

If the spare wheel is different from the other fitted road wheels, it may have a warning label with the appropriate maximum speed limit. Drive cautiously when using a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

Full-size Dissimilar Spare Wheel With a Label on the Wheel

The label on the wheel states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only. Drive the shortest distance possible and have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible. If the dissimilar spare wheel or tire is damaged, it must be replaced.

If you use a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, this can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All wheel driving capability.

When driving with this type of a dissimilar spare wheel:

- Do not exceed the maximum speed as shown on the label.
- Do not load your vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the safety compliance label.
- Do not tow a trailer.
- Do not use snow chains on the end of your vehicle with the dissimilar spare.
- Do not use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Do not use a commercial car wash.

Full-size Dissimilar Spare Wheel Without a Label on the Wheel

You can replace the existing road wheel with the spare and continue to drive in the normal manner.

Tire Change Procedure



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Changing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.



WARNING: The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

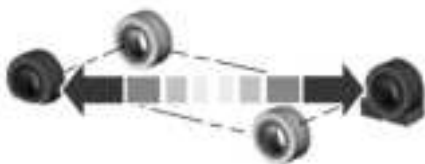


WARNING: If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake, and switch the vehicle off.



WARNING: It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm surface and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P). Set up a warning triangle.



3. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

Note: *Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

Removing the Vehicle Jack and Tool Bag

The jack, wheel brace and jack handle are located in the cab.

Note: *Not all cab configurations are available in all markets.*

Single Cab



1. Fold the left-hand side seatback forward.
2. Remove the locking strap and remove the tools.

Changing a Road Wheel



1. Fold the right-hand side seatback forward.
2. Remove the bolt and remove the jack.

Double Cab



1. Lift the release strap.
2. Lower the seat back.
3. Remove the bolt.

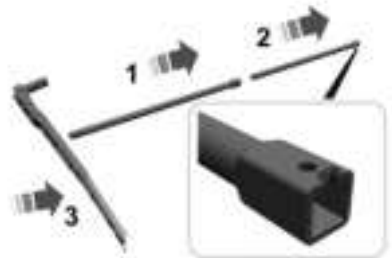
4. Lift the jack from the foam block and remove the jack from the vehicle.



1. Pull the release strap out.
2. Lift the seat bottom up.
3. Use the tether strap to secure the seat cushion.
4. Locate tool bag and remove the securing straps.

Removing the Spare Tire

WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h.

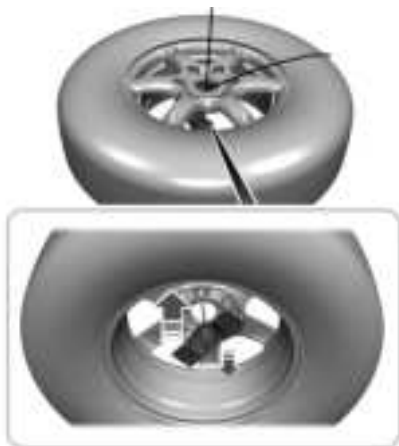


Changing a Road Wheel

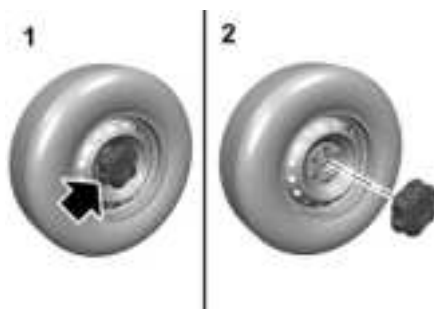
1. Assemble the handle.



2. Insert the jack handle into the guide hole. Turn counterclockwise until the wheel rests on the ground, and there is slack in the cable.



3. Pass the bracket and cable through the wheel opening.



4. Vehicles with steel wheels, remove the center cap by using the tool included. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



5. Vehicles with aluminum wheels, loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

Note: If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, drive the shortest distance possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

Note: Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

Note: Using a dissimilar spare wheel or tire at any one wheel location can compromise the handling, stability and braking performance, comfort and noise.

Note: When driving with a spare tire, do not switch on four-wheel drive mode unless you need to get your vehicle unstuck.

Note: The spare wheel is located underneath the rear of the vehicle.

Note: Do not use power tools on the spare wheel winch input drive.



Note: No maintenance or additional lubrication of the jack should be required with normal use over the service life of your vehicle.

Note: Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Note: Only use the jack on the specified jacking points and as close to the affected wheel as possible.

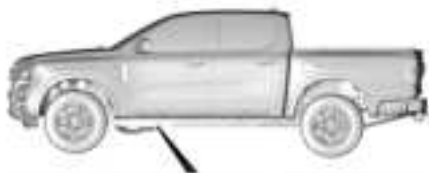
Removing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

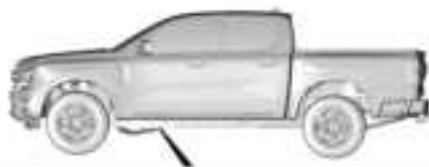
Changing a Road Wheel

Front Jacking Points Without Fuel Filter



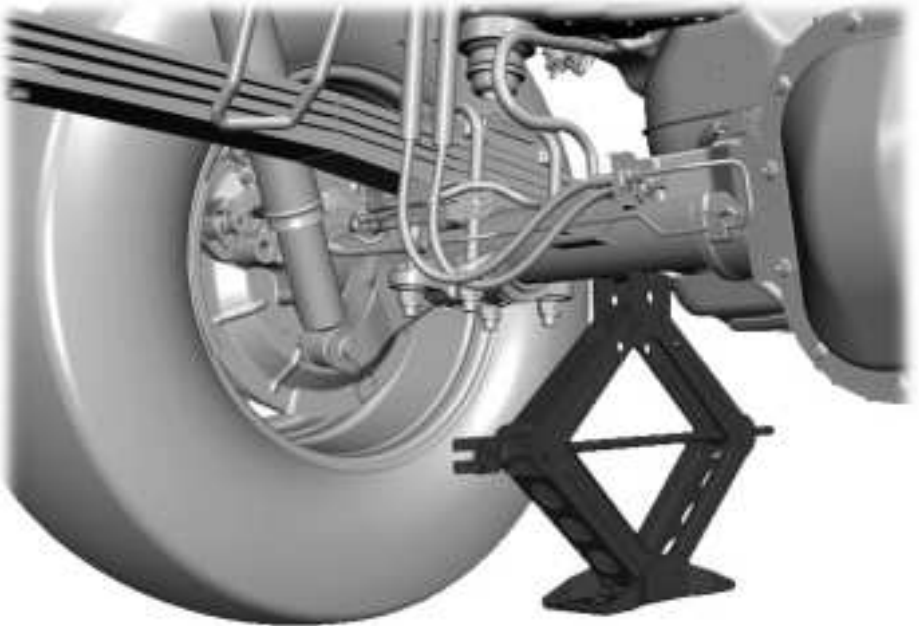
Changing a Road Wheel

Front Jacking Points With Fuel Filter With High-Rider

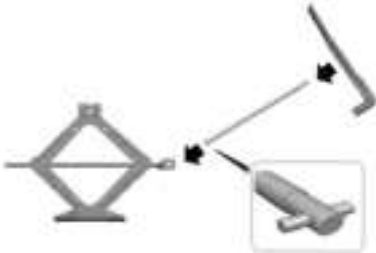


Changing a Road Wheel

Rear Jacking Points



1. Place the vehicle jack at the jacking point next to the tire you are changing.



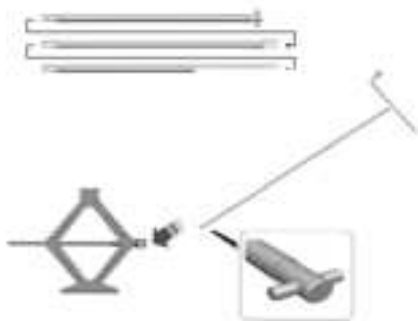
Note: When you are changing the front flat tire, connect the extension block (where supplied) to the jack load rest using the wing bolt. Connect the jack handle to the jack. Operate the jack handle with the lug nut wrench.

2. Assemble the jack handle, including the required extension tubes depending on the position you are jacking, and turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.

Note: When changing the rear flat tire, connect all the handles together to extend the jack handle.

Note: Before raising the vehicle with the jack loosen the wheel nuts, but do not remove.

Changing a Road Wheel



3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Use the locking wheel nut key to loosen the locking wheel nut where fitted.
5. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

Installing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. See an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.



WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.



WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.



WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Note: Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.

Note: Make sure the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts and finger tighten.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



4. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
5. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheel Nuts** (page 617).

Stowing the Flat or Spare Tire

1. Lay the tire on the ground, near the rear of the vehicle, with the valve stem side facing up.

Changing a Road Wheel

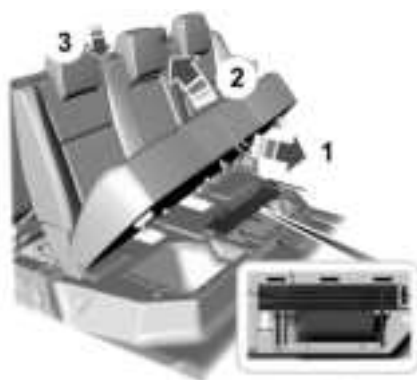
- Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. If equipped, you may have to remove the wheel center cap prior to pushing the retainer through the center of the wheel. To remove the center cap, press it off with the jack tool from the inner side of the wheel. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.
- Insert the handle into the guide hole and engage the winch.
- Turn the swivel wrench clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The wrench becomes harder to turn and the spare tire winch ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to its maximum tightness. A clicking sound is heard from the wheel indicating the tire is properly stowed.

Note: Make sure that the Tether Cable is not pinched between the tire and the frame cross member or wheel when winding up the Spare tire and before torquing it with 3 clicks.

Note: Before fully securing the tire make sure you are clearing the two U shape tire guides on the left side. After securing and hearing three clicks for spare tire visually inspect that the tire is in touch condition with the front and rear cross members.

Note: Ideally three clicks should be sufficient for spare wheel stowage.

- Carefully place all tools back to the tool kit bag.
- Reinstall the jack properly on the bracket and foam pad and secure the wing nut.
- Reinstall the tool kit bag in the original position.



- Align the tool bag with the markings around the storage compartment then tighten the securing straps by pulling in the forward direction.
- Unblock the wheels. Place the warning triangle back in the vehicle.

Note: Do not use power tools on the spare wheel winch input drive.

Note: Only use the spare tire carrier to stow the tire and wheel combination provided with your vehicle. Other tire and wheel combinations can cause the tire carrier to fail.

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE - RAPTOR

If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Changing a Road Wheel

Have the flat serviced by an authorized dealer to prevent damage to the system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions** (page 581). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the system sensor for damage.

Note: *The use of tire sealant could damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies.*

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.*

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h.

If the spare wheel is different from the other fitted road wheels, it may have a warning label with the appropriate maximum speed limit. Drive cautiously when using a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

Full-size Dissimilar Spare Wheel With a Label on the Wheel

The label on the wheel states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only. Drive the shortest distance possible and have the damaged road wheel and tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible. If the dissimilar spare wheel or tire is damaged, it must be replaced.

If you use a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, this can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All wheel driving capability.

When driving with this type of a dissimilar spare wheel:

- Do not exceed the maximum speed as shown on the label.
- Do not load your vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the safety compliance label.
- Do not tow a trailer.
- Do not use snow chains on the end of your vehicle with the dissimilar spare.
- Do not use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Do not use a commercial car wash.

Full-size Dissimilar Spare Wheel Without a Label on the Wheel

You can replace the existing road wheel with the spare and continue to drive in the normal manner.

Changing a Road Wheel

Tire Change Procedure



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



WARNING: Ensure screwthread is adequately lubricated before use.



WARNING: The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

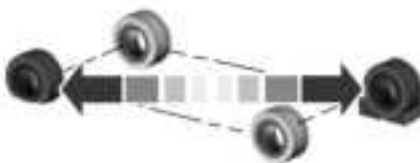


WARNING: If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake, and switch the vehicle off.



WARNING: It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm surface and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake. If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P). Set up a warning triangle.



Changing a Road Wheel

3. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

Note: *Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

Removing the Vehicle Jack and Tool Bag

The jack, wheel brace and jack handle are located in the cab.

Note: *Not all cab configurations are available in all markets.*

Single Cab



1. Fold the left-hand side seatback forward.
2. Remove the locking strap and remove the tools.



1. Fold the right-hand side seatback forward.
2. Remove the bolt and remove the jack.

Double Cab



1. Lift the release strap.
2. Lower the seat back.
3. Remove the bolt.

Changing a Road Wheel

4. Lift the jack from the foam block and remove the jack from your vehicle.



1. Pull the release strap out.
2. Lift the seat bottom up.
3. Use the tether strap to secure the seat cushion.
4. Locate tool bag and remove the securing straps.

Removing the Spare Tire



WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h.



1. Assemble the handle.

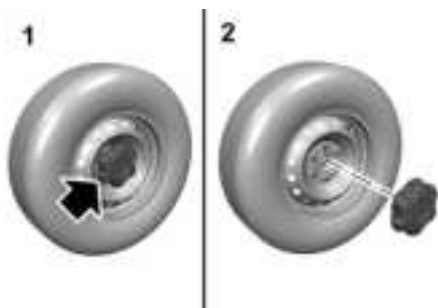


2. Insert the jack handle into the guide hole. Turn counterclockwise until the wheel rests on the ground, and there is slack in the cable.



3. Pass the bracket and cable through the wheel opening.

Changing a Road Wheel



4. Vehicles with steel wheels, remove the center cap by using the tool included. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



5. Vehicles with aluminum wheels, loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

Note: If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, drive the shortest distance possible.

Note: Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

Note: Using a dissimilar spare wheel or tire at any one wheel location can compromise the handling, stability and braking performance, comfort and noise.

Note: When driving with a spare tire, do not switch on four-wheel drive mode unless you need to get your vehicle unstuck.

Note: The spare wheel is located underneath the rear of the vehicle.

Note: Do not use power tools on the spare wheel winch input drive.

Removing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



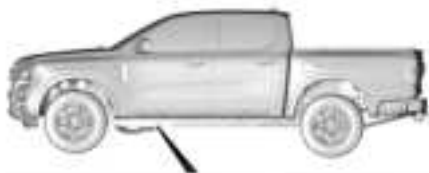
Note: No maintenance or additional lubrication of the jack should be required with normal use over the service life of your vehicle.

Note: Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Note: Only use the jack on the specified jacking points and as close to the affected wheel as possible.

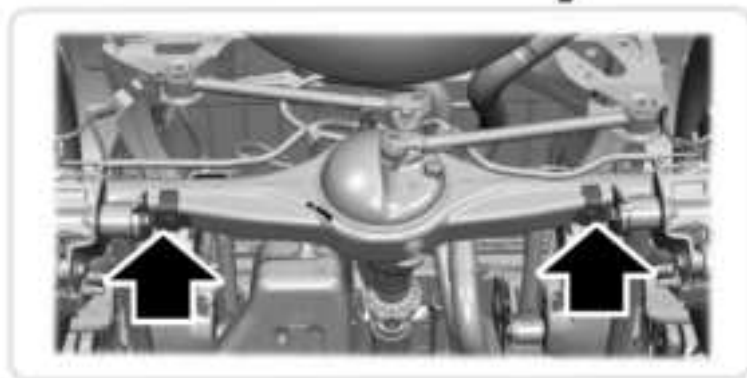
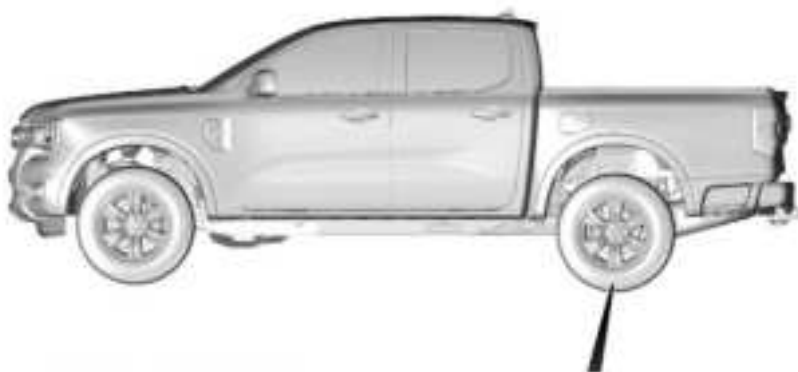
Changing a Road Wheel

Front Jacking Points Without Fuel Filter



Changing a Road Wheel

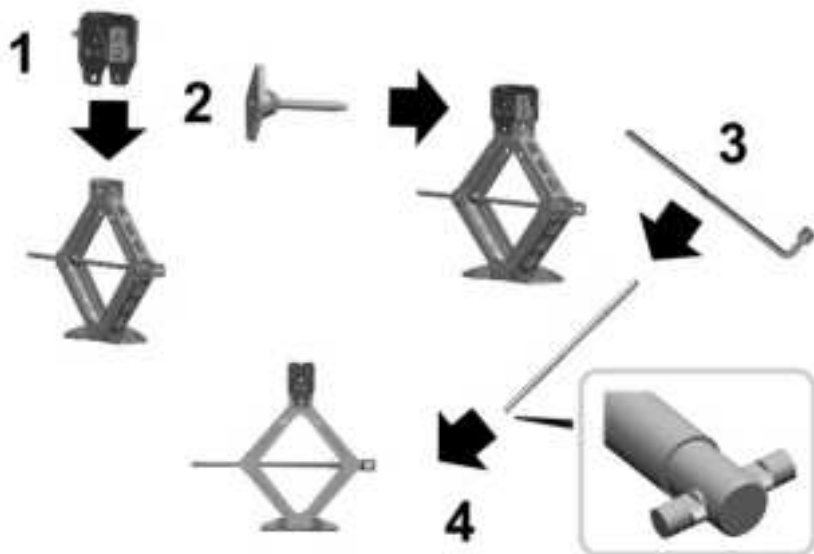
Rear Jacking Points



Changing a Road Wheel

When you are jacking a flat front tire, connect the extension block to the jack loadrest using the wing bolt as shown.

Connect the jack handle to the jack, and use the lug nut wrench to operate the jack.

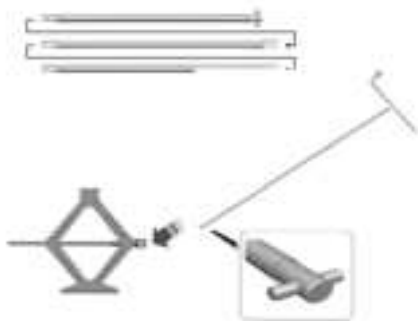


Note: When you are changing the front flat tire, connect the extension block (where supplied) to the jack load rest using the wing bolt as shown. Connect the jack handle to the jack. Operate the jack handle with the lug nut wrench.

Note: When changing the rear flat tire, connect all the handles together to extend the jack handle.

1. Place the vehicle jack at the jacking point next to the tire you are changing.
2. Assemble the jack handle, including the required extension tubes depending on the position you are jacking, and turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.

Changing a Road Wheel



3. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Use the locking wheel nut key to loosen the locking wheel nut where fitted.
5. Remove the lug nuts and the road wheel.

Installing a Road Wheel



WARNING: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. See an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.



WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.



WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

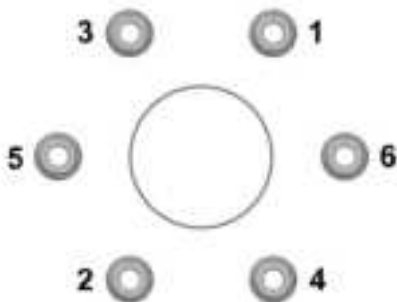


WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Note: Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.

Note: Make sure the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts and finger tighten.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



4. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
5. Fully tighten all of the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheel Nuts** (page 616).

Stowing the Flat or Spare Tire

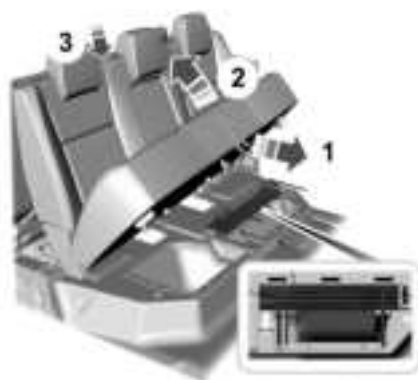
1. Lay the tire on the ground, near the rear of the vehicle, with the valve stem side facing up.

Changing a Road Wheel

- Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. If equipped, you may have to remove the wheel center cap prior to pushing the retainer through the center of the wheel. To remove the center cap, press it off with the jack tool from the inner side of the wheel. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.
- Insert the handle into the guide hole and engage the winch.
- Turn the swivel wrench clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The wrench becomes harder to turn and the spare tire winch ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to its maximum tightness. A clicking sound is heard from the winch indicating the tire is properly stowed.

Note: Ideally three clicks should be sufficient for spare wheel stowage.

- Carefully place all tools back to the tool kit bag.
- Reinstall the jack properly on the bracket and foam pad and secure the wing nut.
- Reinstall the tool kit bag in the original position.



- Align the tool bag with the markings around the storage compartment then tighten the securing straps by pulling in the forward direction.
- Unblock the wheel. Place the warning triangle back in the vehicle.

Note: Do not use power tools on the spare wheel winch input drive.

Note: Only use the spare tire carrier to stow the tire and wheel combination provided with your vehicle. Other tire and wheel combinations can cause the tire carrier to fail.

WHEEL NUTS - EXCLUDING: SUPER DUTY



WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of

Changing a Road Wheel

the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt Size	Nm ¹
M12 x 1.5	135 Nm

¹ Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only our recommended replacement wheel nuts and or wheel bolts.

Retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque within 160 km after any wheel disturbance, such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.



A Hub pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Locking Wheel Nuts

The locking wheel nut key is located in the glove box or next to the vehicle jack.

You can obtain replacement locking wheel nuts or a locking wheel nut key using the reference number certificate.

WHEEL NUTS - SUPER DUTY



WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt Size	Nm ¹
M14 x 8	200 Nm

¹ Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only our recommended replacement wheel nuts and or wheel bolts.

Retighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque within 160 km after any wheel disturbance, such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire or wheel removal.

Changing a Road Wheel



A Hub pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot hole and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles and clean the surface.

Locking Wheel Nuts

The locking wheel nut key is located in the glove box.

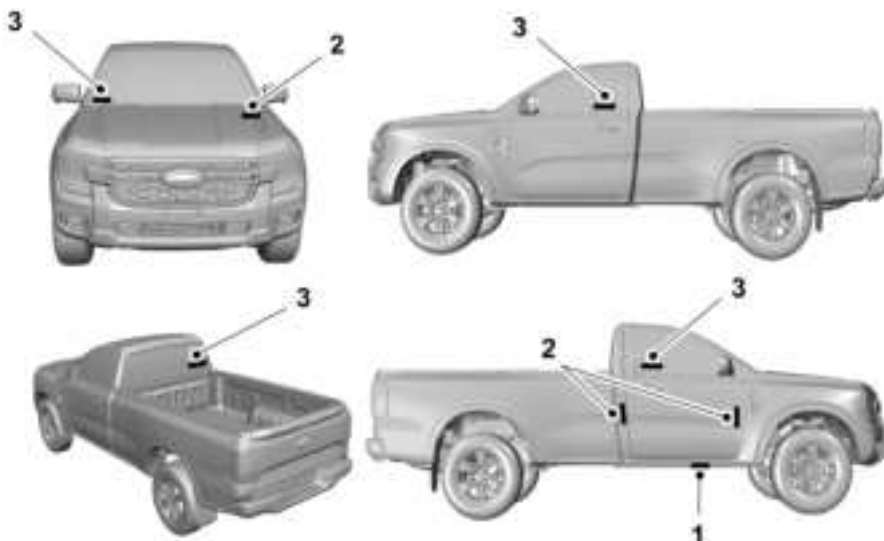
You can obtain replacement locking wheel nuts or a locking wheel nut key using the reference number certificate.

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

Single Cab



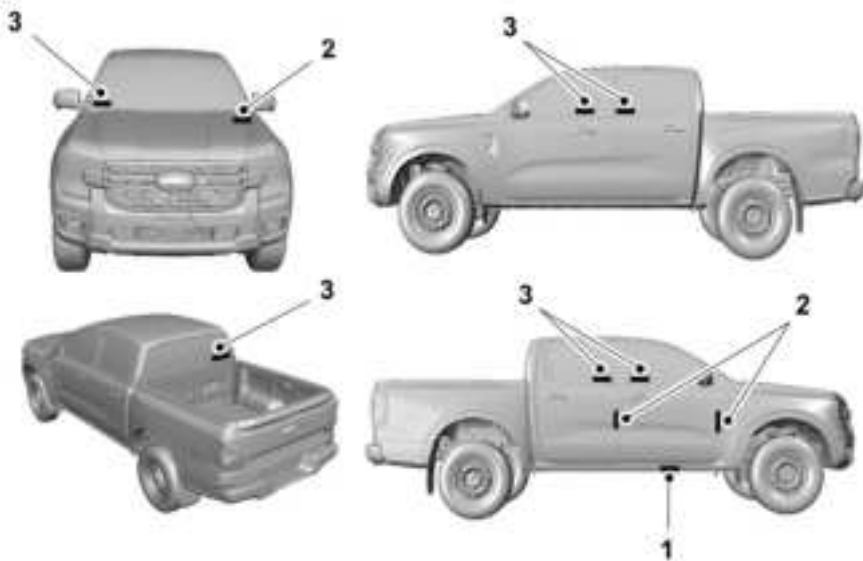
- 1 Main vehicle identification number engraving – Chassis side member, right side.
- 2 Vehicle identifier section adhesive label - Inside engine compartment, left side. A or B-pillar, right side. On the floor under the driver seat.
- 3 Vehicle identifier section engraving in glass - Windshield, door windows and rear window.

Note: The adhesive labels and glass engraving have the eight vehicle identifier section characters.

Note: Location of labels are dependent upon market requirements.

Vehicle Identification

Double Cab



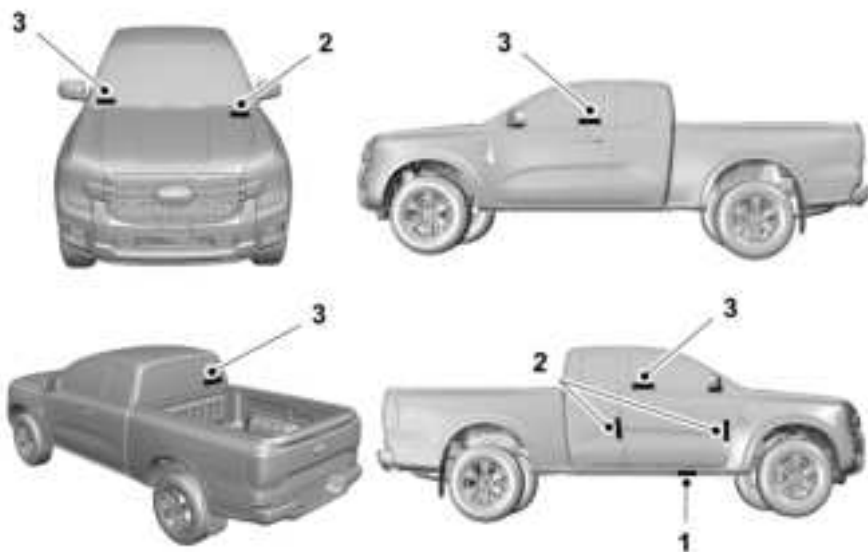
- 1 Main vehicle identification number engraving – Chassis side member, right side.
- 2 Vehicle identifier section adhesive label - Inside engine compartment, left side. A or B-pillar, right side. On the floor under the driver seat.
- 3 Vehicle identifier section engraving in glass - Windshield, door windows and rear window.

Note: The adhesive labels and glass engraving have the eight vehicle identifier section characters.

Note: Location of labels are dependent upon market requirements.

Vehicle Identification

RAP Cab



- 1 Main vehicle identification number engraving – Chassis side member, right side.
- 2 Vehicle identifier section adhesive label - Inside engine compartment, left side. A or B-pillar, right side. On the floor under the driver seat.
- 3 Vehicle identifier section engraving in glass - Windshield, door windows and rear window.

Note: The adhesive labels and glass engraving have the eight vehicle identifier section characters.

Note: Location of labels are dependent upon market requirements.

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



A Vehicle identification number.

The vehicle identification plate with your vehicle identification number is located on the bottom of the lock side of the passenger door aperture.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected services and related feature functionality requires you to create a FordPass account and link it to your connected vehicle.

Some connected services may require additional service activation. See your FordPass account. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning. For example, the modem on your vehicle only works with 3G or 4G cellular networks and stops functioning when these networks are no longer available.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Connected Vehicle Features.
3. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. From the settings menu, press Connectivity. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Wi-Fi.
3. Switch Wi-Fi on.
4. Press View Available Networks.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

Note: Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is my FordPass app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Press your preferred audio source.

Note: Available audio sources are listed along the top of the radio screen.

MEDIA CONTROL BUTTONS



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Note: Not all sources can be paused.

Note: In case the source is not paused audio is muted.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

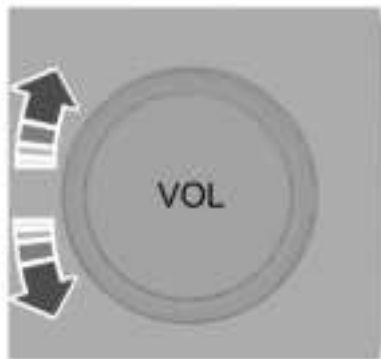
Note: Not all sources have shuffle mode.



Press the button on the touchscreen to change repeat mode.

Note: Not all sources have repeat mode.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Audio System

Using the Steering Wheel



Press the buttons to adjust the volume.



SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

1. Select a station or channel.
2. Press and hold a memory preset button on the touchscreen.

Note: The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the preset and returns once it is stored.

Note: A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

To access the sound settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Sound. See **Center Display** (page 630).

From the menu, you can adjust the following:

- Tone settings.
- Balance and fade.
- Speed compensated volume.
- Volume settings.
- Sound mode/Occupancy mode

Note: Depending on your vehicle options, not all settings are available.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 630).

2. Scroll to Clock.

3. Set the time.

Note: The AM and PM options are not available if 24-hour mode is on.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. From the settings menu, press General. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Scroll to Clock.
3. Switch Auto Time Update on or off.

AM/FM RADIO

AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN AM/FM RADIO STATION

Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.



Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Audio System

Using Seek



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Using the Station List

1. Press the search button on the radio screen.
2. Press a radio station from the list.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO (IF EQUIPPED)

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

WHAT IS SERVICE LINKING

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system switches to the corresponding FM radio station if one is available.

SWITCHING SERVICE LINKING ON AND OFF

1. From the apps menu, press Radio. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press DAB.
3. Press Settings.
4. Switch Service Linking on or off.

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.



Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Using Seek



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Audio System

Selecting a Radio Station From a List

1. Press the search button on the radio screen.
2. Press a radio station from the list.

Station List Order

Allows you to order the DAB station list by name or network.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO SETTINGS

Slideshow

When switched on and available, the touchscreen displays supplied pictures in place of the station logo. The pictures can be enlarged by touching them.

Electronic Program Guide

When enabled and available, the touchscreen displays what is currently playing and what plays next on the selected station.

Station Logo

When switched on and available, the touchscreen displays the current FM or DAB station logo.

News Announcements

When switched on, the current playing audio source may be interrupted by news announcements. An icon on the radio screen indicates when news announcements are enabled. An icon in the status bar indicates when an announcement is active.

Regional

When switched on, the radio stays tuned to the selected FM or DAB regional station. When switched off, the radio may tune to a regional alternative of the station depending on reception.

Center Display

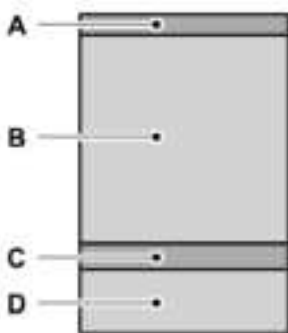
CENTER DISPLAY OVERVIEW



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h.

Note: Illustrations are provided for conceptual understanding only and may appear differently on your vehicle.



- A Status bar. See **Status Bar** (page 630).
- B Open app area.

- C App bar.
- D Climate control.

STATUS BAR

The status bar appears at the top of the display. The following buttons and icons can appear in the status bar.

Note: Some buttons and icons may not apply to your vehicle or may not appear exactly as shown.

App Launcher



Press to see a list of apps. To open an app, select the app.

Settings



Press to open the settings menu. See **Settings** (page 631).

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto



Press to open Apple CarPlay or Android Auto. See **Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off** (page 638). See **Switching Android Auto™ On and Off** (page 638).

Alexa Built-In



Press to set up Alexa.

Camera



Press to access the camera screen.

Center Display

Connected Device



Automatic crash notification system off.



Device signal strength.



Device signal roaming.



Device signal not available.

Vehicle Data and Location



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Vehicle Signal



Vehicle signal strength.



Vehicle signal roaming.



Vehicle signal not available.



Wi-Fi connected.

Traffic Announcements



Traffic announcements are turned on but are not supported by the selected station.



Traffic announcements are turned on and supported by the selected station but are not active.



Traffic announcements are active.

Note: If no traffic announcement icons are displayed, traffic announcements are turned off.

Wireless Charging



Wireless charging active.



Device connected and not charging.

Personal Profiles



Press to change or add a profile.

SETTINGS

1.  Press to open the settings menu.
2. Select an item on the side menu to access specific settings. The main area changes as you select different side menu items.
3. Press the icon again to close the list of settings.

You can change the display language and other measurement units under the General menu.

Center Display



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it to expand the menu and see additional settings.



If you see this icon next to a menu option, press it for more information.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Display Settings

From the display menu you can do the following:

- Switch the calm screen on.
- Manually adjust the screen brightness.
- Set the display mode.

Touchscreen Brightness

To manually adjust the screen brightness, use the plus or minus buttons.

Note: *The display brightness is limited if the settings of the instrument panel lighting brightness are set to the highest or lowest setting.*

DRIVER ASSISTANCE MENU

To access the driver assistance menu:



Press to open the settings menu.

Note: *The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.*

2. Press Driver Assistance.

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

Voice Interaction

FORD ASSISTANT

USING FORD ASSISTANT

The digital assistant allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

To begin a voice interaction using the wake word, say the selected wake word, then say your command.



Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

Note: You may need to enable your vehicle's modem to use certain voice commands. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 623).

Voice Command Examples

To see examples of what voice commands you can use with different features:

1. From the settings menu, press Ford Assistant. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Voice Command Help.
3. Select a feature.

FORD ASSISTANT SETTINGS

To access the settings menu:

1. From the settings menu, press Ford Assistant. See **Center Display** (page 630).

From the settings menu you can do the following:

- Switch listen for wake word on or off.
- Set the preferred wake word.
- Switch advanced mode on or off.
- Switch phone confirmation on or off.

- Switch the commands list on or off.
- View the commands help menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

FORD ASSISTANT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the system not understand what I am saying?

- You are speaking too soon. When using the button of the steering wheel, wait for the tone before you speak.

Why does the system not understand the name of a track or artist?

- **Bluetooth®** does not support voice commands. Connect your device to a USB port.
- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The system does not recognize some special characters contained in the name of a song or artist, for example *, - or +. Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

Voice Interaction

Why does the system not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact?

- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.

Why does the system not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device?

- The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.

Why do the system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words not seem accurate?

- The system uses text-to-speech technology and a synthetically generated voice rather than a pre-recorded human voice.

Phone

PHONE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

Connecting your phone stores contact and call data on your vehicle.

Note: *Unpairing your phone removes the contact and call data from your vehicle.*

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch **Bluetooth®** on.

1. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Select Add Phone.
3. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen to pair your device.

PHONE MENU



Press to view your favorite contacts.



Press to view your recent calls.



Press to view your contacts



Press to use the phone keypad.



Press to display recent text messages.



Press to view recent emails.

Press the down arrow to view additional items for a connected device.



Press to begin a voice interaction.



Press to switch to a different connected device.



Press to mute notifications.



Press to access phone settings.

Phone

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favorites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Phone

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.

Item	
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Privacy	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

Menu Item	Description
Hear It	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

Phone

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

The settings on your device must be enabled to receive text message notifications on the center display. Check your device settings to enable these features.

ENABLING APPS ON A MOBILE DEVICE

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

Enabling Apps on an iOS Device

1. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

Note: *Some apps may run through Apple CarPlay if it is enabled.*

2. Start a compatible app on your device.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

3. Access the system applications.
4. Select the app you wish to use on the touchscreen.

Enabling Apps on an Android Device

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.

Note: *Some apps may run through Android Auto if it is enabled.*

2. Start a compatible app on your device.

Note: *The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.*

3. Access the system applications.
4. Select the app you wish to use on the touchscreen.

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

1. Pair your device.
2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 630).
3. Select your device.
4. Tap the Apple CarPlay icon to switch Apple CarPlay on or off.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO™ ON AND OFF

1. Pair your device.
2. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 630).
3. Select your device.
4. Tap the Android Auto icon to switch Android Auto on or off.

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. From the settings menu, press Phone List. See **Center Display** (page 630).
2. Press Add Phone.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

1. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

2. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device.

Press App Launcher on the touchscreen. Press Media App. See **Center Display** (page 630).



Press the **Bluetooth®** option.

Note: If Bluetooth device was not the previous source.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

Browsing your Media Library

When a compatible mobile device is connected to the vehicle, your media library is accessible through the touchscreen. From the touchscreen, you can browse through songs, albums, artists, and playlists on your mobile device.

Note: This feature is dependent on the connected mobile device and the media application used.

Note: Browse feature functionality may be limited while driving.

Navigation (If Equipped)

CONNECTED NAVIGATION

Your vehicle may have connected navigation. This is a connected service and is offered for an initial trial period, after which time, the service may cease to be available or may be subject to a subscription fee. For additional information on this and other connected services, refer to the FordPass Terms and Privacy Policy available on the local Ford website.

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

1. Access the application drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press the navigation button.

Note: As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

Note: If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP



Press the map format button on the left side of the map screen to toggle between the available formats.

LIVE TRAFFIC

WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF

1. Press the tools button on the map screen.
2. Press Navigation Settings.
3. Press the Traffic button.
4. Switch Traffic on or off.

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
3. Press the search button.
4. Select a destination from the list.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

Navigation (If Equipped)

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

Press on the map to trigger the roaming and viewing screen. Press on the map again to place a pin at that location. Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the pin.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Press the recents button.
3. Select a destination from the list.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press the search bar.
2. Press favorites.
3. Select a saved destination.

Note: Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

Press on a point of interest icon on the map. Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen. Press the Go! button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT

1. Begin navigation to a destination.

2. Search for your waypoint using the search bar.
3. Press Go!
4. Press Add to add the waypoint to your trip.

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the search bar on the map screen.
2. Press myTrips.
3. Press Current Trip.
4. Use the menu to add destinations, remove destinations, or rearrange destinations.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the next step indicator on the top of the touchscreen during an active navigation session to hear the last voice instruction.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

TRAILER TOWING NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

The system calculates the best route for trailer towing by avoiding dangerous road conditions based on the dimensions of your trailer.

Note: *This feature is only available if you properly attach the trailer to your vehicle.*

Switching Smart Trailer Navigation On and Off

1. Access the application drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press navigation.
3. Press the navigation menu button.
4. Press settings.
5. Press guidance.
6. Press smart trailer navigation.
7. Switch towing route guidance ON or OFF.

Entering Trailer Dimensions

1. Access the application drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press navigation.
3. Press the navigation menu button.
4. Press settings.
5. Press guidance.
6. Press smart trailer navigation.
7. Press active trailer.
8. Follow the screen instruction to select an active trailer or add a new one.

Vehicle Software Updates

These software updates introduce new features or provide updates to vehicle software systems. To receive updates, we recommend you switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 623).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage. If Automatic Updates is switched on, updates happen without any input from you. If Automatic Updates is switched off, a software update icon displays on the touchscreen and customer acceptance is required.

Non-drivable software updates require you to input a scheduled start time. You are notified on your touchscreen prior to a non-drivable update.

Most updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of the status of the software updates on the top left part of the touchscreen. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 644).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.

- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

From settings menu, press Software Updates.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on or off.

Vehicle Software Updates

Switch Automatic Updates on. When Automatic Updates is set to on, you agree that software updates may be automatically delivered without any further notice or additional consent from you.

To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we recommend switching Automatic Updates On.

Note: *Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.*

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Recurring Schedule.
2. Select from the list of available timings or set a custom schedule.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle.

Note: *The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.*

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press the Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press Updates Details.
2. Press Update Now.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu, press Update Details.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

1. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
2. Press General.
3. Press Reset.

You can perform multiple resets from this menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Auxiliary Switches (If Equipped)

WHAT ARE THE AUXILIARY SWITCHES

The auxiliary switchboard on the overhead console makes aftermarket customization easier with six prewired switches connected to the power distribution box. Each circuit is individually fused for connection of electrical accessories. For more information on connecting accessories to the auxiliary switches, see your authorized dealer or refer to the Body and Equipment Mounting Manual (BEMM), if available.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the safety compliance certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislation.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communication systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized dealer add any electrical or electronic accessories or components not produced by us to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of the other electrical systems in the vehicle.

LOCATING THE AUXILIARY SWITCHES

The switches are labeled AUX 1 through AUX 6.

The auxiliary switches only operate when the ignition is in the on or off position and the delay accessory is active, whether the engine is running or not

We recommend that you leave the engine running to maintain battery charge when using the switches for an extended time or when using higher current draw accessories.

When a switch is turned on, the indicator light on the switch illuminates and the circuit provides power to the device wired to that switch.



LOCATING THE AUXILIARY SWITCH WIRING

There are three sets of blunt-cut sealed circuits:

Auxiliary Switches (If Equipped)

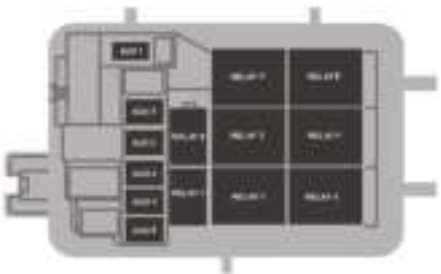


A	Circuit to radiator support.	Aux 6 Wire Location
B	Circuit near auxiliary fuse box.	Aux 1 Wire Location Aux 2 Wire Location Aux 5 Wire Location
C	Circuit to trailer hitch.	Aux 3 Wire Location Aux 4 Wire Location

Circuits from the under hood fuse box are powered. All other circuits are not connected at either end.

Additional information on fuse and relay locations is available. See your authorized dealer for service.

IDENTIFYING THE AUXILIARY SWITCH WIRING



Auxiliary Switches (If Equipped)

The relays are coded as follows:

Interior overhead console	Wire Color	Wire Size	Fuse Rating	Protected Component	Blunt cut Wire Location
AUX 1	Violet/ Green	1.5 mm ²	5A	Relay 1	Vehicle location B
AUX 2	Blue/ Orange	1.5 mm ²	15A	Relay 2	Vehicle location B
AUX 3	Yellow/ Orange	1.5 mm ²	15A	Relay 3	Vehicle location C
AUX 4	Brown	1.5 mm ²	15A	Relay 4	Vehicle location C
AUX 5	Green/ Brown	2.5 mm ²	25A	Relay 5 (Driving lamps)	Vehicle location B
AUX 6	Yellow	2.5 mm ²	25A	Relay 6 (Driving lamps)	Vehicle location A
Protected Component			Purpose		
Relay 7			This relay is fitted and only works when the high beam headlamps are engaged as per local government regulations.		
Relay 8			Auxiliary switch power		

Ground information:

Power Distribution Box	Wire Color	Wire Size	Location
AUX 3	Black/Grey	1.5 mm ²	Vehicle location C
AUX 4	Black/Green	1.5 mm ²	Vehicle location C
AUX 6	Black/Yellow	2.5 mm ²	Vehicle location A

ROLLOVER WARNING



WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

You can locate radio frequency certification labels and declarations of conformity for components on your vehicle at your local Ford or Lincoln website along with your owner information.

For more information scan here:



<https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Customer Information

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Customer Information

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

Customer Information

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Customer Information

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Customer Information

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Customer Information

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Customer Information



1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or

Customer Information

its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the

TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENNAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENNAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENNAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE

Customer Information

POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration,

both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Customer Information

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Customer Information

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Customer Information

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Customer Information

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Customer Information

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Customer Information

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice:
“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Customer Information

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Customer Information

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"	Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"	Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"	Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"	E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.	
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"		
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."		
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."		
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."		
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"	VI. Australia Territory A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy: Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).	
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"		

Customer Information

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice:

"Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."



AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE,

STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

Customer Information

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Customer Information

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

Customer Information

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

Customer Information

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.



THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE

CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency

Customer Information

equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelomatics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
https://www.sunattraffic.com.au/term-sandconditions
Empty Table!!



1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
https://www.sunattraffic.com.au/term-sandconditions
Empty Table!!



2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelomatics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

Customer Information

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelomatics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Services even if Intelomatics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelomatics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelomatics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

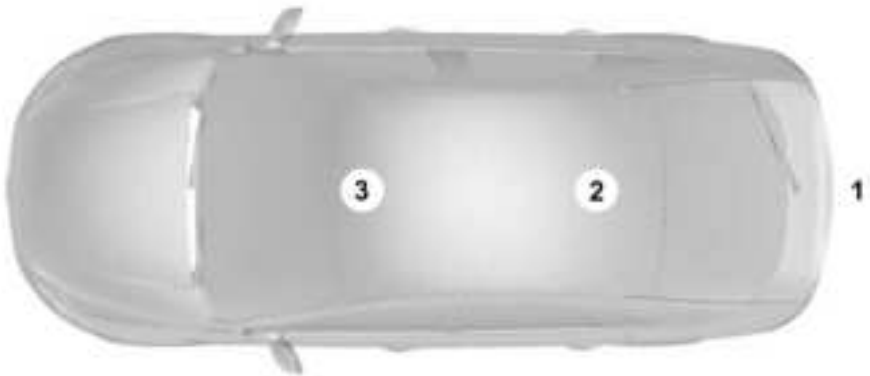


WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Car



Appendices

Van



Truck



Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Note: After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the vehicle running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

Index

1

12V Battery.....	532
12V Battery Precautions.....	532
Battery Management System	
Limitations.....	533
Changing the 12V Battery.....	534
How Does the Battery Management	
System Work.....	533
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V	
Battery.....	537
Resetting the Battery Sensor.....	536
What Is the Battery Management	
System.....	533
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	537
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	537
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	537

3

360 Degree Camera.....	335
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	339
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines -	
Vehicles With: Driver Assistance	
Technology (DAT) Bar.....	338
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines -	
Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance	
Technology (DAT) Bar.....	337
360 Degree Camera Precautions -	
Vehicles With: Driver Assistance	
Technology (DAT) Bar.....	336
360 Degree Camera Precautions -	
Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance	
Technology (DAT) Bar.....	335
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	339
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and	
Off.....	339
Switching the 360 Degree Camera	
View.....	340

4

4WD	
See: Four-Wheel Drive.....	252

A

A/C	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With:	
Automatic Temperature Control.....	135
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual	
Temperature Control.....	140
About This Publication.....	22
About Us.....	19
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	292
Accessing Navigation.....	640
Accessing the Passive Key Backup	
Position - Vehicles With: Push Button	
Start.....	181
Accessing the Trip Computer.....	132
AC Charging.....	230
Charging at Home.....	230
Charging in Public.....	231
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	341
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	354
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.....	352
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	354
Lane Centering.....	349
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	352
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation.....	345
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Indicators.....	348
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Limitations.....	342
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Precautions.....	341
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	354
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information	
Messages.....	354
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	102
How Does Adaptive Front Lighting	
Work.....	102
Switching Adaptive Front Lighting On and	
Off.....	103
AdBlue® Capacity and	
Specification.....	218
AdBlue® Gauge - Diesel, Vehicles With:	
12 Inch Screen.....	119

Index

AdBlue® Gauge - Diesel, Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen.....	119	How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work.....	83
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	111	What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	83
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	538	What Are the Interior Sensors.....	83
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness.....	106	What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	83
Adjusting the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Mode.....	420	What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	84
Adjusting the Map.....	640	What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	83
Changing the Format of the Map.....	640	Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	84
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	640	Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	84
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	56	Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	84
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	627	What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	84
Adjusting the Speed Limit Tolerance.....	357	What Is Ask on Exit.....	84
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	86	Appendices.....	677
Adjusting the Volume.....	626	Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	297
After Driving Your Vehicle Off-Road.....	470	Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency.....	297
Aid Mode.....	361	Applying the Parking Brake.....	296
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	361	Approach Detection See: Switching Welcome Lighting On and Off.....	95
What Is Aid Mode.....	361	Audio System.....	626
Airbag Precautions.....	61	AM/FM Radio.....	627
Airbags.....	59	Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	628
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	62	Audio System Precautions.....	626
Air Conditioning See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	135	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	110
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	140	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror Limitations.....	110
Alarm See: Connecting a Trailer.....	411	What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	110
Alert and Aid Mode.....	361	Auto Hold.....	305
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	362	Auto Hold Indicators.....	306
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	361	Autolamps.....	93
AM/FM Radio.....	627	Autolamp Settings.....	93
AM/FM Radio Limitations.....	627	What Are Autolamps.....	93
Selecting an AM/FM Radio Station.....	627	Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	298
Ambient Lighting - Vehicles With: Ambient Lighting.....	106	Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	484
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	292	Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....	484
Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations.....	292	Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	484
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	83	What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	484
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	84	Automatic Emergency Braking.....	384
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	84	Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off.....	384
		What Is Automatic Emergency Braking.....	384

Index

Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With:	
Push Button Start.....	180
How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work.....	181
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	181
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off.....	181
What Is Automatic Engine Stop.....	180
Automatic High Beam Control.....	97
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....	98
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations.....	98
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions.....	97
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements.....	98
How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work.....	97
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	99
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....	98
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	99
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	99
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	247
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift.....	249
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings - Vehicles With: Mechanical Shift.....	249
Automatic Transmission.....	242
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	242
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	250
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	242
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators.....	244
Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	242
Drive (D).....	244
Manual (M).....	244
Neutral (N).....	244
Park (P).....	243
Reverse (R).....	243
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	242
Auto Mode.....	137
Auto Mode Indicators.....	137
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	137
Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	138
Autorelock.....	75
How Does Autorelock Work.....	75
Auto-Start-Stop.....	191
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	192
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	191
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	191
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	192
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	193
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	192
Autounlock.....	75
Autounlock Requirements.....	75
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	75
What Is Autounlock.....	75
Autowipers.....	88
Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain Sensor.....	89
Autowipers Settings.....	89
What Are Autowipers.....	88
Auxiliary Switches.....	646
B	
Basic Off-Road Driving Techniques.....	468
Battery Fuse Box.....	503
Accessing the Battery Fuse Box.....	503
Identifying the Fuses in the Battery Fuse Box.....	503
Locating the Battery Fuse Box.....	503
Blind Spot Assist.....	362
Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	363
Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	363
How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	363
What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	362
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	364
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Indicators.....	366
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	365

Index

How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage Work.....	365
What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	364
Blind Spot Information System.....	370
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	374
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	372
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	374
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....	370
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	370
Blind Spot Information System Requirements.....	370
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	374
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	374
Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps.....	374
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	372
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	372
How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work.....	372
Selecting a Trailer.....	373
Setting a Trailer Length.....	373
Switching Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage On and Off.....	373
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage.....	372
Bluetooth®.....	639
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	504
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	504
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	505
Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	504
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	509
Brake Coach - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	130
Brake Fluid Specification.....	293
Brake Over Accelerator.....	292
Brake Precautions.....	292
Brakes.....	292
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	292
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	294
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	294
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	295
Brakes – Information Messages.....	294
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	294
Brake System Inspection.....	508
Breaking-In.....	476
C	
Canceling the Set Speed.....	313
Canceling the Set Speed Limit.....	357
Catalytic Converter.....	221
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	221
Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	221
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	221
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	221
Center Console.....	175
Opening the Center Console.....	175
Center Display.....	630
Center Display Overview.....	630
Changing a Flat Tire - Excluding: Raptor/ Super Duty.....	585
Changing a Flat Tire - Raptor.....	606
Changing a Flat Tire - Super Duty.....	596
Changing a Road Wheel.....	585
Changing the Fuel Filter - Diesel.....	530
Changing the Fuel Filter - Gasoline.....	530
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Flip Key.....	70
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	68
Changing the Set Speed Limit.....	356
Charge Coupler Manual Release.....	233
Charge Port Indicators.....	229
Charging a Device.....	160
Charging a Wireless Device.....	172
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols.....	239

Index

Charging Equipment Indicators.....	227	Cleaning Seatbelts.....	564
Charging Equipment Overview.....	226	Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	562
Charging Equipment Precautions.....	225	Cleaning Vinyl.....	563
Charging Settings.....	234	Climate Control.....	135
Charging Your Vehicle.....	225	Auto Mode.....	137
AC Charging.....	230	Climate Control Hints.....	138
Charging Your Vehicle –		Climate Control – Warning Lamps.....	139
Troubleshooting.....	240	Connected Navigation.....	640
Charging Your Vehicle –		Connected Vehicle.....	623
Troubleshooting.....	240	Connected Vehicle –	
Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked		Troubleshooting.....	624
Questions.....	241	Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile	
Charging Your Vehicle – Information		Network.....	623
Messages.....	240	Connected Vehicle Data.....	31
Checking Seatbelt Fit.....	53	Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	623
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	292	Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	623
Checking the Seatbelts.....	57	Connected Vehicle Settings.....	624
Checking the Selective Catalytic		Connected Vehicle –	
Reduction System Status.....	218	Troubleshooting.....	624
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	574	Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked	
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	89	Questions.....	624
Child Restraint Anchorage		Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	639
Locations.....	50	Connecting a Trailer.....	411
Child Restraints.....	48	Connecting a Trailer –	
Child Safety.....	48	Troubleshooting.....	412
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With:		Tow Ball.....	408
Mechanical Child Proof Locks.....	54	Connecting a Trailer Precautions.....	408
Cleaning the Exterior.....	559	Connecting a Trailer –	
Cleaning Camera Lenses and		Troubleshooting.....	412
Sensors.....	560	Connecting a Trailer – Information	
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless		Messages.....	412
Steel.....	559	Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile	
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear		Network.....	623
Lamps.....	559	Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	623
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	560	Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	623
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	560	Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi	
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	559	Network.....	623
Cleaning the Roller Shutter.....	561	Connecting Your Phone.....	635
Cleaning the Underbody.....	561	Contacting Us.....	20
Cleaning Wheels.....	560	Coolant.....	525
Cleaning Windows and Wiper		Adding Coolant.....	526
Blades.....	559	Changing the Coolant.....	527
Cleaning the Interior.....	562	Checking the Coolant Level.....	525
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	563	Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	530
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	562	Cooling System Capacity and	
Cleaning Fabric.....	562	Specification.....	528
Cleaning Leather.....	563	Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	527
Cleaning Plastic.....	562		

Index

Crash and Breakdown	
Information.....	480
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	484
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	490
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	481
Post-Crash Alert System.....	483
Post Impact Braking.....	484
Recovery Towing.....	484
Cross Traffic Alert.....	376
Cross Traffic Alert –	
Troubleshooting.....	378
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	378
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	376
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	376
Cross Traffic Alert –	
Troubleshooting.....	378
Cross Traffic Alert – Information	
Messages.....	379
Cross Traffic Alert – Warning Lamps.....	378
Cup Holders.....	174
Locating the Cup Holders.....	174
Customer Information.....	649
Customizing the Instrument Cluster	
Display – Vehicles With: 12 Inch	
Screen.....	129
Customizing the Instrument Cluster	
Display – Vehicles With: 8 Inch	
Screen.....	129
D	
Data Privacy.....	29
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	209
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual	
Regeneration – Super Duty.....	210
Diesel Particulate Filter –	
Troubleshooting.....	212
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual	
Regeneration – Super Duty.....	210
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual	
Regeneration Limitations.....	211
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual	
Regeneration Precautions.....	210
Diesel Particulate Filter Manual	
Regeneration Requirements.....	210
Starting Diesel Particulate Filter Manual	
Regeneration.....	211
What Is Diesel Particulate Filter Manual	
Regeneration.....	210
Diesel Particulate Filter	
Precautions.....	209
Diesel Particulate Filter	
Requirements.....	210
Diesel Particulate Filter –	
Troubleshooting.....	212
Diesel Particulate Filter – Information	
Messages.....	212
Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning	
Lamps.....	212
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	628
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	
Limitations.....	628
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	
Settings.....	629
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting	
Radio Station.....	628
Switching Service Linking On and	
Off.....	628
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting	
Radio.....	628
What Is Service Linking.....	628
Directing the Flow of Air.....	136
Distance Alert.....	384
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Distance	
Alert.....	384
What Is Distance Alert.....	384
Distance Indication.....	383
Distance Indication Indicator.....	384
Switching Distance Indication On and	
Off.....	384
What Is Distance Indication.....	383
Door Lock Indicators.....	75
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	75
Doors and Locks.....	74
Autorelock.....	75
Autounlock.....	75
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	75
Mislock.....	75
Operating the Doors From Inside Your	
Vehicle.....	74
Operating the Doors From Outside Your	
Vehicle.....	74
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	75
Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	77

Index

Doors and Locks – Information	
Messages.....	76
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	75
Draining the Fuel Filter Water Trap -	
Diesel.....	524
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.0L	
Diesel.....	531
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.3L	
EcoBoost™.....	531
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 3.0L	
Diesel.....	532
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 3.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	532
Drive Mode Control.....	276
Drive Mode Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	282
Drive Modes.....	280
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive	
Modes.....	277
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes	
– Troubleshooting.....	278
Drive Mode Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	282
Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	283
Drive Mode Control – Information	
Messages.....	282
Drive Mode Control – Warning	
Lamps.....	282
Drive Modes.....	280
Baja.....	286
Eco.....	280
Mud/Ruts.....	280
Normal.....	280
Rock Crawl.....	281
Sand.....	281
Slippery.....	281
Sport.....	288
Tow/Haul.....	281
Driver Alert.....	391
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	392
Driver Alert Limitations.....	391
Driver Alert Precautions.....	391
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	392
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	392
Driver Assistance Menu.....	632
Driving Economically.....	476
Driving Hints.....	476
Driving in Cold Weather.....	476
Driving Through Water.....	477
Driving Your Vehicle at High Speeds -	
Raptor.....	469
Drowsiness Monitor	
See: Driver Alert.....	391
E	
Easy Entry and Exit.....	80
Eco Coach.....	291
Electric Economy - Plug-In Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	130
Electric Parking Brake Audible	
Warning.....	298
Electric Parking Brake.....	297
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	298
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	298
Electric Parking Brake – Information	
Messages.....	299
Electric Parking Brake – Warning	
Lamps.....	298
Electric Power Steering.....	320
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	320
How Does Electric Power Steering	
Work.....	320
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	677
Electronic Locking Differential.....	269
Electronic Locking Differential –	
Troubleshooting.....	273
Electronic Locking Differential Indicators	
– Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty.....	272
Electronic Locking Differential Indicators	
– Raptor/Super Duty.....	272
Electronic Locking Differential –	
Troubleshooting.....	273
Electronic Locking Differential –	
Information Messages.....	273
Emergency Assistance.....	65
Emergency Call Limitations.....	66
Emergency Call Requirements.....	65
Emergency Call System Data.....	32
Emergency Towing.....	492
Enabling Apps on a Mobile Device.....	638
Enabling Remote Start.....	133
End User License Agreement.....	651

Index

Engine Air Filter.....	522
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	522
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	118
Engine Oil.....	515
Adding Engine Oil.....	516
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	515
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification.....	516
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	515
Engine Oil – Information Messages.....	521
Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	516
Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	516
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen.....	118
Engine Oil Pressure Gauge - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen.....	118
Engine Specifications - 2.0L Diesel.....	549
Engine Specifications - 2.3L, Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	550
Engine Specifications - 3.0L Diesel.....	552
Engine Specifications - 3.0L EcoBoost™.....	551
Environment.....	33
Evasive Steering Assist.....	385
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	385
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....	385
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	385
EV Coach - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	129
Event Data.....	30
Exterior Bulbs.....	539
Changing a Front Fog Lamp Bulb.....	547
Changing a Front Side Marker Lamp Bulb.....	546
Changing a Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulb.....	544
Changing a Headlamp Bulb.....	541
Changing a Rear Lamp Bulb.....	547
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	539
Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly.....	541
Exterior Lamps.....	94
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	95
Switching the Cargo Lamps On.....	95

Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....	94
Switching Welcome Lighting On and Off.....	95
Using the Front Fog Lamps.....	94
Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....	94
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	94
Exterior Lighting Control.....	92
Exterior Lighting.....	92
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	102
Autolamps.....	93
Automatic High Beam Control.....	97
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	99
Exterior Lamps.....	94
Exterior Zone Lighting.....	95
Glare Free Lighting.....	99
Headlamps.....	92
Exterior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	103
Exterior Mirrors.....	111
Exterior Zone Lighting.....	95
Using the Exterior Zone Lighting.....	95
What Is Exterior Zone Lighting.....	95

F

Fail-Safe Cooling.....	490
Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated.....	491
Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators.....	491
How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work.....	490
What Is Fail-Safe Cooling.....	490
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	56
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank.....	215
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank in Cold Weather.....	215
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Fuel Station Pump.....	215
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank Using a Portable Container.....	217

Index

Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Excluding: Raptor/ Super Duty.....	585
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Raptor.....	606
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Super Duty.....	596
Floor Mats.....	478
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Folding Mirrors.....	111
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Power Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	112
Ford Assistant.....	633
Ford Assistant – Frequently Asked Questions.....	633
Ford Assistant Settings.....	633
Using Ford Assistant.....	633
Ford Performance.....	19
Four-Wheel Drive.....	252
Four-Wheel Drive Modes.....	259
Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	261
Four-Wheel Drive Indicators.....	260
Four-Wheel Drive Limitations - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty.....	253
Four-Wheel Drive Limitations - Raptor.....	254
Four-Wheel Drive Limitations - Super Duty, Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode.....	255
Four-Wheel Drive Modes.....	259
Four-Wheel Drive Auto.....	259
Four-Wheel Drive High.....	259
Four-Wheel Drive Low.....	260
Two-Wheel Drive High.....	259
Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	261
Four-Wheel Drive – Information Messages.....	261
Four-Wheel Drive – Warning Lamps.....	261
Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Excluding: Raptor/ Super Duty.....	265
Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Raptor.....	265
Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Super Duty.....	266
Front Axle.....	265
Front Exterior - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty.....	41
Front Exterior - Raptor.....	42
Front Exterior - Super Duty.....	43
Front Parking Aid.....	325
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	326
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	325
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	325
What is the Front Parking Aid.....	325
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	62
Front Passenger Sensing System Indicators.....	64
Front Passenger Sensing System Precautions.....	64
How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work.....	62
What Is the Front Passenger Sensing System.....	62
Front Seat Precautions.....	144
Front Seats.....	144
Heated Seats.....	149
Manual Seats.....	145
Power Seats.....	147
Vented Seats.....	150
Fuel and Refueling.....	194
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	208
Fuel Quality.....	194
Refueling.....	198
Running Out of Fuel.....	196
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	194
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	208
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	208
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	208
Fuel Economy Display - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	129
Fuel Gauge.....	117
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	117
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	117
What Is Distance to Empty.....	117
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	117
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	117
Fuel Quality.....	194
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	194
Selecting the Correct Fuel for Cold Weather.....	196
Fuel Tank Capacity - 2.0L Diesel.....	205

Index

Fuel Tank Capacity - 3.0L Diesel.....	207
Fuel Tank Capacity - 3.0L EcoBoost™.....	206
Fuel Tank Capacity - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	208
Fuse Precautions.....	493
Fuses.....	493
Battery Fuse Box.....	503
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	504
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	507
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	493
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	507
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	507

G

Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	222
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	223
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions.....	222
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements.....	222
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	223
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....	223
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....	223
Glare Free Lighting.....	99
Glare Free Lighting Indicators.....	101
Glare Free Lighting – Information Messages.....	101
Glare Free Lighting Limitations.....	101
Glare Free Lighting Precautions.....	100
Glare Free Lighting Requirements.....	100
How Does Glare Free Lighting Work.....	99
Overriding Glare Free Lighting.....	101
Switching Glare Free Lighting On and Off.....	101
Glasses Holder.....	175
Locating the Glasses Holder.....	175
Global Opening and Closing.....	107
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	108
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	108
Using Global Closing.....	108
Using Global Opening.....	108

What Is Global Opening and Closing.....	107
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	570
Glove Compartment.....	174
Opening the Glove Compartment.....	174

H

Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	538
Headlamps.....	92
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....	92
Headlamp Indicators.....	93
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	92
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	92
Heated Seats.....	149
Heated Seat Precautions.....	149
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	150
Heating	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control.....	135
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control.....	140
High Voltage Battery Gauge - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	118
High Voltage Battery.....	224
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	224
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	224
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	224
High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps.....	224
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	480
Hill Descent Control.....	318
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting.....	319
Hill Descent Control Indicator.....	319
Hill Descent Control Precautions.....	318
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting.....	319
Hill Descent Control – Information Messages.....	319
Hill Start Assist.....	304
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	304

Index

Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	304	How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work.....	222
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	304	How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work.....	356
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	304	How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	359
Hood Lock		How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	155
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	509	How Does the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Work.....	214
Horn.....	86	How Does Traction Control Work.....	307
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	341	How Does Trailer Backup Assistance Work.....	428
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....	341	How Does Trailer Reverse Guidance Work.....	451
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	305	How Does Trailer Sway Control Work.....	423
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	370	How Does Trip Summary Work.....	291
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	376	How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	59
How Does Drive Mode Control Work.....	279	How Do the Knee Airbags Work.....	60
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	391	How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	59
How Does Easy Entry and Exit Work.....	80	How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work.....	60
How Does Eco Coach Work.....	291		
How Does Emergency Assistance Work.....	65		
How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement.....	252		
How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode.....	252		
How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - Super Duty, Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode.....	252		
How Does Hill Descent Control Work.....	318		
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	304		
How Does Instantaneous Efficiency Level Work.....	291		
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	380		
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work.....	300		
How Does Speed Sign Recognition Work.....	388		
How Does Stability Control Work.....	309		
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....	335		
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work.....	209		
		Icon Glossary	
		See: Symbols Glossary.....	25
		Icons	
		See: Symbols Glossary.....	25
		Identifying Fuse Types.....	507
		Identifying the Auxiliary Switch Wiring.....	647
		Identifying the Climate Control Unit.....	135
		Ignition Switch - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	176
		Inflating the Tires.....	574
		Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	567
		Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	578
		Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems.....	579
		Installing Child Restraints.....	49
		Instrument Cluster Display.....	120
		Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	121

Index

Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu – Raptor, Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen.....	127	Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	354
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu – Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen, Excluding: Raptor.....	125	Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....	354
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu – Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen, Excluding: Raptor.....	123	Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	357
Instrument Cluster.....	114	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....	357
Fuel Gauge.....	117	Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	356
Instrument Cluster Overview – Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	114	Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	358
Instrument Cluster Overview – Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen.....	115	Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....	356
Instrument Cluster Overview – Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen.....	114	Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting.....	358
Instrument Panel – Excluding: Raptor/ Super Duty.....	36	Intelligent Speed Limiter – Frequently Asked Questions.....	358
Instrument Panel – Raptor.....	37	Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....	357
Instrument Panel – Super Duty.....	38	Interior Air Quality.....	143
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller.....	419	Interior Bulbs.....	548
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting.....	421	Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	548
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Precautions.....	419	Interior Lamp Function.....	105
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting.....	421	Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	105
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Frequently Asked Questions.....	422	What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	105
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Information Messages.....	421	Interior Lighting.....	105
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.....	352	Interior Lamp Function.....	105
Adjusting the Set Speed Tolerance.....	353	Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	106
How Does Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....	352	Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	106
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Alerts.....	353	Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	106
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	354	Interior Mirror.....	110
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	353	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	110
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....	353	Interior Mirror Precautions.....	110
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Requirements.....	353	Introduction.....	22
Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off.....	353		

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	481
Jump Starting Precautions.....	481
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	482
Preparing the Vehicle.....	482

Index

K

Keyless Entry.....	78
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	79
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	78
Keyless Entry Settings.....	78
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	79
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	79
Keys and Remote Controls.....	67
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	73
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	73
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	73

L

Lane Centering.....	349
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	349
Lane Centering Alerts.....	350
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	351
Lane Centering Indicators.....	351
Lane Centering Limitations.....	350
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	351
Lane Centering Precautions.....	349
Lane Centering Requirements.....	349
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	350
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	352
Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	352
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	362
Lane Keeping System.....	359
Aid Mode.....	361
Alert and Aid Mode.....	361
Blind Spot Assist.....	362
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	364
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	367
Lane Keeping System Limitations - Excluding: Super Duty.....	359
Lane Keeping System Limitations - Super Duty.....	360
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	359
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	361
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	367
Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	368
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	367
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft.....	414
Live Traffic.....	640
Switching Live Traffic On and Off.....	640
What Is Live Traffic.....	640
Load Carrying.....	393
Roof Rack.....	395
Load Carrying Precautions.....	393
Load Retaining Fixtures and Capacities.....	394
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	337
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	336
Locating the Auxiliary Switches.....	646
Locating the Auxiliary Switch Wiring.....	646
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	371
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	371
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	292
Locating the Charge Port.....	228
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	378
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	377
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	196
Locating the Memory Function Buttons.....	158
Locating the Outlets.....	165

Index

Locating the Power Outlets.....	161
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors.....	383
Locating the Rear View Camera - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	331
Locating the Rear View Camera - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	331
Locating the Tire label.....	567
Locating the USB Ports.....	159
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	172
Locating Your Vehicle.....	68
Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate.....	81
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	109
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	86
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	86
Low Engine Use Mode.....	190

M

Maintenance.....	509
12V Battery.....	532
12V Battery - Troubleshooting.....	537
Coolant.....	525
Engine Air Filter.....	522
Engine Oil.....	515
Exterior Bulbs.....	539
Interior Bulbs.....	548
Maintenance Precautions.....	509
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	636
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror.....	110
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	297
Manually Shifting Gears - Excluding: Raptor.....	244
Manually Shifting Gears - Raptor.....	245
Manual Seats.....	145
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	145
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	147
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	146
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	147

Folding the Seat Backrest.....	152
Folding the Seats.....	153
Head Restraint Components.....	145
Installing the Head Restraint.....	146
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	146
Removing the Head Restraint.....	146
Unfolding the Seat Armrest.....	154
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	153
Unfolding the Seats.....	154
Media Control Buttons.....	626
Memory Function.....	158
Memory Function Precautions.....	158
Mislock.....	75
Mislock Limitations.....	75
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	75
What Is Mislock.....	75
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	650
Mobile Device Data.....	31

N

Navigation Map Updates.....	640
Navigation.....	640
Adjusting the Map.....	640
Live Traffic.....	640
Route Guidance.....	641
Setting a Destination.....	640
Waypoints.....	641

O

Off-Road Driving Aids - Raptor.....	469
Off-Road Driving.....	468
Off-Road Screen.....	470
Off-Road Screen.....	470
How Does The Off-Road Screen Work.....	471
Switching The Off-Road Screen On and Off.....	471
Using the Off-Road Screen.....	471
What Is The Off-Road Screen.....	470
Onboard Generator Indicators.....	166
Onboard Generator.....	164
Onboard Generator - Troubleshooting.....	169
Onboard Generator Precautions.....	164

Index

Onboard Generator – Troubleshooting.....	169
Onboard Generator – Frequently Asked Questions.....	170
Onboard Generator – Information Messages.....	169
Onboard Scales.....	426
Opening and Closing the Flip Key - Vehicles With: Remote Flip Key.....	67
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	509
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	107
Opening the Tailgate.....	81
Opening the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	81
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	74
Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	74
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	74
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	74
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	74
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	74
OTA	
See: Software Update Settings.....	643
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	643
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	301
Overriding the Set Speed.....	348
Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	643
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	643
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	643
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	643
P	
Parking Aid Indicators.....	326
Parking Aid Precautions.....	322
Parking Aids.....	322
Front Parking Aid.....	325
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	328
Rear Parking Aid.....	323
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	328
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....	328
Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	296
Parking Brake.....	296
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	296
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	296
Parking Brake – Information Messages.....	296
Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	296
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	103
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work.....	83
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	83
Performing a System Reset.....	645
Phone Menu.....	635
Phone.....	635
Phone Precautions.....	635
Pickup Bed Access Caps.....	404
Locating the Pickup Bed Access Caps.....	404
What are Pickup Bed Access Caps.....	404
Pickup Bed Anchor Points.....	402
Locating the Pickup Bed Anchor Points.....	402
Pickup Bed Anchor Point Load Capacities.....	403
Pickup Bed Anchor Point Precautions.....	402
Pickup Bed.....	402
Pickup Bed Access Caps.....	404
Pickup Bed Anchor Points.....	402
Pickup Bed Slots.....	404
Roller Shutter.....	404
Pickup Bed Precautions.....	402
Pickup Bed Slots.....	404
Locating the Pickup Bed Slots.....	404
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	639
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	159
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes.....	277
Auto EV.....	277
EV Charge.....	277
EV Later.....	277
EV Now.....	277

Index

Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes – Troubleshooting.....	278
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Drive Modes – Information Messages.....	278
Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....	188
Post-Crash Alert System.....	483
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....	483
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	483
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....	483
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	483
Post Impact Braking.....	484
How Does Post Impact Braking Work.....	484
Overriding Post Impact Braking.....	484
Post Impact Braking Indicators.....	484
Post Impact Braking Limitations.....	484
Power Outlet Indicators.....	162
Power Outlet Limitations.....	161
Power Outlet.....	161
Power Outlet Precautions.....	161
Power Seats.....	147
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	147
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	149
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	148
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	148
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	149
Head Restraint Components.....	147
Installing the Head Restraint.....	148
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	148
Removing the Head Restraint.....	148
Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	643
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	643
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	381
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	380
Pre-Collision Assist.....	380
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	384
Distance Alert.....	384
Distance Indication.....	383
Evasive Steering Assist.....	385
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	385
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	385
Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	387
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....	386
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....	385
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage.....	565
Programming the Remote Control – Vehicles With: Flip Key.....	72
Programming the Remote Control – Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	72
Protecting Larger Children.....	53
Protecting the Environment.....	33
Puncture	
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty.....	585
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Raptor.....	606
See: Changing a Flat Tire - Super Duty.....	596
Push Button Ignition Switch – Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	177
R	
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	649
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty.....	267
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Raptor.....	267
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification - Super Duty.....	268
Rear Axle.....	267
Rear Exterior - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty.....	44
Rear Exterior - Raptor.....	45
Rear Exterior - Super Duty.....	46
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....	157
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....	156
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....	155
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....	155

Index

Rear Occupant Alert System.....	155	Releasing the Parking Brake.....	296
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings.....	156	Remote Control Limitations.....	67
Rear Parking Aid.....	323	Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle.....	133
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors.....	324	Remote Start Limitations.....	133
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	324	Remote Start Precautions.....	133
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	323	Remote Start.....	133
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	323	Remote Start Settings.....	134
Rear Seat Precautions.....	151	Removing the Key Blade - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	68
Rear Seats.....	151	Removing Your Vehicle From Storage.....	566
Manual Seats.....	151	Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	564
Rear View Camera Guide Lines - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	333	Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	649
Rear View Camera Guide Lines - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	332	Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	71
Rear View Camera Precautions - Vehicles With: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	330	Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	143
Rear View Camera Precautions - Vehicles Without: Driver Assistance Technology (DAT) Bar.....	330	Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	89
Rear View Camera.....	330	Resetting Ground Fault Detection.....	167
Rear View Camera Settings.....	333	Resetting the Circuit Breaker - Vehicles With: 220-240V 6.9kW Power Outlet.....	167
Rear View Camera Settings.....	333	Resetting the Trip Computer.....	132
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off.....	334	Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	582
Switching the Rear View Camera View.....	334	Restarting the Engine.....	191
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out.....	333	Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....	357
Rebooting the Center Display.....	632	Resuming the Set Speed.....	347
Recalling a Preset Position.....	158	Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	301
Recovery Towing.....	484	Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	300
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	484	Reverse Brake Assist.....	300
Accessing the Rear Towing Point.....	488	Reverse Brake Assist - Troubleshooting.....	302
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery.....	224	Reverse Brake Assist - Troubleshooting.....	302
Refueling.....	198	Reverse Brake Assist - Frequently Asked Questions.....	303
Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door.....	204	Reverse Brake Assist - Information Messages.....	302
Refueling System Overview.....	198	Roller Shutter.....	404
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	199	Opening and Closing the Roller Shutter.....	405
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge.....	298	Overriding Roller Shutter Bounce-Back.....	406
		Resetting Roller Shutter Bounce-Back.....	407
		Roller Shutter Limitations.....	405

Index

Roller Shutter Precautions.....	404
Stopping the Roller Shutter.....	406
What Is Roller Shutter Bounce-Back.....	406
Rollover Warning.....	649
Roof Rack.....	395
Adjusting a Roof Rack Crossbar.....	398
Removing and Installing the Roof Rack.....	396
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	401
Roof Rack Precautions.....	395
Route Guidance.....	641
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	641
Canceling Route Guidance.....	641
Repeating an Instruction.....	641
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	476
Running Out of Fuel.....	196
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	197
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	196

S

Saving a Preset Position.....	158
Seatbelt Precautions.....	55
Seatbelt Reminder.....	57
Checking Seatbelt Status.....	57
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	57
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	57
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	57
Seatbelts.....	55
Seatbelt Reminder.....	57
Security.....	83
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	83
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	84
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	83
Security – Troubleshooting.....	85
Security – Troubleshooting.....	85
Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	85
Security – Information Messages.....	85
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	49
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	276
Selecting a Drive Mode - Vehicles With: Push Button Selectable Drive Modes.....	279
Selecting a Drive Mode - Vehicles With: Rotary Selectable Drive Modes.....	280
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement.....	257
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode.....	258
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - Super Duty, Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode.....	256
Selecting the Audio Source.....	626
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption.....	218
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines.....	214
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions.....	214
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements.....	214
Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....	214
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank.....	215
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting.....	219
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting.....	219
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Information Messages.....	219
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps.....	219
Sending and Receiving a Text Message.....	637
Service Data.....	30
Setting a Destination.....	640
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	641
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	641
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	641
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	641
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	640
Setting a Memory Preset.....	627
Settings Data.....	31
Settings.....	631

Index

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap.....	346
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed.....	345
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	136
Setting the Clock and Date.....	627
Setting the Hill Descent Speed.....	318
Setting the Speed Limit.....	356
Setting the Temperature.....	136
Setting the Trail Control Speed.....	313
Setting Up the Trailer Backup Assistance for a Conventional Trailer.....	429
Applying the Trailer Reversing Aid Sticker.....	430
Calibrating the System.....	430
Configuring the Trailer.....	429
Trailer Sensor Installation.....	441
Setting Up Trailer Reverse Guidance for a Conventional Trailer.....	451
Applying the Trailer Reverse Aid Sticker.....	452
Calibrating the System.....	453
Configuring the Trailer.....	451
Trailer Sensor Installation.....	460
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) - Vehicles With: Electronic Shift.....	247
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P) - Vehicles With: Mechanical Shift.....	248
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	144
Smart Hitch.....	424
Software Update Indicators.....	644
Software Update Settings.....	643
Software Update See: Software Update Settings.....	643
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	643
Sounding the Panic Alarm.....	68
Speedometer.....	116
Speed Sign Recognition Indicators.....	389
Speed Sign Recognition Limitations.....	388
Speed Sign Recognition Precautions.....	388
Speed Sign Recognition Settings.....	389
Speed Sign Recognition.....	388
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....	389
Speed Sign Recognition – Troubleshooting.....	389
Speed Sign Recognition – Frequently Asked Questions.....	390
Speed Sign Recognition – Information Messages.....	389
Stability Control Indicator.....	311
Stability Control.....	309
Stability Control – Troubleshooting.....	312
Stability Control – Troubleshooting.....	312
Stability Control – Information Messages.....	312
Starter Switch See: Ignition Switch - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	176
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions.....	176
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	176
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	180
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	182
Starting the Engine.....	177
Stopping the Engine.....	179
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	182
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions.....	183
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages.....	182
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps.....	182
Starting the Engine.....	177
Restarting the Engine After Stopping It.....	179
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	177
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	177
Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle System.....	178
Status Bar.....	630
Steering.....	320
Electric Power Steering.....	320
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	321

Index

Steering – Troubleshooting.....	321	Switching Generator Mode On and Off.....	167
Steering – Information Messages.....	321	Switching Hill Descent Control On and Off.....	318
Steering Wheel - Excluding: Raptor.....	34	Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off.....	304
Steering Wheel - Raptor.....	35	Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	135
Steering Wheel.....	86	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	135
Stopping the Engine.....	191	Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	322
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	179	Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off.....	382
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	179	Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	135
Storage.....	174	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off.....	301
Center Console.....	175	Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	310
Cup Holders.....	174	Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	638
Glasses Holder.....	175	Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	626
Glove Compartment.....	174	Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty.....	270
Under Seat Storage.....	175	Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off - Raptor/Super Duty.....	271
Storing Your Vehicle.....	565	Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	105
SVT.....	19	Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	481
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....	344	Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....	136
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	135	Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	136
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	105	Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel.....	87
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off.....	638	Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off.....	356
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	638	Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	361
Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	305	Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	360
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	191	Switching the Outlets On and Off.....	166
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	371		
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	135		
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	377		
Switching Driver Alert On and Off - Excluding: Super Duty.....	392		
Switching Easy Entry and Exit On and Off.....	80		
Switching Four-Wheel Drive On and Off.....	256		
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	348		
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter.....	357		

Index

Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	105
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	307
Switching Trail Control On and Off.....	313
Switching Trailer Backup Assistance On and Off.....	432
Switching Trailer Reverse Guidance On and Off.....	454
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off.....	423
Switching Trail Turn Assist On and Off.....	316
Symbols Glossary.....	25
Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster.....	25
System Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	643
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	643
T	
Tachometer.....	116
Tailgate Precautions.....	81
Tailgate.....	81
Opening the Tailgate.....	81
Tailgate Work Surface.....	81
Team RS.....	19
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	246
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	649
Tire Care.....	574
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	581
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	581
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	581
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	582
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	582
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....	584
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....	582
Tire Pressure Specifications - Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty.....	574
Tire Pressure Specifications - Raptor.....	576
Tire Pressure Specifications - Super Duty.....	577
Tire Replacement Requirements.....	571
Tire Rotation.....	580
Tow Ball.....	408
Attaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	408
Tow Ball Precautions.....	408
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	414
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	413
Towing a Trailer.....	413
Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	418
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	415
Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	418
Towing a Trailer – Information Messages.....	418
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	415
Towing Weight Capacities.....	415
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	492
Towing Your Vehicle.....	492
Traction Control Indicator.....	307
Traction Control.....	307
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	307
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	307
Traction Control – Information Messages.....	308
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	307
Trail Control Indicators.....	314
Trail Control Limitations.....	313
Trail Control.....	313
Trail Control – Troubleshooting.....	315
Trail Control – Troubleshooting.....	315
Trail Control – Information Messages.....	315
Trailer Backup Assistance Precautions.....	428
Trailer Backup Assistance.....	428
Setting Up the Trailer Backup Assistance for a Conventional Trailer.....	429
Trailer Backup Assistance – Troubleshooting.....	435
Trailer Backup Assistance – Troubleshooting.....	435
Trailer Backup Assistance – Frequently Asked Questions.....	437

Index

U

Trailer Backup Assistance – Information Messages.....	435
Trailer Brake Precautions.....	414
Trailer Lighting Check.....	411
Trailer Reverse Guidance	
Precautions.....	451
Trailer Reverse Guidance.....	451
Setting Up Trailer Reverse Guidance for a Conventional Trailer.....	451
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Troubleshooting.....	456
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Troubleshooting.....	456
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Frequently Asked Questions.....	457
Trailer Reverse Guidance – Information Messages.....	456
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....	423
Trailer Sway Control.....	423
Trailer Towing Navigation.....	642
Trail Turn Assist Indicators.....	316
Trail Turn Assist Limitations.....	316
Trail Turn Assist Precautions.....	316
Trail Turn Assist.....	316
Trail Turn Assist – Troubleshooting.....	317
Trail Turn Assist – Troubleshooting.....	317
Trail Turn Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	317
Trail Turn Assist – Information Messages.....	317
Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	260
Transmission Fluid Temperature Gauge – Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen.....	118
Transmission Fluid Temperature Gauge – Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen.....	118
Transporting the Vehicle.....	490
Trip Computer.....	132
Trip Summary – Plug-In Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	131
Tyre Pressure Specifications	
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications – Excluding: Raptor/Super Duty.....	574
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications – Raptor.....	576
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications – Super Duty.....	577

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	493
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	493
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	494
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	493
Under Hood Overview – 2.0L Diesel.....	511
Under Hood Overview – 2.3L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	512
Under Hood Overview – 3.0L Diesel.....	514
Under Hood Overview – 3.0L EcoBoost™.....	513
Under Seat Storage.....	175
Locating the Under Seat Storage Compartment.....	175
Unique Features.....	47
USB Ports.....	159
Using Auto Hold.....	305
Using Keyless Entry.....	78
Using Progressive Range Selection.....	249
Using Snow Chains.....	572
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls – Raptor, Vehicles With: 12 Inch Screen.....	120
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls – Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen/12 Inch Screen, Excluding: Raptor.....	120
Using the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller.....	419
Using the Remote Control.....	67
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Controller.....	432
Using the Trailer Backup Assistance Views.....	433
Using the Valet Mode.....	73
Using This Publication.....	24
Using Trailer Reverse Guidance Views.....	454
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging.....	238

Index

V

Vehicle Care.....	559
Cleaning the Exterior.....	559
Cleaning the Interior.....	562
Vehicle Charging Status - Plug-In Hybrid	
Electric Vehicle (PHEV).....	131
Vehicle Dimensions - Chassis Cab.....	553
Vehicle Dimensions - Double Cab.....	554
Vehicle Dimensions - Single Cab.....	556
Vehicle Dimensions - SuperCab.....	557
Vehicle Identification Number.....	619
Locating the Vehicle Identification	
Number.....	619
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	622
Vehicle Identification Plate	
Overview.....	622
Vehicle Identification.....	619
Vehicle Identification Number.....	619
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	622
Vehicle Inspection Guide.....	508
Vehicle Interior - Excluding: Raptor.....	39
Vehicle Interior - Raptor.....	40
Vehicle Range Display.....	117
Vehicle Software Updates.....	643
Vehicle Specifications.....	549
Vehicle System Reset.....	645
Ventilated Seats.....	150
Switching the Ventilated Seats On and	
Off.....	150
Ventilated Seat Precautions.....	150
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With:	
Automatic Temperature Control.....	135
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Manual	
Temperature Control.....	140
Viewing the Instantaneous Efficiency	
Level.....	291
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles	
With: 12 Inch Screen.....	582
Viewing the Tire Pressures - Vehicles	
With: 8 Inch Screen.....	581
Viewing the Trip Summary.....	291
Visual Search.....	34
Voice Interaction.....	633
Ford Assistant.....	633

W

Washers.....	90
Adding Washer Fluid.....	91
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and	
Off.....	90
Using the Windshield Washer.....	90
Washer Fluid Specification.....	91
Washer Precautions.....	90
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	88
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	564
Waypoints.....	641
Adding a Waypoint.....	641
Editing Waypoints.....	641
What Are the Auxiliary Switches.....	646
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	623
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	191
What Is Blind Spot Information	
System.....	370
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	376
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	276
What Is Driver Alert.....	391
What Is Eco Coach.....	291
What Is Emergency Assistance.....	65
What Is Generator Mode.....	167
What Is Hill Descent Control.....	318
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	304
What Is Keyless Entry.....	78
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	380
What Is Remote Start.....	133
What Is Speed Sign Recognition.....	388
What Is the 360 Degree Camera.....	335
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	143
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	221
What Is the Diesel Particulate	
Filter.....	209
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	297
What Is the Electronic Locking	
Differential - Excluding: Raptor/Super	
Duty.....	269
What Is the Electronic Locking	
Differential - Raptor/Super Duty.....	269
What Is the Gasoline Particulate	
Filter.....	222
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	224
What Is the Integrated Trailer Brake	
Controller.....	419

Index

What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	356
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	359
What Is the Memory Function.....	158
What Is the Onboard Generator.....	164
What Is the Power Outlet.....	161
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	155
What Is the Rear View Camera - Vehicles With: Analog Rear View Camera.....	330
What Is the Rear View Camera.....	330
What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....	214
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	581
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	172
What Is Traction Control.....	307
What Is Trail Control.....	313
What is Trailer Backup Assistance.....	428
What Is Trailer Reverse Guidance.....	451
What Is Trail Turn Assist.....	316
Wheel and Tire Information.....	567
Wheel Nuts - Excluding: Super Duty.....	616
Wheel Nuts - Super Duty.....	617
Wi Fi	
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	623
Window Bounce-Back.....	108
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	108
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	108
Windows.....	107
Global Opening and Closing.....	107
Window Bounce-Back.....	108
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	91
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	91
Wipers and Washers – Warning Lamps.....	91
Wipers and Washers.....	88
Autowipers.....	88
Washers.....	90
Wipers.....	88
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	91
Wipers.....	88
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	88
Wiper Precautions.....	88
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....	172
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	172

